Algebra and Pre-Calculus on the HP 48G/GX

By Dan Coffin
Acknowledgments

The terms "HP 48" and "48" are used for convenience in this book to refer to the HP 48GX and the HP 48G, the registered trade names for the handheld computing products of Hewlett-Packard Co. For their excellent programming tips and for allowing the reprinting of their programs, the author gratefully acknowledges Jim Donnelly (FMPLT, INPLOT and UDFUI) and Bill Wickes (→RPN, SDT, SMMULT, STRN, and slightly modified versions of SA+, →SA, SCOF, SMADD, SMSMULT, SMSUB). Hugs and kisses in abundance to Bonnie and Ian for their unflagging love, support and encouragement throughout this project.

© 1994, Daniel R. Coffin. All rights reserved. No portion of this book or its contents, nor any portion of the programs contained herein, may be reproduced in any form, printed, electronic or mechanical, without prior written permission from Grapevine Publications, Inc.

Printed in the United States of America
ISBN 0-931011-43-4

Second Printing – November, 1995

Notice of Disclaimer: Neither the author nor Grapevine Publications, Inc. makes any express or implied warranty with regard to the keystroke procedures and program materials herein offered, nor to their merchantability nor fitness for any particular purpose. These keystroke procedures and program materials are made available solely on an "as is" basis, and the entire risk as to their quality and performance is with the user. Should the keystroke procedures and program materials prove defective, the user (and not the author, nor Grapevine Publications, Inc., nor any other party) shall bear the entire cost of all necessary correction and all incidental or consequential damages. Neither the author nor Grapevine Publications, Inc. shall be liable for any incidental or consequential damages in connection with, or arising out of, the furnishing, use, or performance of these keystroke procedures or program materials.
CONTENTS

0. START HERE ...................................................................................................................... 6
  What Is This Book? .............................................................................................................. 7

1. EXPLORING FUNCTIONS ............................................................................................. 8
  Linear Functions ................................................................................................................ 9
  Quadratic Functions .......................................................................................................... 12
  Rational Functions ........................................................................................................... 18
  Exponential and Logarithmic Functions ......................................................................... 20
  Composites of Functions ................................................................................................. 22
  Inverses of Functions ....................................................................................................... 23
  User-Defined Functions ................................................................................................... 24

2. TRIGONOMETRY ........................................................................................................... 28
  The Trigonometric Relationships .................................................................................... 29
  Radians and Degrees: Units of Angle .............................................................................. 30
  The TRIGX Program ......................................................................................................... 32
  Verifying Identities ........................................................................................................... 34
  Varying Coefficients in Trig Functions .......................................................................... 41
  Solving Triangles ............................................................................................................. 44
  Solving Trigonometric Equations .................................................................................. 48
  Problem Solving with Trigonometry .............................................................................. 51
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6. Analytic Geometry</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to Vectors</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview of Analytic Geometry Examples</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Given: Two Points</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Given: Three Points</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Given: A Line or Point-and-Slope</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Given: A Point and a Line</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Given: Two Lines</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Given: Two Planes</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Given: A Point and a Plane</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Given: A Line and a Plane</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to Transformations</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scaling</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shearing</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translation</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflection</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Projection</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7. Conic Sections</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to Conic Sections</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plotting Conics</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circles</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ellipses</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parabolas</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperbolas</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lines and Conics</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translating and Rotating Conics</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P. Program Listings</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. Indexes</td>
<td>318</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
0. **Start Here**
What Is This Book?

This book is to help you use the HP 48G or HP 48GX calculator to improve your understanding and increase your enjoyment of the collection of mathematical topics usually grouped under the names of Algebra and Pre-Calculus. You may be a student currently enrolled in a Pre-Calculus course, a student in a Calculus course (which builds upon Pre-Calculus topics), or a student of lifelong learning who has an opportunity to learn (or re-learn) something new and useful.

This book organizes the material much as a standard text does. Chapters are divided into topics. Topics are divided into examples, each of which demonstrates how to use the HP 48 to solve and illuminate a problem of the kind you are typically asked to solve in a Pre-Calculus course. Occasionally, the examples make use of programs that extend the capabilities of the HP 48. The full listings for these programs are included (in alphabetical order) in the Appendix.

If you are currently a student in a Pre-Calculus course, please note that this book isn’t meant to replace your textbook. In general, this book makes no attempt to rigorously justify the techniques and concepts used in problem-solving as does a standard text. Also, there may be topics treated in greater depth in your textbook than in this book (or vice versa).

What Do You Need to Know Before Using This Book?

You should have a basic working knowledge of your HP 48, including:

- Performing basic arithmetic calculations
- Navigating menus
- Entering alphabetic characters
- Storing, recalling, and using variables
- Entering and using lists, algebraic expressions, and programs

(If you need a quick review, stop here now and work through the Quick Start Guide or the first 3 chapters of An Easy Course in Programming the HP 48G/GX.)
1. Exploring Functions
Linear Functions

Mathematically, a function is a process that accepts certain inputs and generates corresponding outputs—exactly one output for each input. A simple kind of function is the linear function, so-named because its graph is a line. Its slope-intercept form is \( f(x) = mx + b; \) \( m \) is the line’s slope, and \( b \) is the \( y \)-intercept.

Example: Plot the linear function, \( f(x) = mx + b \).

1. The HP 48 can plot a function when the only undefined variable is the independent variable (that’s \( x \) in this case). So you must give \( m \) and \( b \) numerical values before attempting to plot the function. Use \( m = 2 \) and \( b = 1.4 \): From the stack, press \( 2 \) (\( \alpha \leftarrow M \) STO) and \( 1 \cdot 4 \) (\( \alpha \leftarrow B \) STO) to store the values for the coefficients.

2. Press \( \rightarrow \) PLOT to begin the PLOT application. Then press \( \text{DEL} \) (\( \text{v} \) ENTER) to reset the various plot parameters to their default values.

3. To change the content of a field in an input screen, you move the highlight to that field (using \( \text{a}, \text{v}, \text{b}, \) and \( \text{c} \)), then enter the information. Some items you can type; others you select via \( \text{CHOOSE} \) or \( \text{CHK} \). Now change the plot type to Function, if necessary.

4. Move the highlight to the \( \text{Eq} \): field; enter the expression \( 'm \cdot x + b' \): \( \text{m} \leftarrow \text{x} \cdot \text{B} \) ENTER. Note that only the right-side of the function need be entered. Set the \( \text{INDEP} \): field to (lower-case) \( \times \) (note that no \( ' ' \) are needed here): \( \text{x} \) ENTER.

5. As for the part of the plot to be displayed, the defaults for \( \text{H-VIEW} \) and \( \text{Y-VIEW} \) are adequate.

6. Press \( \text{ERASE DRAW} \).
Example: Repeat the previous example with \( m = 2 \), but vary \( b \) with the values \(-2, -0.5, 1, \) and \( 5 \). Plot each graph without erasing the previous ones.

1. Use \( \text{CANCEL} \) to return to the \textbf{PLOT} input screen, then \( \text{NXT} \ \text{CALC} \) to use the stack from within the application.

2. Press \( \text{VAR} \) to go to your \textbf{VAR} menu, then type the first desired value of \( b, 2+/-, \) and press \( \leftarrow \text{B} \) (or, equivalently, \( 1 \text{B} \text{STO} \)).

3. Press \( \leftarrow \text{CONT} \) (to get back to the \textbf{PLOT} input screen), then \( \text{NXT} \ \text{DRAW} \) (don't use \text{ERASE}; you want to see the plots together).

4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 for the other values of \( b (-0.5, 1, \) and \( 5) \). The figure below shows all five lines plotted on the same graph.

Example: Repeat the previous example, with \( b \) fixed at \(-1\), but then vary \( m \) (use \(-2, -0.5, 1, \) and \( 5 \)). And try using the FaMily PLoT (FMPLT) program (if you have previously entered it—see page 281). Here's how:

1. Exit the \textbf{PLOT} application with \( \text{CANCEL} \). Then, from the stack display, type \( \alpha \alpha \text{FMPLT} \text{ENTER} \).
2. To store -1 in b, the procedure is the same as in the built-in PLOT screen: \texttt{NXT} \texttt{CALC} \texttt{VAR} \texttt{1+/-} \texttt{B}, then \texttt{CONT} \texttt{OK}.

3. The function displayed in the \texttt{EQ} field is correct. Enter the independent variable, \texttt{X}, in the \texttt{INDEP} field and the variable whose effects you wish to study over the several simultaneous plots (M) into \texttt{VARY} field: \texttt{F} \texttt{\alpha} \texttt{X} \texttt{ENTER} \texttt{\alpha} \texttt{M ENTER}.

4. Enter a list of its desired values into \texttt{VALS}: \texttt{L} \texttt{2 +/- SPC M} \texttt{SPC SPC ENTER}.

5. Leave the \texttt{X-MIN} and \texttt{X-MAX} as they are and press \texttt{OK}. The function is plotted four times, once for each value of \texttt{m} (which you'll see displayed as each line is drawn):

\textbf{Example:} Before you plot, it helps to know the range of a function. To easily find the range of, say, \( f(t) = \frac{2}{3} t - \frac{5}{3} \), with \( t \in \{-3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3\} \):

1. (Use \texttt{CANCEL} to exit \texttt{FMPLT}) Put the right side of the function on the stack: \texttt{\leftarrow EQUATION} \texttt{2 +/- T} \texttt{ENTER}.

2. Enter the domain list: \texttt{L} \texttt{3 +/- SPC 2 +/- SPC} \texttt{etc., ENTER}, And store the domain in \( 't' \): \texttt{\alpha T STO}.

3. Now just \texttt{EVAL} the function: \texttt{ENTER}. And rationalize the decimals in the result: \texttt{1 0 \alpha \alpha FI X ENTER \leftarrow SYMBOLIC \texttt{NXT} \texttt{Q}}.

Result: A list of range values corresponding to the domain values:

\{ '-(11/3)' '-3' '-(7/3)' '-(5/3)' '-1' '-(1/3)' '1/3' \}

\textbf{Linear Functions 11}
Quadratic functions are functions of the form \( f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c \).

Example: Practice more now with the \texttt{FMPLT} program, by exploring the effect of varying each coefficient \((a, b, c)\) of a general quadratic. Remember to store values in the two coefficients not being varied:

- Varying \(a\) \((a = \{-5, -1, 2, 7\}, b = 4, c = -1)\)
- Varying \(b\) \((a = 3, b = \{-5, -1, 2, 7\}, c = 1)\)
- Varying \(c\) \((a = 3, b = 5, c = \{-20, -1, 12, 27\})\)
The discriminant of a quadratic is given by \( d = b^2 - 4ac \). What does the sign (± or zero) of the discriminant, \( d \), indicate about the function’s graph?

**Example:** Graph cases where \( d = -4 \), \( d = 0 \), and \( d = 12 \).

1. Arbitrarily let \( a = c = 1 \): \[ 1 \text{STO} 1 \text{STO} \]
2. By rearranging the discriminant equation, \( b = \sqrt{4ac + d} = \sqrt{4 + d} \). Enter that equation for \( b \): \[ \text{LIST} \text{ADD} \text{ENTER} \text{STO} \text{ENTER} \]
3. Store the list of values for \( d \) into 'd'': \[ \text{STO} \text{ENTER} \]
4. Press [EVAL] to compute the resulting list of values for \( b \).
5. Press 'b' to store that list into 'b'.
6. Use [FMPLT] to plot functions with \( a = 1 \), \( b = \{0, 2, 4\} \), and \( c = 1 \): \[ \text{VAR} \text{NXT} \text{PREV} \text{FMPL} \]

Since you're going to evaluate a list of values, you must use the ADD function, not +. The + function concatenates lists (and appends or prepends objects to lists); the ADD function adds corresponding elements of lists—in a manner analogous to \[ \], \[ \], and \[ \].
Sometimes a function appears in a less recognizable form, so that you need to do a little rearranging before it looks familiar.

**Example:** Symbolically rearrange \( 2x + 5 = \frac{(3 - y)}{x} \) so that \( y \) is isolated.

1. Use \( \text{Symbolic}\) to get the **Isolate a Variable** screen. Note that this feature works only when the variable you want to isolate appears *exactly once* in the equation (so, for example, you could not use it to solve for \( x \) here).

2. Enter the equation into the **EXPR:** field: \( \text{Equation} \) \( 2 \) \( \alpha \) \( \alpha \) \( x \) \( + \) \( 5 \) \( \alpha \) \( \alpha \) \( 3 \) \( \alpha \) \( \alpha \) \( y \) \( \alpha \) \( \alpha \) \( x \) \( \text{Enter} \).

3. Enter \( y \) (lower-case) into the **VAR:** field: \( \alpha \) \( \alpha \) \( y \) \( \text{Enter} \).

4. Make sure the **RESULT** will be **Symbolic** (if necessary, press \( +/- \) to toggle between **Numeric** and **Symbolic**). Press \( \text{OK} \) to let the application do the isolation for you.

   **Result:** \( 'y=3-(2*x+5)*x' \)

5. Finally, press \( \text{Symbolic} \) \( \text{EXPR} \) \( \text{COLCT} \) to tidy up the result:

   \( 'y=3-2*x^2-5*x' \)

Now that the function is in a slightly more conventional form, you can analyze it in several different ways....
Example: Use *three different methods* to solve the result from the previous example for $x$: Graphic, numeric, and symbolic.

**The Graphic Method:**

1. Press $\text{[PLOT]}$ to begin the $\text{PLOT}$ application.

2. With the $\text{EQ}$: field highlighted, press $\text{[NXT]} \text{[CALC]}$ then make sure the target equation is on stack level 1 (you may need to press $\text{[DROP]}$) and press $\text{[OK]}$ to copy the equation into the $\text{Eq}$: field.

3. Make sure that $\text{TYPE}$: contains $\text{Function}$, that $\text{INDEP}$: contains (lowercase) $x$, that $\text{H-VIEW}$: is set to default values ($-6.5$ to $6.5$), and that $\text{AUTOSCALE}$ is checked.

4. Press $\text{ERASE} \text{DRAW}$ to draw the plot.

5. First, use the arrow keys ($\uparrow$, $\downarrow$, etc.) to move the cursor to the parabola's apex. Then re-center the graph: Press $\text{ZOOM} \text{[NXT]} \text{[CNTR]}$.
6. To zoom the graph at the region of interest (here it’s where the graph crosses the x-axis), first move the cursor to the upper-left corner of the desired display area. Then press [ZOOM] [BOX], then move the cursor so that the zoom-box is drawn over the region of interest; press [ZOOM]. The shape and location of your plot may differ slightly from the one shown below because the exact size and location of your zoom-box may differ slightly from the one used below.

![Graph with zoom-box](image)

7. Press [TRACE] [X,Y]. You can now use [◄] and [►] to trace along the graph! Trace to the points where it meets the x-axis. Notice the cursor coordinates there. (Again, the coordinates you see may differ from the ones shown below because of differences in the zoom-boxes used.)

![Graph with cursor coordinates](image)

8. With the cursor near a solution point, press [NXT] (if the menu is hidden) [FCN] [ROOT]. Doing this for each root shows that the exact solutions are indeed -3 and 0.5.
The Numeric Approach

1. Return to the stack ([CANCEL [CANCEL]) then press [SOLVE] [OK] to begin the SOLVE EQUATION application.

2. If you just entered the equation in the PLOT application, you will probably see it displayed in the EQ: field. If not, enter it manually.

3. Enter a 0 value for y: (the "solution" is the value of x when y is zero).

4. Enter a positive guess (say, 5) for x:. Then move the highlight back to the x: field and press SOLVE. Result: x: .5

5. Try a negative guess (say, -5) for x:. Then, again, move the highlight back to the x: field and press SOLVE. Result: x: -3

The Symbolic Approach

1. Return to the stack ([CANCEL]), then press [SYMBOLIC] [OK] to begin the SOLVE QUADRATIC application.

2. Enter the expression ('3–2*x^2–5*x') into the EXP: field:

3. Enter the variable for which you’re solving (x) in the VAR: field.

4. With RESULT: showing Symbolic and PRINCIPAL unchecked, press [OK]. The general solution results: 'x=(5+1*7)/–4'.

5. The ±1 in the solution is a placeholder variable inserted by the HP 48 that means "±." Thus, the single result is actually two results: the value when ±1 = 1 and the value when ±1 = -1. To further evaluate the two results, press [STO] [EVAL] [SWAP] [1] [+/=] [VAR] [±1] [EVAL].

   Results: 'x=-3' and 'x=.5'

Quadratic Functions
Rational Functions

A rational function is the quotient of two polynomial functions: \( f(x) = \frac{p(x)}{q(x)} \)

Wherever \( q(x) \) is zero, the function is undefined; there exists a discontinuity. For example, the function \( f(x) = \frac{2x}{x+5} \), has a discontinuity at \( x = -5 \). On the HP 48, whether (and how) such a discontinuity is displayed in a function plot depends on several factors:

- The resolution of the plot. The PLOT application plots only a sample of points along the function, so it simply may not sample the point of discontinuity. This may make it appear as if there is no discontinuity.

- The status of flag –31. When it is set, only the sampled points are plotted—no connecting line segments. Discontinuities can masquerade as unsampled points. When flag –31 is clear, CONNECT mode is enabled and the sampled points on either side of a discontinuity may be connected by a line segment—for many rational functions, a “vertical line” at the asymptote.

Example:  Plot the rational function \( f(x) = \frac{-3x}{x^2 + 3x + 2} \).

1. Press →PLOT and make sure the TYPE is Function.
2. Enter the function in the EQ: field: \( \left( \text{EQUATION} \right) \frac{\text{+}/3}{\text{-}} \ \text{X} \ \text{X} \ \text{X} ^{\text{2}} ^{\text{2}} \ \text{+} ^{\text{3}} \ \text{X} \ + \text{2} \ \text{ENTER} \).
3. Set the INDEP: variable to (lowercase) \( x \) and set the H-VIEW range to \(-6 \ 6\) and the V-VIEW range to \(-2 \ 5\).
4. Bring up the PLOT OPTIONS screen (DATA) and make sure that CONNECT is checked on (toggle the check-mark with either \( \approx \text{CHK} \) or \( \approx -\text{CHK} \)). Next, at the STEP: field, reset it to \( \text{DEF} \ 1 \text{t} \) (default) value by pressing \( \text{DEL} \ \text{ENTER} \). Then move the highlight to the bottom of the screen and enter \( 1 \) in the H-TICK: and V-TICK: fields and turn off the check-mark in the PIXELS field on the bottom line. This will place a tick-mark for each one unit along the horizontal and vertical axes—no matter what your display settings are.
5. Press \( \text{OK} \ \text{ERASE} \ \text{DRAW} \) to draw the plot.
Note the vertical lines representing asymptotes near $x = -2$ and $x = -1$. The undefined points at the asymptotes lie *between* two plotted pixels, which were connected (in CONNECT mode) by an apparently vertical line segment.

**Example:** Plot this rational function:

$$f(x) = \frac{-3x}{x^2 - 3x + 2}$$

1. Press [CANCEL] to return to the **PLOT** input form and reset the plot parameters: [DEL ▼ ENTER].

2. Highlight the **EQ:** field, press [EDIT], change the first + in the denominator of the function to a − (eleven ▶'s, ◂, then [− ENTER]).

3. Change **INDEP:** back to $x$ and the values in **V-VIEW** to $-35$ and $35$. Press [ERASE DRAW] to draw the plot.

Note that no “vertical” asymptote lines appear because the function is undefined for the exact value of one of the pixels.
Exponential and Logarithmic Functions

*Exponential functions* have the form \( f(x) = a^x \), where \( a \neq 1 \). The variable is contained in the *exponent* part of the expression.

*Logarithmic functions* are inverse functions of exponential functions. They have the form \( f(x) = \log_a x \).

**Example:** Use \( \text{FMPLT} \) to explore the effect of varying the \( a \) parameter in an exponential function.

1. From the stack, type \( \text{FMPLT} \) and press \( \text{ ENTER} \) or select \( \text{FMPLT} \) from the \( \text{VAR} \) menu.
2. Enter the exponential formula \( (' a^x ' ) \) into the \( \text{EQU:} \) field and \( x \) into the \( \text{INDEP:} \) field (if it isn't already there).
3. Enter the parameter that you are varying \( (\theta) \) into the \( \text{VARY:} \) field.
4. Enter the list of values you want to use for \( a \) in the \( \text{VALS:} \) field. Try \( 2 3 4 5 6 \).
5. Enter the horizontal range you want displayed in \( \text{XMIN} \) and \( \text{XMAX} \). Use \(-1\) to \( 2 \).
6. Press \( \text{OK} \).
**Example:** Now use \texttt{F4 MLT} to explore the effect of varying the \(a\) parameter in a logarithmic function.

Note that the HP 48 can use logarithms directly with only two bases —10 and \(e\). However, a simple transformation makes the use of any logarithmic base possible:

\[
\log_a x = \frac{\log_{10} x}{\log_{10} a}
\]

1. Press \texttt{CANCEL} to return to the \texttt{FAMILY PLOT} input form.
2. Into the \texttt{EX:} field, enter the transformed logarithmic formula,

   \[
   '\text{LOG}(x)/\text{LOG}(a)'
   \]

3. Leave the remaining entries as they were in the previous example and press \texttt{OK}.

![Graph of logarithmic function with transformed formula]

*Exponential and Logarithmic Functions* 21
Compositions of Functions

If \( f \) and \( g \) are two functions, then the composition of \( g \) with \( f \) is the function 
\[ (g \circ f)(x) = g(f(x)). \]
Compositions use the output of one function as the input of the other. Not surprisingly, this makes the HP 48 very well-suited for performing compositions.

Example: Find the composition \( g \circ f \) for
\[ f(x) = \frac{2}{x+1} \text{ and } g(x) = \sqrt{4-x^2}. \]

1. Enter the \( f \) function \('2/(x+1)'\); store it as \('f'\): \( \boxed{ \text{STO} } \).
2. Enter the \( g \) expression, using \( t \) as its variable \('\sqrt{4-t^2}'\).
3. Press \( \boxed{ 3/+/- } \) \( \boxed{ \text{EVAL} } \) to be sure that you obtain symbolic results, then \( '\sqrt{(4-((2/(x+1))^2)}' \). If you want to look at the result in the Equation Writer, press \( \boxed{ \text{CANCE} \text{L CANCE} \text{L} } \) to return to the stack when you’ve finished viewing it.

Example: Find the composition \( f \circ g \) for the functions in the previous example, using the CMPOS program (see page 277).

1. Enter \( f \): \( \boxed{ \text{EQUATION} } \boxed{ 2 + \alpha \gamma \alpha \gamma \alpha \beta } \boxed{ \text{EVEN} } \).
2. Enter \( g \): \( \boxed{ \text{EQUATION} } \boxed{ x (4 - \alpha \gamma \alpha \beta \gamma \alpha \beta \beta \alpha \beta \alpha \beta \alpha \beta \beta \alpha \beta } \boxed{ \text{EVEN} } \).
3. Enter the name of the variable in \( f \): \( '\alpha \gamma \alpha \beta } \boxed{ \text{EVEN} } \).
4. Type CMPOS and press \( \boxed{ \text{EVEN} } \) or press \( \boxed{ \text{CMPO} } \) from the \( \boxed{ \text{VAR} } \) menu.

Result: \( '2/(\sqrt{(4-x^2)}+1)' \)
Inverses of Functions

Two functions, \( f(x) \) and \( g(x) \), are inverses of each other if \( f \circ g = x \) and \( g \circ f = x \). For example, \( 2x \) and \( \frac{1}{2} \cdot x \) are inverse functions of each other because both compositions yield \( x \): \( 2(\frac{1}{2}x) = x \) and \( \frac{1}{2}(2x) = x \).

**Example:** Find \( f^{-1}(x) \), the inverse of \( f(x) = \frac{3x-1}{2} \).

1. Enter the function as an equation, substituting \( y \) for \( f(x) \):
   
   \[ y = (3x-1)/2 \]

2. Solve for \( x \) by entering \( 'x' \) on the stack and pressing \( \text{SYMBOLIC} \quad \text{SOL} \). The result is \( 'x' = (y*2+1)/3 \). Note that \( \text{SOL} \) works only when the solution variable (\( 'x' \) in this case) exists exactly once in the expression.

3. If you mentally exchange the positions of the \( x \) and \( y \) variables and substitute \( f^{-1}(x) \) for \( y \), you'll get the inverse function:

   \[ f^{-1}(x) = \frac{2x+1}{3} \]

**Example:** The short program \( \text{FINV} \) (see page 281) makes it easier than that. To repeat the above example:

1. First, enter the function: \( \text{EQUATION} [3 \text{\alpha} \text{\left(} x-1 \text{\right)} \div 2 \text{ \text{ENTER}}] \).

2. Then enter the variable of the function: \( [\text{\alpha} \text{\text{\left(} x \text{\right)}} \text{ \text{ENTER}}] \).

3. Type in \( \text{FINV} \) and press \( \text{ENTER} \) or press \( \text{FINV} \) in the \( \text{VAR} \) menu.

   **Note:** Just like the built-in \( \text{SOL} \), the \( \text{FINV} \) program requires that the solution variable appears only once in the original expression.

   **Result:** \( (x*2+1)/3 \)
User-Defined Functions

The HP 48 allows you to create short programs that work for the most part like the built-in mathematical functions. These programs, called *user-defined functions* (UDFs) all have the following structure:

```
« ‚ local names ‚ defining procedure »
```

There should be one local name for each variable in the function you are defining. The defining procedure may either be a program (i.e. in postfix syntax) or an algebraic object.

The following examples illustrate a variety of user-defined functions.

**Example:** Create a UDF for computing the volume of a cone from the radius of its base and its height: \( V = \frac{\pi}{3} r^2 h. \)

1. Type « + r h ' r^2 h / 3 * \pi ' » (if you prefer to use the algebraic syntax in the defining procedure); or
type « + r h « r SQ h * 3 / \pi * » » (if you prefer the postfix syntax).
   Note that in either case, the \( \pi \) term comes last so that the remaining factors will be fully evaluated.

2. Enter the name for the UDF: 'VCONETENTER.

3. Store the function: STO.

4. Test the function. Put a radius of 4 and a height of 11 onto the stack; execute the function VCON: 4 ENTER 11 ENTER VAR VCON.

   **Result:** '58.66666666667*\pi' (if Flags -2 and -3 are clear)
   184.306769011 (if either Flag -2 or -3 is set).

Reminder: Flag -2 controls whether symbolic constants such as \( \pi \) are kept symbolic (*clear*) or forced to be numeric (*set*). Flag -3 controls whether algebraic results are allowed to remain symbolic (*clear*) or are forced to be converted to numeric form (*set*).
Example: Create a user-defined function for the distance between two points in space:

\[ \text{DIST}(x_1, y_1, z_1, x_2, y_2, z_2) = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2} \]

Assume that the function will find the six coordinates on the stack in the order shown next to DIST in the above definition.

1. Enter the equation, including the name, DIST, and the list of variables it uses (in the order they go on the stack) on the left-hand side:

\[ \text{EQUATION} \alpha \alpha \text{DIST} \alpha \leftrightarrow () \alpha \leftrightarrow X 1 \leftrightarrow \star \alpha \leftrightarrow Y 1 \leftrightarrow \star \alpha \leftrightarrow Z 1 \leftrightarrow \star \alpha \leftrightarrow X 2 \leftrightarrow \star \alpha \leftrightarrow Y 2 \leftrightarrow \star \alpha \leftrightarrow Z 2 \leftrightarrow \star \alpha \leftrightarrow X 2 - \alpha \leftrightarrow X 1 \blacktriangleright \alpha \text{\(\times\) 2} \blacktriangleleft \alpha \leftrightarrow Y 2 - \alpha \leftrightarrow Y 1 \blacktriangleright \alpha \text{\(\times\) 2} \blacktriangleleft \alpha \leftrightarrow Z 2 - \alpha \leftrightarrow Z 1 \blacktriangleright \alpha \text{\(\times\) 2} \blacktriangleleft \text{ENTER} \]

2. To store the expression on the right-hand side of the equal sign in the name on the left-hand side, you simply define the equation: \(\text{\(<\)DEF}\).

3. Test it by finding the distance between the two points (3,-4,6) and (1,8,-3). Enter the six coordinates in order and execute DIST:

\[ \text{3 ENTER} \quad \text{4 +/- ENTER} \quad \text{6 ENTER} \quad \text{1 ENTER} \quad \text{8 ENTER} \quad \text{3 +/- ENTER} \quad \text{VAR \ DIST} \]

Result: 15.1327459504
Can a UDF be plotted? Usually not without modification; most UDF’s remove objects from the stack (which wreaks havoc with the **PLOT** application). However, the modifications necessary to make them “plot-ready” are often quite easy, as the following example illustrates.

**Example:** Use the **Vcone** function to plot the variation of a cone’s volume with the radius of its base (assuming the height remains constant).

1. Open the **PLOT** application and highlight the **EQ:** field.
2. Move to the stack: **NXT** **CALC**.
3. Recall **Vcone** back to the stack and edit it so that \( r \) and \( h \) are given the values \( 'r' \) and 1, respectively: **VAR** → **Vcone** ↓ ↑ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ **R** ↓ **SPC** 1 **ENTER**.
4. Return the modified version to the **EQ:** field: **CONT** **OK** **NXT**.
5. Put \( r \) into **INDEP:** and set **H- View**: \( -0.5, 6 \) and **V- View**: \( -5, 20 \).
6. Press **OPTS** to go to the **PLOT OPTIONS** screen. On the top line you will see settings for the plotting range for the independent variable. Much of the time, the plotting range is the same as the horizontal display range (**H- View**)—indeed, this is the default setting. However, there are occasions when you may wish to **plot** a different set of values than those indicated in your choice of **display** range. Set the plotting range to **LO**: \( 0 \) **HI**: \( 5 \). Then press **OK** to save your settings and return to the main PLOT screen.
7. Plot the function: **ERASE** **DRAW**.
You may prefer to use a friendlier kind of user interface with your UDF’s. Jim Donnelly’s program, UDFUI, included in his book *The HP 48 Handbook* (and included here with his permission), takes the name of a UDF that you have already created and provides it the kind of friendly user-interface similar to many built-in applications on the G-Series machines.

**Example:** (This example assumes that you have already keyed in the UDFUI program, listed on page 317, and that it is stored in the current directory path). Use the UDFUI program to get a special interface for the UDF in the example on page 25 (DIST).

1. Enter the name of the UDF onto the stack: \texttt{[I \alpha D I S T] ENTER}.
2. Execute the UDFUI program: \texttt{[I \alpha U D F U I] ENTER}.*

3. To test the new interface, calculate the distance between the points (4,-1,-2) and (-5,3,0). Move the highlight to the \texttt{X1:} field and enter the various coordinates: \texttt{4 ENTER 1+/- ENTER 2 +/- ENTER 5+/- ENTER 3 ENTER 0 ENTER}; press \texttt{OK}, then \texttt{EDIT}:

\begin{verbatim}
DIST
X1: 4
Y1: -1
Z1: -2
X2:
Y2: 3
Z2: 0
DIST: 13...
10.0498756211
\end{verbatim}

*If you have trouble here, be sure that DIST must be in the current directory path in order for UDFUI to find it.

---

*User-Defined Functions* 27
2. **TRIGONOMETRY**
The Trigonometric Relationships

Trigonometry is the use of "triangle measurements" to describe angles. Every angle $\theta$ has an associated a set of right triangles that can be constructed around it to demonstrate various relationships:

The six trigonometric relationships—ratios, actually—are derived directly from the basic geometric rules of similar triangles. And notice that if you let the radius $r = 1$ (i.e. use a unit circle), then the ratios show up even more directly:

$$\sin \theta = \frac{y}{r} \quad \cos \theta = \frac{x}{r} \quad \tan \theta = \frac{y}{x} = \frac{c}{r}$$
$$\csc \theta = \frac{b}{y} \quad \sec \theta = \frac{a}{x} \quad \cot \theta = \frac{x}{y} = \frac{d}{r}$$

The six trigonometric relationships—ratios, actually—are derived directly from the basic geometric rules of similar triangles. And notice that if you let the radius $r = 1$ (i.e. use a unit circle), then the ratios show up even more directly:

Besides showing the trigonometric ratios directly, the unit circle also helps to define trigonometric functions. These functions describe how the trigonometric ratios (sine, tangent, etc.) change as the angle $\theta$ changes (e.g. as the radius, $r$, "sweeps" around the circle). The trigonometric ratios encountered as the radius sweeps around the circle repeat themselves; i.e., the trig functions are periodic.
Radians and Degrees: Units of Angle

When measuring angles as a part of triangles, it is most common to use degrees, minutes and seconds. But whenever you want to use angle measure as the independent variable in a function—for example, when plotting or solving—you should use units of radians. A radian is the amount of angle you sweep out as you move along the arc of a circle for a distance equal to the radius of that circle. One radian is exactly $\frac{180}{\pi}$ degrees (approximately 57.3°).

**Example:** Convert 214° to radians.

1. Enter 214 onto the stack: \[214 \text{ ENTER} \].
2. Press \(\text{MTH} \rightarrow \text{REAL} \rightarrow \text{NXT} \rightarrow \text{D} \rightarrow \text{R} \).

   \text{Result: } 3.73500459927 \text{ radians}

**Example:** Add 23° 34' 18" to 15° 42' 07" and convert the result to radians.

1. Enter 23.3418 onto the stack: \(23.3418 \text{ ENTER} \).
2. Enter 15.4207 and press \(\rightarrow \text{TIME} \rightarrow \text{NXT} \rightarrow \text{HMS} \) (HMS+ does degree and time addition, hence the acronym: “Hours, Minutes, Seconds”).
3. Convert the result to decimal degrees: \(\rightarrow \text{DEC} \).
4. Convert decimal degrees to radians: \(\text{MTH} \rightarrow \text{REAL} \rightarrow \text{NXT} \rightarrow \text{D} \rightarrow \text{R} \).

   \text{Result: } 0.685453823837

**Example:** Convert $\pi \, \frac{\text{rad}}{28}$ radians to degrees, minutes, and seconds.

1. Enter ‘$\pi \, \frac{\text{rad}}{28}$‘ onto the stack: \(\pi \rightarrow \div \rightarrow 28 \text{ ENTER} \).
2. First, convert this angle measure to decimal degrees: \(\text{MTH} \rightarrow \text{REAL} \rightarrow \text{NXT} \rightarrow \text{R} \rightarrow \text{D} \) (then \(\rightarrow \text{NUM} \) if necessary).
3. Now convert from decimal degrees to degrees, minutes, and seconds: \(\rightarrow \text{TIME} \rightarrow \text{NXT} \rightarrow \text{HMS} \).

   \text{Result: } 6.25428571428°, \text{ which means } 6° 25' 42\frac{1}{7}"

30

2. Trigonometry
Example: Plot the function, sin(X), in radians, then in degrees.

1. Begin the PLOT application (PLOT) and make sure that the TYPE is Function and that θ is Rad.
2. Reset the plot parameters to their defaults: DEL ▼ ENTER.
3. With the highlight on the EQ field, type ▼ SIN θ X ENTER.
4. Draw the plot: ERASE DRAW.
5. When the plot is drawn, press CANCEL to return to the PLOT screen, and change θ to Deg (press ▲ RAD).
6. Draw the plot again on top of the previous one: DRAW ....

Those two plots are not nearly the same, are they? This illustrates the importance of matching the display ranges to the angle measure: To achieve the same plot in degrees, you would need to change the H-VIEW to run from -720 to 720 before drawing.
The **TRIGX** Program

**TRIGX** is a program that computes a number of different ratios and values for a given angle. After entering the program (see page 314 in the Appendix), you start it running either by typing **TRIGX** and pressing **ENTER** or selecting **TRIGX** from the **VAR** menu.

![TRIGONOMETRY EXPLORER](image)

To use **TRIGX**, you simply enter any known values into their appropriate fields and then press **OK**. The program will compute values for the remaining fields. Here’s how it works:

- If the angle measure and radius are given, **TRIGX** bases its computations on them.
- If more than one angle measure is given (i.e. degrees and radians), then the computations are based on the currently set mode; the other is re-computed to match.
- If there is no angle measure or radius given, they are computed from those values that *are* given, if at all possible. Only principal angles (matching the given inputs) will be returned.
- If it is not possible to compute an angle measure or a radius, default values of 45° and 1 are used and the computations adjusted.
Example: Given: 60° angle and a radius of 3.

1. Begin the program and enter the values in the appropriate fields.
2. Press OK.

Example: Given: \( \cos \theta = -0.5 \), \( \tan \theta = \sqrt{3} \), and arc length = \( \frac{40\pi}{3} \).

1. Clear the data from the previous example: DEL \( \downarrow \) (ENTER).
2. Enter values in the appropriate fields. Note that you can use tick-marks to enter a value “symbolically” (i.e. \( '40/3\pi' \)), if you wish: \( \downarrow \downarrow \) \( '40/3\pi' \) \( \div \) 3 \( \times \) (ENTER) \( → \pi \) (ENTER) \( × \) 5 \( \# / \) (ENTER) \( \uparrow \) \( '4/3\pi' \) (ENTER).
3. Press OK.
Verifying Identities

There are a number of special interrelationships between the trigonometric functions that are always true no matter the size of the angle or angles involved. These interrelationships are called identities.

Here is a core list of important trigonometric identities:

- **Pythagorean Identities.** These are evident if you apply the Pythagorean theorem for right triangles to the diagram at the bottom of page 29.

  \[
  \sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta = 1 \quad \text{(thus } 1 - \sin^2 \theta = \cos^2 \theta \text{ and } 1 - \cos^2 \theta = \sin^2 \theta) \\
  1 + \tan^2 \theta = \sec^2 \theta \quad \text{(thus } \sec^2 \theta - \tan^2 \theta = 1 \text{ and } \sec^2 \theta - 1 = \tan^2 \theta) \\
  1 + \cot^2 \theta = \csc^2 \theta \quad \text{(thus } \csc^2 \theta - \cot^2 \theta = 1 \text{ and } \csc^2 \theta - 1 = \cot^2 \theta) 
  \]

- **Difference and Sum Identities.**

  \[
  \cos(\alpha \pm \beta) = \cos \alpha \cos \beta \mp \sin \alpha \sin \beta \\
  \sin(\alpha \pm \beta) = \sin \alpha \cos \beta \pm \cos \alpha \sin \beta \\
  \tan(\alpha \pm \beta) = \frac{\tan \alpha \pm \tan \beta}{1 \mp \tan \alpha \tan \beta}
  \]

- **Double Angle Identities.**

  \[
  \sin 2\theta = 2 \sin \theta \cos \theta \\
  \cos 2\theta \equiv \cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta \\
  \equiv 1 - 2 \sin^2 \theta \\
  \equiv 2 \cos^2 \theta - 1 \\
  \tan 2\theta = \frac{2 \tan \theta}{1 - \tan^2 \theta}
  \]
• **Half-Angle Identities.**

\[
\sin \frac{\alpha}{2} \equiv \pm \sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos \alpha}{2}} \quad \cos \frac{\alpha}{2} \equiv \pm \sqrt{\frac{1 + \cos \alpha}{2}} \quad \tan \frac{\alpha}{2} \equiv \pm \sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos \alpha}{1 + \cos \alpha}}
\]

• **Sum and Product Identities.**

\[
\sin \alpha + \sin \beta = 2 \sin \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \cos \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}
\]
\[
\sin \alpha - \sin \beta = 2 \cos \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \sin \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}
\]
\[
\cos \alpha + \cos \beta = 2 \cos \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \cos \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}
\]
\[
\cos \alpha - \cos \beta = -2 \sin \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \sin \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}
\]

These core identities, the proofs for which are usually included in standard math textbooks, are themselves used in two important ways:

- To establish new identities that are useful in particular problem-solving situations.
- To aid in obtaining exact numerical solutions to problems involving trigonometric solutions.

Look at each of these uses, one at a time....
To use the HP 48 to help establish new trigonometric identities, you need to use its symbolic manipulation tools.

When doing symbolic manipulations, you must be sure that flag –3 is clear (press \( \text{MODES} \) \( \text{FLAG} \) and verify that flag 03 is unchecked), so that results remain symbolic.

Example: Verify that \( \frac{1 - \cos x}{\sin x} = \frac{\sin x}{1 + \cos x} \) is indeed an identity.

Although it is often faster and more convenient to do this kind of algebraic manipulation manually, the HP 48 is capable of performing symbolic verifications.

1. Type the expression in the Equation Writer, \( \text{EQUATION} \) \( \text{1 - COS} x \) \( \text{SIN} x \) \( \text{1 + COS} x \), and press to put it onto the stack.
2. Multiply both sides of the equation by \( \sin x \): \( \text{SIN} x \) \( \text{ENTER} \) \( \times \).
3. Simplify the result by collecting like terms: \( \text{SYMBOLIC} \) \( \text{COLCT} \).
4. Multiply both sides of the equation by \( 1 + \cos x \) and simplify the results: \( 1 + \text{COS} x \) \( \text{ENTER} \) \( \times \) \( \text{COLCT} \).
5. Use the pattern matching application to replace 'SIN(x)^2' with its equivalent, '1-COS(x)^2': First, press \( \text{SYMBOLIC} \) \( \text{OK} \) \( \text{MATCH} \) to display the MATCH EXPRESSION screen.

![MATCH EXPRESSION dialog box]

**EXPR:**

**PATTERN:**

**REPLACEMENT:**

**ENTER EXPRESSION**
Next, with the **Expr**: field highlighted, retrieve the expression:
Press \( \text{NXT} \text{ CALC} \) (and \( \leftarrow \) if the target expression isn’t already on level 1), then \( \text{OK} \).

Now highlight the **Pattern** field, and enter the pattern to be replaced, substituting each occurrence of \( \times \) with the wildcard name \( \&1 \):
\[ ' \text{SIN} \alpha \leftarrow \text{ENTER} 1 \text{ \( \times \) 2 \( \text{ENTER} \).} \]
(Notice that the special wildcard character, \( \& \), can be typed with \( \alpha \) \( \text{ENTER} \).)

Type in the replacement pattern, using the wildcard name instead of the variable:
\[ '1-\text{COS} \alpha \leftarrow \text{ENTER} 1 \text{ \( \times \) 2 \( \text{ENTER} \).} \]
Press \( \text{ENTER} \) \( \text{ENTER} \) \( \text{ENTER} \) to return the modified expression to the stack. Press \( \text{EXPA} \text{ EXPA} \text{ EXPA} \text{ COLCT} \).

Result: \( '1-\text{COS}(\alpha)^2=1-\text{COS}(\alpha)^2' \)

The verification is complete.
Example: Verify that \( \sin^4 x + 1 = 2 \sin^2 x + \cos^4 x \).

This time use a graphical approach. Notice that if you subtract \( \sin^4 x \) from both sides of the target equation, you will have an expression equal to 1, so it should (if the original equation is true) produce a horizontal line plot.

1. Enter the expression onto level 1 of the stack:

\[
\sin(x)^4 + 1 = 2 \sin(x)^2 + \cos(x)^4
\]

2. Subtract \( \sin^4 x \) from both sides of the equation:

\[
\sin(x)^4 + 1 - \sin(x)^4 = 2 \sin(x)^2 + \cos(x)^4 - \sin(x)^4
\]

3. Press \( \rightarrow \text{PLOT} \) to prepare to plot the equation.

4. Reset the plot parameters to their defaults: \( \text{DEL} \text{ENTER} \).

5. Make sure that TYPE is Function and \( \theta \) is Rad. Then, with the \( \text{EQ} \) field highlighted, press \( \text{NXT} \text{CALC} \) (\( \leftarrow \), if necessary, to bring the target equation to level 1) \( \leftarrow \text{EDIT} \text{DEL} \text{DEL} \text{ENTER} \text{OK} \) \( \text{NXT} \). This puts the right-hand side expression into \( \text{EQ} \).

6. Enter \( x \) (lower-case) in \( \text{INDEP} \) and press \( \text{ERASE} \text{DRAW} \):

7. Press \( \text{TRACE} (x,y) \) and then move along the plot with \( \leftarrow \) and \( \rightarrow \) to convince yourself that the expression equals 1 for all values of \( x \).
8. Although this seems to confirm the identity, it isn’t proof. Try one more thing before you accept the verdict for good. Press [CANCEL] to return to PLOT screen, check AUTOSCALE and press [DRAW] to superimpose the autoscaled plot on top of the original:

What’s happening?!? Why did the seemingly constant graph suddenly become very “non-constant?”

To find out, press [CANCEL] and inspect the Y-VIEW parameters that were automatically computed by the machine (highlight them and press [EDIT]).... You will discover that the variation you are viewing is occurring in a vertical range of 0.000000000016. Thus, you can conclude that the identity is true: the “huge” visual variation you see is actually negligible—caused only by the 12-digit limitation on numerical precision in the HP 48.

So although it can’t provide rigorous proof, the graphical approach to identity verification is a good check against your symbolic derivations (whether performed by hand or on the HP 48). However, keep in mind that autoscaling tends to show you any variation it finds, and thus it can fall prey to the machine’s numerical limitations (round-off), as in this case.

Verifying Identities
The next example illustrates the computational use of identities.

**Example:** Solve this equation for $x$: \[
\sin \frac{17\pi}{12} - \sin \frac{11\pi}{12} = x \sin \frac{\pi}{4}
\]

You want an *exact* answer, not merely a 12-digit numerical approximation, so be sure that flag -3 is clear before trying to work symbolically.

1. Notice that the left-hand side of the equation matches the form of one of the Sum and Product Identities (see page 35). So, make a pattern substitution:

First, from the stack, press →SYMBOLIC ▲OK: MATCH. Then enter the equation in the EXPR field: ➔ EQUATION SIN 17 ➔ π ➔ 12 ➔ SIN 11 ➔ π ➔ 12 ENTER.

Next, enter the pattern to be matched in **PATTERN**: 

\[\sin(\&1) - \sin(\&2)\]

And enter the new pattern in **REPLACEMENT**: 

\[2\times\cos((\&1+\&2)/2)\times\sin((\&1-\&2)/2)\]

Press ENTER ENTER ENTER to make the replacement and return to the stack.

2. Solve for $\times$: 1 α ← X ← SYMBOLIC ISOL COLCT.

3. Change the decimals to fractions. Note that whenever you do this, STD display format sometimes yields odd results due to rounded precision in the last decimal place (thus a change to FIX format): 9 SPC α α F 1 X ENTER NXT ≫ Q.

4. Collect terms again and convert the decimals in the resulting equation to fractions once again: ← PREV COLCT NXT ≫ Q.

Result: $\times = 2\times\cos(7/6\pi)$
Varying Coefficients in Trig Functions

The sine and cosine functions can be described generically as follows:

\[ f(x) = A \sin^E(Bx + C) + D \quad \text{or} \quad f(x) = A \cos^E(Bx + C) + D \]

Several characteristics of these plots of this function can be determined by its coefficients:

- The amplitude of the function—the height (or depth) of each “wave”—is equal to \(|A|\).
- The period of the function is equal to \(\frac{2\pi}{|B|}\).
- The horizontal (or phase) shift of the function is \(-\frac{C}{|B|}\).
- The vertical shift of the function is \(D\).
- The shape of the curve is affected by \(E\). Higher values of \(E\) yield steeper, more jagged curves.

You can investigate all of these characteristics more thoroughly by using the FMPLT program and the generic function shown above. Here are some sample results, shown in the next few figures....
Different Amplitudes
\[ A = (1, 2, 3, 4), \ B = 1, \ C = 0, \ D = 1, \ E = 1 \]

Different Periods
\[ A = 1, \ B = (0.5, 1, 2), \ C = 0, \ D = 1, \ E = 1 \]
Horizontal Shifting
A=1, B=1, C={ '$-\pi/3$', '$\pi/4$', '$3\pi/2$'}, D=1, E=1

Vertical Shifting
A=1, B=1, C=0, D={-1 0 1 2}, E=1

Different Curve Shape
A=1, B=1, C=0, D=1, E={1 2 3}

Varying Coefficients in Trig Functions
Solving Triangles

One of the most important uses for trigonometry is the computation of distances or angles that cannot be measured directly. Here’s the general approach for these kinds of problems:

- “Create” a triangle involving the unknown measurement as one of its sides or angles. This is sometimes called triangulation.
- Measure two or more accessible elements (sides and angles) of the triangle.
- Use the principals and theorems of trigonometry to compute the unknown, remote element.

The process of computing the missing elements of a triangle from a few givens is referred to as solving the triangle. The figure below shows the elements of the triangle as they are conventionally labeled:

Note that $a$ is the shortest side, $c$ the longest. Angle $A$ is opposite side $a$, angle $B$ opposite side $b$, and angle $C$ opposite side $c$.

Triangle solutions use of a series of trigonometric laws, each of which requires that a particular set of triangle elements be known:

- **Sum of the angles**: The sum of the interior angles in a triangle equals $180^\circ$.
  
  *Required knowns*: Any two angles (AA).

- **Law of Sines**: \[
\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C}
\]
  
  *Required knowns*: Two angles and any side (AAS, ASA); or two sides and a non-included angle (SSA).

- **Law of Cosines**: 
  \[
  a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc \cos A \\
  b^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac \cos B \\
  c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C
  \]
  
  *Required knowns*: Two sides and the included angle (SAS); or all three sides (SSS).
- **Heron's Formula**: \( K = \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)} \), where \( s = \frac{a+b+c}{2} \)

  **Required knowns**: All sides (SSS); or the area and any two sides (KSS).

- **Area Formula**: \( K = \frac{1}{2}ab \sin C = \frac{1}{2}ac \sin B = \frac{1}{2}bc \sin A \)

  **Required knowns**: Two sides and the included angle (SAS); or the area and any two sides (KSS); or the area, an angle, and an adjacent side (KSA).

- **Area Formula (2-angle form)**: \( K = \frac{1}{2}a^2 \frac{\sin B \sin C}{\sin(B + C)} \)

  **Required knowns**: Two angles and the included side (ASA); or the area and any two angles (KAA); or the area, an angle, and an adjacent side (KSA).

**Example:** Solve a triangle (including its area), given: \( A = 25^\circ, \ b = 6, \ c = 3^\circ \)

1. Consider which laws you can apply to obtain the missing elements.
   The known values here are two sides and the included angle (SAS).

2. Solve for \( a \) by using the Law of Cosines: Set DEG mode, then press \( \boxed{\text{SOLVE}} \) to begin the Solver. Highlight the \( \vec{\alpha} \) field, then:
   \( \begin{array}{c}
   \alpha \leftarrow A \times 2 \leftarrow = \alpha \times B \times 2 \leftarrow + \alpha \times C \times 2 \leftarrow 2 \times \alpha \\
   \times \times \times \cos \times \alpha \times \alpha \times \alpha \rightarrow 6 \times \text{ENTER}. \end{array} \) (The degree mark helps denote angle names.) Enter values in the \( \vec{A}, \vec{B} \) and \( \vec{C} \) fields, then highlight \( \vec{A} \) and SOLVE. Result: \( \vec{A} = 3.51751612174 \)

3. Use the Law of Sines to compute \( B \): Move the highlight to \( \vec{B} \) and enter the equation: \( \frac{a}{\sin(A^\circ)} = \frac{b}{\sin(B^\circ)} \). Known values remain from before, so highlight the \( \vec{B} \) field, enter a guess of 100 \( \boxed{100 \times \text{ENTER}} \),** and \( \boxed{\text{SOLVE}} \). Result: \( \vec{B} = 133.872757364 \)

4. Subtract the sum of \( \vec{A} \) and \( \vec{B} \) from 180° to find \( C^\circ \): Press \( \boxed{\text{CANCEL}} \), \( 2 \times 5 \times + \times 18 \times 10 \times \text{SWAP} \). Result: \( 21.127242659 \)

5. Finally, compute \( K = \frac{1}{2}bc \sin A \): Press \( 2 \times 5 \times \sin \times 6 \times 3 \times \times 2 \times \div \). Result: \( 3.80356435568 \)

*This is unconventional notation (since \( b>c \)), which you'll often encounter. But since you don't know all the sides, you don't know the conventional labelling, anyway. *No matter*: The trig laws apply to any labelling scheme.

**In searching for \( B^\circ = \text{ASIN} (\sin(A^\circ) \times b/a) \), SOLVE will find an acute angle—the principal value—if you give it a guess less than 90° (or no guess at all—i.e. a "guess" of 0°). But here you (correctly) suspect an obtuse angle for \( B \), so you give a guess greater than 90° to guide the search properly.
Example: Solve a triangle (including its area), given: $A = 15^\circ$, $a = 4$, $b = 8$. This time, use the program $\text{SOL}^\triangle$ (for the program listing, see page 308 in the Appendix) to automate the process of solving for multiple missing variables.

1. Type $\text{SOL}^\triangle$ and press (ENTER); or select $\text{SOL}^\triangle$ from the (VAR) menu.

2. Enter the known values into their appropriate fields: $4$ (ENTER) $8$ (ENTER) $15$ (ENTER).

3. Press (OK). After a moment, you will get a message indicating that the program has found One of two solutions.

This indicates that there are actually two different triangles that can have $A \circ = 15^\circ$, $a = 4$, and $b = 8$. Press (OK) and one of them will be returned to the $\text{SOLVE TRIANGLE}$ screen:
4. The two solutions use different supplementary values for $B^\circ$, which was the "missing" member of the two "couples"—$a$ and $A^\circ$, $b$ and $B^\circ$—in the original problem. So, find the supplement of $B^\circ$, using the stack, then delete the values for $c$, $C^\circ$ and the area, and compute the other solution:

```
\[ \text{NXT} \text{ CALC} \ 18 \ 0 \ \text{ENTER} \ \text{SWAP} \ \text{OK} \]
\[ \Delta \ \text{DEL} \ \text{ENTER} \ \text{V} \ \text{DEL} \ \text{ENTER} \ \text{DEL} \ \text{ENTER} \ \text{OK} \].
```

**Example:** Solve a triangle given: $K = 25$, $A = 38^\circ$, $C = 86^\circ$

1. Press $\Delta \ \text{DEL} \ \text{ENTER}$ to reset the values in the SOLVE TRIANGLE screen.

2. Enter the known values into the appropriate fields: $\text{NXT} \ 3 \ 8 \ \text{ENTER} \ 8 \ 6 \ \text{ENTER} \ 2 \ 5 \ \text{ENTER}$.

3. Press $\text{OK}$.
Solving Trigonometric Equations

Recall that an equation that is true for all values of the independent variable is called an identity. However, many useful problems and real-world situations can be modeled using conditional equations—which are only true for a small subset of values of the independent variable.

For example, the equation \( \sin \theta = \frac{1}{2} \) is a conditional equation because it is true for only some values of \( \theta \). To determine these particular values, the equation must be solved. There are three different approaches:

- Use the built-in root-finder, with either the Solver or the Function Plot Analysis tools.
- Compute solutions directly from the keyboard using the inverse trigonometric functions.
- Use the \( \text{ISOL} \) command to symbolically isolate ("solve for") a particular variable.

**Example:** *Root-Finder.* Use the built-in root-finder in the SOLVE application to solve the equation \( \sin \theta = \frac{1}{2} \).

1. Make sure that you’re in Degree mode, press \( \text{SOLVE} \) and enter the equation (\( \text{SIN}(\theta) = .5 \)) in the \( \theta \) field (note that \( \Theta \) types a \( \theta \)).
2. Then press \( \text{SOLVE} \) with the \( \theta \) field highlighted. The root-finder returns a solution, 30, but it isn’t the only solution.
3. Enter 200 into the \( \theta \) field as a guess, re-highlight that field, and press \( \text{SOLVE} \). Result: 150. Or try using a guess of 2000. Result: 1950.

Remember: Trigonometric functions are periodic functions; they repeat the same values over and over as the independent variable increases or decreases.
Example: *Function Plot Analysis.* Plot the expression \( '\sin(\theta) - 0.5' \) using \( \text{PLOT} \) and solve for \( \theta \) from the plot.

1. While viewing the \( \text{PLOT} \) screen, enter the expression into the \( \text{EQ} \) field. Change \( \text{INDEP} \) to \( \theta \) and set the \( \text{H-VIEW} \) to \(-2000\ 2000\) and \( \text{V-VIEW} \) to \(-2\ 1\).

2. Use the \( \text{PLOT OPTIONS} \) screen (press \( \text{OPTS} \)) to set the \( \text{STEP} \) to \( 10\); press \( \text{OK} \).

3. Finally, make sure that \( \alpha \) is set to \( \text{Deg} \) and press \( \text{ERASE} \ \text{DRAW} \).

4. Each point where the plot crosses the horizontal axis is a solution. To find one, move the cursor out toward the right side of the screen and press \( \text{FCN} \ \text{ROOT} \).

As with the \( \text{SOLVE} \) application, you may repeat this with any of the possible solutions.
Example: *Keyboard functions.* Find the sin $\theta = \frac{1}{2}$ directly from the keyboard.

1. Enter .5 onto the stack.
2. Press $\text{INV} \text{ ASIN}$. Result: 30

The inverse trigonometric functions located on the keyboard (ASIN, ACOS, and ATAN) always return the *principal value* solution. For ASIN and ATAN, the principal value solution is that located between $-90^\circ$ and $90^\circ$. For ACOS, the principal value solution is that located between $0^\circ$ and $180^\circ$.

Example: *The ISOL command.* Use the ISOL command to find the *general* solution for the equation sin $\theta = \frac{1}{2}$.

1. Make sure that flag $-1$ is clear. The ISOL command (among others) will return the general solution if flag $-1$ is clear and the principal solution if flag $-1$ is set. Press $\text{MODES} \text{FLAG}$, and be sure that 01 General solutions is unchecked (if necessary, press $\text{CHECK}$). Press (ENTER) (ENTER) when finished.

2. Enter the equation onto the stack.
3. Enter the name of the variable for which you are solving ("$\theta$").
4. Press $\text{SYMBO} \text{LISOL}$.

Result: $\theta=30^\circ(-1)^n1+180^\circ n1$

The $n1$ variable stands for any whole number. If you store a whole number in $n1$ and then evaluate the general solution (after purging the solution variable, $\theta$) you’ll get a particular solution. If you store 0 in $n1$ and evaluate, you’ll get the principal solution.

For example: ![example](image)

2. TRIGONOMETRY
Problem Solving with Trigonometry

This section works through a set of typical problem situations where trigonometry is useful. For most of these examples, you will probably want to set the display mode to something suitable for real-world situations: \[2 \alpha \alpha \text{F} \text{I} \text{X} \text{ENTER}\].

**Prob. 1:** You are considering buying a piece of land for which the asking price is $75,000. It is a triangular plot of land has two sides which have length 400 feet and 600 feet. The angle between these sides is 46°20'. If comparable land is selling for $1.15 per square foot, should you pay the asking price?

1. To compute the area of the triangular plot, use the area formula \(K = \frac{1}{2}ab \sin C\) directly (make sure that you’re in DEG mode):

   Enter the sides: \[400 \rightarrow \text{UNITS} \text{LEN} \text{G} \text{FT} \text{ } 600 \text{FT}\]. Multiply the two side lengths together and then halve the product: \[\times \cdot 5\times\]. Next, enter the angle in DD.MMSS form (46.2) and convert it to decimal degrees: \[\leftarrow \text{TIME} \text{NXT} \text{HMS}\]. Now find the sine and multiply it by the previous product to compute the area of the plot: \[\text{SIN}\times\]

   Result: 86804.28 ft\(^2\)

2. Compute the market value of the plot of land: \[1 \cdot 15 \rightarrow \alpha \rightarrow \text{UNITS} \text{ARE} \text{A} \text{FT}^2 \text{ ENTER}\].

   Result: 99824.92 \$


Problem Solving with Trigonometry
Prob. 2: Two ranger stations located 10 km apart receive a distress call from a camper. Electronic equipment allows them to determine that the camper is at an angle of 71° from the first station and 100° from the second, each angle having as one side the line between the stations. Which station is closer to the camper? How far away is it?

1. This problem of “triangulation” is one involving two angles and the included side (ASA). However, simply drawing a fairly accurate picture will give you an answer to the first question:

![Diagram of two ranger stations and a camper with angles and distances labeled]

Obviously, the camper is closer to the station B, at the 100° angle.

2. To determine the distance, first find the third angle, using the law of the sum of the interior angles: \(180° - (100° + 71°) = 9°\).

Now use the Law of Sines: \(\frac{10 \text{ km}}{\sin 9°} = \frac{x \text{ km}}{\sin 71°}\).

Press \(10 \rightarrow \text{UNITS} \rightarrow \text{LEN} \rightarrow \text{NXT} \rightarrow \text{K} \rightarrow \text{M} \rightarrow 71 \rightarrow \text{SIN} \times 9 \rightarrow \text{SIN} \rightarrow \div\).

Result: 60.44 km.
Prob. 3: Two tracking stations, located 1115 miles apart, simultaneously spot a UFO. One station measures the angle of elevation to be 28°, and the other 67° (relative to the same direction). How far above the surface of the earth is the UFO? How far away is it from the closest tracking station?

1. Draw a diagram of the problem:

![Diagram of the problem]

2. Note from the diagram that \( \tan 28° = \frac{h}{1115 + x} \) and \( \tan 67° = \frac{h}{x} \).

Thus, \( h = (1115 + x) \tan 28° = x \tan 67° \).

3. Be sure that you’re in DEG mode, then input the equation and solve for \( x \):

\[
\text{Result: } x = 325.01
\]
Prob. 4: Scientists at two astronomical observatories, located on the equator, observe the sun at the same time in order to determine its distance from earth. The observer at Observatory A, located at 135° 28' 13" West Longitude, views the sun exactly overhead. Meanwhile, her colleague at Observatory B, located at 45° 28' 22" West Longitude, simultaneously sees the sun centered on the horizon. If you assume that the earth's radius is 4000 miles, how far away is the sun?

1. Begin with a diagram. Use a view of the earth and sun from above the North Pole (not drawn to scale):

2. From the diagram, \( d = \frac{r}{\cos \theta} \). The earth's radius, \( r \), is 4000 miles, and the angle \( \theta \) is the difference between the longitude of the two observatories. So, compute that angle: \[ 135.4713 \text{ ENTER} 45.4722 \text{ TIME} \text{ NXT} \text{ H M S} \text{-}. \]
   Result: 89° 59' 51"

3. Now compute the distance \( d \) (and note that you must convert the angle to decimal form before finding the cosine): \[ \text{H M S} \text{-} \text{cos} 4000 \text{ ÷} \text{1/x}. \]
   Result: 91673247.25 (miles)
3. **Polar and Parametric Equations**
The Parametric Perspective

The standard representation of a function, such as \( f(x) = x^2 \), implies that the function’s output value depends upon the input value. To plot a point on the graph of a standard function you need only two things: the input value and the function expression. The horizontal coordinate (x-value) is known; only the vertical coordinate (y-value) need be computed.

Such “dependence” can be misleading, however, so functions may instead be represented parametrically. The parametric representation of a function requires that both the horizontal and vertical coordinates be computed via a third value—a parameter. The two most common parameters used are time \((t)\) and angle \((\theta)\).

Obviously, the added complexity of parametric description must yield important additional value or no one would bother with it. For example, this function describes the curve a rock takes as it is thrown horizontally off a cliff at 32 ft/sec.:

\[
y = -\frac{x^2}{64}
\]
That is, when the rock is a horizontal \(x\) feet from the cliff, it is \(y\) feet below its starting point. While that covers the raw facts of the observed motion, it doesn’t help explain why the motion or make predictions about it, so it’s hard to answer common questions: How long will it take the rock to land? Does throwing it faster forward make it hit the ground sooner? Where will it hit?

However, the parametric representation of this motion gives more information:

\[
x = 32t
y = -16t^2
\]
where \(t\) is the time (in seconds) after the throw.

Now you can see that the horizontal motion is unchanged from the initial throw, but that all of the acceleration is vertically downward due to gravity. And the inclusion of time into the function adds to the predictions you can then make.

Parametric representations are thus essential in separating and predicting the various components of complex motion. Parametric representations are compatible with the time-saving vector and matrix techniques of calculus and can, with no more complexity, be extended to any number of dimensions. Parametric methods are far easier to use in computer algorithms of all kinds—from the design of video-game images to the analysis of exploding particles in advanced physics.
Polar Coordinates

A point in a plane can be described in two distinct ways. **Rectangular** coordinates identify a point, P, by giving its horizontal and vertical position on a rectangular grid—\((x,y)\). **Polar** coordinates identify that point, P, by giving its distance from the origin (or pole) and its direction with respect to the polar axis—\((r,\theta)\).

![Diagram of Polar Coordinates]

Functions using rectangular coordinates use the horizontal coordinate (usually \(x\)) as the independent variable. Functions using polar coordinates use the polar angle (usually \(\theta\)) as the independent variable.

The relationship between rectangular and polar coordinates is best described as a special kind of parametric relationship—where the coordinates in one system are the parameters in the other:

\[
\begin{align*}
x &= r \cos \theta \\
y &= r \sin \theta \\
or \\
\theta &= \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)
\end{align*}
\]

The HP 48 always treats the rectangular coordinate system as standard; it uses that representation internally when doing computations. However, it can display coordinates in either polar or rectangular mode, and you may enter coordinates in either form at any time. This means that you need to be careful! It is easy to confuse yourself and generate incorrect answers.

Look at some examples....
Example: In Degree mode and with the rectangular coordinate (3, 4) on the stack, change the display to Polar mode by pressing \( \rightarrow \text{POLAR} \) (one of the polar annunciators is displayed).

Result: \( (5, \angle 53.1301023542) \)

The coordinates are displayed in polar form even though they are still stored internally in rectangular.

Example: While still in polar mode, enter the rectangular coordinate (3, 4): \( \leftarrow (3) \text{SPC} 4\) \( \text{ENTER} \).

Result: \( (5, \angle 53.1301023542) \)

Although the coordinate displays in the command line as rectangular it's displayed in the current mode (polar) on the stack.

Example: Change the mode back to rectangular: \( \rightarrow \text{POLAR} \). Now enter the polar coordinate, \( r = 5 \) and \( \theta = 60^\circ \): \( \leftarrow (5) \text{SPC} \rightarrow \angle 6\) \( \text{ENTER} \).

Result: \( (2.5, 4.33012701892) \)

Note that you must use the angle key to indicate that the second coordinate is an angle (i.e. that the entry is polar). And once again, the form displayed on the stack is that determined by the current setting (rectangular).

Example 4: Enter the polar coordinate \( (5, \pi/3) \). Watch out! In polar mode, you must also pay attention to the angle mode (radians or degrees). Also, note that you cannot directly enter \( \pi \) into the coordinate. Press \( \leftarrow \pi \) \( \text{ENTER} \) \( 3 \) \( \div \) \( \leftarrow \text{NUM} \) to compute \( \pi/3 \). Then \( \leftarrow \text{RAD} \) \( \rightarrow \text{POLAR} \) \( \downarrow \) \( \leftarrow 0 \text{DEL} 5 \) \( \leftarrow \angle \) \( \rightarrow \text{ENTER} \).

Result: \( (5, \angle 1.0471975512) \)
Polar Representations and Complex Numbers

Complex numbers, such as \( x + yi \), are comprised of two parts (real and imaginary). And they, too, have both rectangular and polar representations. Just as real numbers are plotted on a line, complex numbers are plotted on the complex plane—and thus are directly analogous to the coordinates of points in any plane.

On the HP 48, complex numbers are typically represented by ordered pairs—just like the coordinates of points. Computationally, therefore, coordinate pairs are treated by the HP 48 exactly like complex numbers. This will be very convenient when working with analytic geometry, as you’ll see in Chapter 6.

The polar representation of complex numbers is computed by using the same parametric transformation as with coordinates: \( x = r \cos \theta \) \( y = r \sin \theta \). Algebraically, then, a polar complex number, \( z \), looks like this:

\[
z = r(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)
\]

or

\[
z = r \text{cis} \theta, \text{ for short}
\]
Plotting Polar Functions

One of the fifteen kinds of plots built into the HP 48 is designed for plotting functions in polar coordinates. To use it, you need the following information:

- A function, \( f(\theta) \), expressed in polar form
- The range of \( \theta \) that you wish to plot
- The horizontal and vertical ranges of the area of the plot you want to view.
- The interval angle between two plotted points—the resolution of the plot (higher resolution requires more plotting time).

**Example:** Plot the polar function, \( f(\theta) = \frac{6\sin \theta \cos \theta}{\sin^3 \theta + \cos^3 \theta} \), and find its period.

1. Begin the plot application, \( \rightarrow \text{PLOT} \), and select Polar as the plot type.

2. Reset the plot: Press \( \text{DEL} \rightarrow \text{ENTER} \).

3. Highlight the \( \text{EQ} \) field, press \( \leftarrow \text{EQUATION} \) and type in the right-hand side of the equation above. Press \( \text{ENTER} \) when finished to insert the function into the \( \text{EQ} \) field.

4. Change the \( \text{INDEP} \) variable to \( \theta \).

5. Notice the angle mode (in the \( \angle \) field). If it’s set to Deg, then you will want to probably want to use the plotting range 0 to 360, (unless you have a clear idea of the period of the function). If it’s set to Rad, then use the plotting range 0 to 6.2832 (approximately \( 2\pi \)). Press \( \text{OPTS} \) (or \( \text{NXT} \text{OPTS} \), if necessary) and enter the plotting range for the independent variable given the current angle mode.

6. How often should a point be plotted (the \( \text{STEP} \) value)? The default setting is one point every two degrees (\( \pi/90 \) radians). Twice this resolution (one point every degree or every \( \pi/180 \) radians) often gives a very pleasing plot—although it takes a bit longer to plot. Use the default for now.
7. Press **OK** **ERASE** **DRAW** to plot the function:

![Graph of a negatively sloped line and the Folium of Descartes]

Note how the negatively sloped line on the left side of the plot appeared almost instantaneously, whereas the other points were plotted individually. This indicates the probable presence of an asymptote. The curve is called the *Folium of Descartes*. It has the curious property that the area enclosed in the loop is exactly equal to the non-enclosed area between the curve and its asymptote!

8. Confirm the presence of an asymptote by replotting the curve with the **CONNECT** feature off (unchecked): Press **CANCEL** **OPTS** **CHK** **OK** **ERASE** **DRAW**.

![Replot of the curve with the connect feature off]

3. *Polar and Parametric Equations*
9. Now find the period: Press \textbf{TRACE} \((X,Y)\) to prepare the cursor to trace along the function while the display indicates the values of \(\theta\) and the function \((r)\). Press \(\text{[Next]}\) to move the cursor “forward” along the curve. The \(\text{[Prev]}\) key moves the cursor “backward” along the curve. As you can see by playing a bit with the cursor, “forward” and “backward” are interpreted as “increasing” and “decreasing” the value of the independent variable \(\theta\). To find the period, press the cursor forward until it begins to retrace the curve. At this point, you can see that the period is 180°, or \(\pi\) radians.

10. Try one more thing: Observe what happens if you move “backwards” along the curve so that \(\theta\) shows a negative value…. It displays the value of the function even for points outside of the plotting range—and, you will notice, outside of the display range.
Example: Plot the polar equation, $2 \cos 3\theta = 2 \cos^2 \left( \frac{\theta}{2} \right)$.

Whenever you plot an equation that includes the independent variable on both sides, you’ll get a plot of the left-side expression superimposed upon the plot of the right-side expression. The point(s) of intersection of the two plots represents solution(s) to the equation.

1. Return to the PLOT screen: [CANCEL] if you’re viewing the display of the plot; or [→PLOT] if you’re viewing the stack.

2. Highlight the EQ: field and enter the equation: [←(EQUATION)] $2 \cos 3\alpha \rightarrow \text{-F-} \rightarrow \text{-F-} \rightarrow = 2 \cos \alpha \rightarrow \text{-F-} \rightarrow 2 \text{-D-} \rightarrow \text{Y} \times 2 \text{-ENTER}$.  

3. Make sure that the INDEP variable is $\theta$ and that the H-VIEW and V-VIEW ranges are the defaults.

4. Press [OPTS] and turn on CONNECT mode and SIMULTaneous plotting mode (not required, just more interesting).

5. Press [OK]: ERASE DRAW to draw the plot of the equation (or, rather, the plots of the two expressions).

6. Press [TRACE (X,Y)] and explore the two expressions. To make the cursor “jump” between the two plots, use the [▲] and [▼] keys. Notice that the points of intersection occur at $\theta = 0^\circ + 360^\circ n$, but that the period of the left-hand side is $180^\circ$ while that of the right-hand side is $360^\circ$.  

3. POLAR AND PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS
Example: Find all the points where the two cardioids, \( r = 2(1 - \cos \theta) \) and \( r = 2(1 + \cos \theta) \), intersect. The HP 48’s function analysis menu \( \text{[FCH]} \)—with its handy \text{[SECT]}, \text{[ROOT]}, \text{[EXTR]}, \text{[AREA]} \) commands—is available only for plots of rectangular functions. So, to find the intersection of two polar functions, you must observe the functions as they are plotted together, then manually explore the regions of intersection.

1. Return to the \text{[PLOT]} screen and highlight the \text{[EQ]} field.

2. Enter a list containing the two expressions: \( \langle \langle 2 \times \cos \theta \rangle\langle 1 \rangle \\langle 1 + \cos \theta \rangle \\langle 2 \times \cos \theta \rangle\langle 1 \rangle \) \text{[ENTER]}.

3. Leave the rest of the plot parameters as they were for the previous example; press \text{[ERASE]} \text{[DRAW]}. Watch the plot as it’s drawn.

Although there are three points where the plots of the two expressions intersect, only two represent true intersections (“collisions”) where one value for the independent variable (\( \theta \)) gives the identical value for both expressions. Thus, although each plot contains the origin (0,0), they don’t “collide” there.

4. Use the trace feature to find the points of intersection. Press \text{[TRACE]} \text{[X,Y]}, then move forward along one of the cardioids (press and hold \( \text{[} \)) until the cursor is on the upper point of intersection. The display indicates that \( \theta: 90 \) and \( \gamma: 2 \). To confirm this as a point of intersection, press \( \text{[} \) to jump to the other cardioid.... Voilá! The identical coordinates are displayed. Repeating this procedure shows that \( \theta: 270 \) and \( \gamma: -2 \) are the coordinates of the other point of intersection.
Plotting Parametric Functions

Two-dimensional functions described parametrically have their own plot type on the HP 48. To use it, you need the following information:

- A function that is described parametrically—i.e. described as a set of functions, \( x(t) \) and \( y(t) \), where the horizontal and vertical coordinates are expressed separately as a function of some parameter \( t \).
- The range of the parameter, \( t \), that you wish to plot.
- The horizontal and vertical ranges within which you want to view the plot.
- The interval step between two successive plotted values of the parameter \( t \). This determines the resolution of the plot.

The Parametric plot type can be confusing at first, because of its relationship to complex numbers. On the HP 48, functions of real numbers are plotted using the Function plot type, but functions of complex numbers are plotted using the Parametric plot type (see also pages 72-75), because a complex number is composed of two parts—like the two coordinates in a parametric representation. But this association of parametric functions with complex numbers means that you must enter parametric functions as complex numbers—either in coordinate form, \( '(x(t), y(t))' \), or algebraic form, \( '\{x(t)+y(t)*i\}' \).*

Example: Plot the Folium of Descartes using its parametric description:

\[
x(t) = \frac{6t}{1 + t^3} \quad y(t) = \frac{6t^2}{1 + t^3}
\]

1. Open the PLOT application and change the plot type to Parametric.
2. With the EQ: field highlighted, enter the parametric functions together as a single complex number:

```
\( I \uparrow X \uparrow Y \uparrow 3 \uparrow E N T E R \uparrow 1 \uparrow + \uparrow X \uparrow Y \uparrow 3 \uparrow I \uparrow N T E R \).
```

*Note that no matter which form you choose to enter it, the complex-valued function will be displayed in the form determined by the current state of flag -27. If flag -27 is clear (default), it will be displayed in coordinate form. If flag -27 is set, it will be displayed in algebraic form.
Press (ENTER) to return the expression to the EO: field.

3. Now highlight the INDEP: field and enter the name of the parameter (t.), which is the independent variable.

4. Open the PLOT OPTIONS screen. The most difficult aspect of plotting a parametric function is pre-determining the appropriate range and step-size of the parameter, but fortunately, the graphing technology of the HP 48 makes it easy to refine your choices. To begin, just use the default step-size (you may need to reset it: highlight the STEP: field and press (DEL ENTER)). Since the parameter, t., is often regarded as “time” when working with real-world applications, try a plotting range of LO: 0 to HI: 10, as in 0 to 10 seconds.

5. Press (OK ERASE DRAW) to draw the plot.
6. You know from the previous section that the graph of the Folium of Descartes includes two asymptotic wings in addition to the loop captured in the plot above. Why didn’t they show up in the parametric plot? Explore the plot using the TRACE feature to see if you can find why the wings are “hiding.” Press TRACE and then repeatedly to move the cursor “forward” along the curve. Notice that, while the cursor moves rapidly at first, it slows to a crawl on the left-side of the loop. Move the cursor beyond $T: 10$—points need not be plotted for their coordinates to be displayed. It appears that as $t$ gets larger, the curve approaches the origin asymptotically—but it never sprouts the missing wings. Positive $t$ serves only to define the loop. What about negative $t$?

7. Press and move the cursor so that it first retraces the loop backwards, then moves into a region where $t$ is negative. Aha! Like a ghost, there are the hidden wings of the Folium of Descartes.

8. Now that you know some key information about the plot, return to the PLOT OPTIONS screen and enter a better plotting range, say $-10$ to $10$, so that all of the key features of the plot are drawn. Press OK when ready to redraw.

Note how important the kind of parameter is when you try to set a good plotting range: The parameter used in the previous example was linear; it needed the entire set of real numbers, $-\infty$ to $+\infty$, to fully describe the graph just once. By contrast, the Polar plot-type parameter is an angle, which repeats itself as it travels around. Thus, an entire plot is described in just one cycle; extra cycles simply repeat it. But a Parametric plot type also can use an angle as its parameter. .
**Example:** Plot the function defined by the following:

\[
x = \frac{9\cos \theta - 3\cos 9\theta}{5} \quad y = \frac{9\sin \theta - 3\sin 9\theta}{5}
\]

1. Return to the **PLOT** screen and highlight the **EQ**: field.

2. Enter the parametric functions as a complex number: \( \text{EQUATION} \)

3. Change the independent variable to the parameter, \( \theta \).

4. Change the **H-VIEW** range to \(-18\) to \(18\) and the **V-VIEW** range to \(-10\) to \(10\). (Lucky guesses? Nope—trial and error.)

5. Because the parameter is an angle, you must change the plotting range and step interval. Press **OPTS** and change the plotting range to \(0\) to \(360\) (if in Deg mode) or \(0\) to \(6.2832\) (if in Rad mode) and change the step interval to \(1\) (if in Deg mode) or \(0.0174533\) (if in Rad mode).

6. Press **OK**: **ERASE** **DRAW** to draw the plot:

![Plot](image)

Sure enough, one cycle through the possible angles is sufficient to draw the complete curve. This particular curve is called a *prolate epicycloid* and is part of a family of curves generated by a point a given distance from the center of a small circle rolling around the outside of a larger circle. See the section on page 76 for more information about these and other interesting curves.
Another advantage to parametric representation is that the vertical and horizontal components of the function can be more easily analyzed separately.

**Example:** Consider motion that is constrained to a straight line even though the forces controlling the movement are *not* linear, such as the conversion of a circular flywheel motion into the linear motion of a piston:

Suppose the motion of a particle moving only along the line $y = 2$, is subjected to nonlinear forces such that the $x$-coordinate motion is:

$$x(t) = 2t^3 - 14t^2 + 22t - 9,$$

where $t$ is time in seconds.

1. Return to the PLOT screen and highlight the $\text{EQ:}$ field.
2. Enter the parametric function as a complex number:
   
   $$(2t^3 - 14t^2 + 22t - 9)\, \text{i}.$$

   Notice that the $y$-component is a constant.
3. Change the $\text{INDEP:}$ variable to $t$.
4. Set the $\text{H-VIEW}$ to $-20$ to 50 and the $\text{Y-VIEW}$ to $-2$ to 10.6.
5. Set the plot range (in PLOT OPTIONS) to 0 to 6 and $\text{STEP:}$ to 0.05.
6. Draw the plot and watch as it plots:

The plot is a straight-line, of course, because the $y$-component is constrained to be a constant. But did you notice how it was created?
7. Use the Trace feature to explore the function. Press Trace and then repeatedly to increase the value of the parameter in steps of .05 seconds. The cursor moves to the right then seems to pause and return back to the left, then pauses again and moves back to the right—in apparent retrograde motion.

Example: Add a second parametric function to that in the previous example—identical except for the $y$-component, which should be $y(t) = t$.

1. Return to the Plot screen and highlight the $\mathbf{EQ}$ field.

2. You want to add a second parametric function to the one already in place. Use the Calc feature to get access to the stack, where you can copy the current function, edit the copy, and combine the original and modified versions together into a list: $\text{NXT CALC ENTER} \leftarrow \text{EDIT} \uparrow \text{DEL} \alpha \leftarrow \text{T ENTER 2 PRG LIST \#LIST}$.

3. Enter the list into the $\mathbf{EQ}$ field: $\leftarrow \text{CONT \#OK}$.

4. Redraw the plot: $\text{NXT ERASE DRAW}$....

Now you can see the “hidden” function controlling the movement of the $x$-component because the function has been spread out by allowing $y$ to vary with time. Press Trace and use the arrow keys to explore the relationship visually.
Plotting Functions of Complex Numbers

As mentioned earlier, the Parametric plot type on the HP 48 is actually a general purpose complex function plot type. This is why parametric functions are entered as complex numbers—or complex-valued functions, to be precise.

A complex-valued function, \( f(x + iy) = (u + iv) \) takes a complex number \((x, y)\) and maps it to the complex number \((u, v)\). In order to plot the function of the complex number, you must first determine \(u\) and \(v\).

**Example:** For the function \( f(z) = z^2 \), where \( z \) is the complex number \((x + iy)\), compute the complex number \((u, v)\).

1. Make sure flag -27 is clear (press \( \{ 2 \} \{ \rightarrow \} \{ \alpha \} \{ C \} \{ \alpha \} \{ F \} \{ \text{ENTER} \} \)) and enter the symbolic complex number \( '(x, y)' \) onto the stack.

2. Square it: \( \{ 2 \} \{ Y^X \} \).

3. Symbolically expand and collect the result: \( \{ \text{SYMBOLIC} \} \{ \text{EXPA} \} \{ \text{EXPA COLCT} \} \). Result: \( '(-y^2 + x^2, 2xy)' \)

Therefore, your complex-valued function is \( u = x^2 - y^2 \) \( v = 2xy \).

Notice that you cannot simply plot this result—the complex-valued function \( 'x^2 - y^2 + 2x^2y^2' \)—using the Parametric plot type, because you have two “independent” variables (\( x \) and \( y \)) instead of one (usually \( t \) or \( \theta \)). However, you may plot this function if either \( x \) or \( y \) is given a value....
Example: Plot \( f(z) = z^2 \), where \( z \) is the complex number \((x + 3i)\).

1. Open the PLOT screen and make sure that the plot type is still set to Parametric. Highlight the \( \text{EQ:} \) field.
2. Press \( \text{NXT} \) \( \text{CALC} \) to move to the stack. Now enter the complex number onto the stack: \( \{1\{0\{\alpha\} \{x\} \{3\} \{\text{ENTER}\} \).
3. Square the complex number, then expand and collect the result as in the previous example: \( 2 \{y\} \{\text{\(\sim\)}\} \{\text{SYMBO\(\text{LC}\)}\} \{\text{EXP\(\text{A}\)}\} \{\text{EXP\(\text{A}\)}\} \{\text{COLCT}\} \).
   Result: \( (x^2 - 9, 6x) \)
4. Return the result to the \( \text{EQ:} \) field: \( \{\text{\(\sim\)}\} \{\text{CONT}\} \{\text{OK}\} \{\text{NXT}\} \).
5. Change the \( \text{INDEP:} \) variable to \( x \).
6. Switch to the PLOT OPTIONS screen (\( \text{OPTS}\)), and change the plotting range to \(-10\) to \(10\) and the \( \text{STEP} \) to \( .5 \). Press \( \{\text{OK}\} \).
7. Change \( \text{H-VIEW} \) to \(-13\) to \(50\) and check AUTOSCALE.
8. Draw the plot: \( \text{ERASE} \) \( \text{DRAW} \).
The Parametric plot type allows you only to partially plot a complex function, but the HP 48 also has a plot type, **Gridmap**, capable of plotting the complete mapping. Basically, a gridmap plots a *series* of parametric curves, allowing $y$, then $x$, to vary through a series of steps, as if superimposing a series of parametric plots where, say, $y = 3$, then $y = 2$, then $y = 1$, etc; then $x = 3$, $x = 2$, $x = 1$, etc.

**Example:** Plot a grid representation of the complex plane, where $f(z) = z$. This mapping is analogous to the real number function $f(x) = x$ (a straight line), except that it results in a rectilinear *plane* instead of line. The Gridmap plot type represents this plane as a grid—plotting only a few of the infinite number of lines of the plane and allowing those lines to stand for the plane as a whole.

1. At the **PLOT** screen, highlight the **TYPE:** field and change it to **Gridmap**: (Gridmap is the only plot type starting with G).
2. Move the highlight to the **EQ:** field and enter the symbolic complex number `'((x,y))'`. (If flag -27 is set, you will see the complex number displayed as `'x+y*i'`).
3. Make sure that the **INDEP:** contains $x$ and **DEPND:** contains $y$ (note the lower-case). In this case, $x$ is the independent variable not because it is any more “independent” than $y$, but because it is to be plotted on the horizontal axis.
4. Use **10 STEPS** for $x$ and **8 STEPS** for $y$. This means that 10 values for $x$ and 8 values for $y$ will be used, so 80 points will be plotted.
5. Draw the plot: **ERASE DRAW.**
**Example:** Plot the complex-valued mapping, \( f(z) = z^2 \), using the Gridmap plot type. What were previously straight lines within the complex plane are now transformed by the function into curves—again, analogous to what happens to a straight-line in the real number plane when it is transformed by a function.

1. Return to the **Plot** screen, and highlight the **EQ:** field.
2. Modify the expression so that it is \( (x, y)^\times 2 \) : [EDIT] (x, y)^2 [OK].
3. Draw the plot: [ERASE] [DRAW].

**Example:** Repeat the previous example using \( f(z) = z^3 \) as the transformation.

**Result:**
A Garden of Curves

Polar and parametric plotting allow you to view some very interesting curves. The examples in this chapter just barely hint at some of the exploratory (and artistic) possibilities these curves offer.

This section gives you additional fodder for your curiosity. Each entry includes some information about the curve or curve family and an example plotted on the HP 48, along with the plotting parameters used to create the example.

Note: If a parameter isn’t referred to, then the default settings are assumed. Also, “Cartesian” refers to a curve’s description in a rectangular coordinate system.

Cassinian Curves

A Cassinian curve is the locus of points, P, the product of whose distances from two fixed points, $F_1$ and $F_2$, is constant. That is, $PF_1 \cdot PF_2 = k$.

Ovals of Cassini. Here are the forms of the function:

- **Cartesian:** \[ (x^2 + y^2)^2 - 2e^2(x^2 - y^2) = a^4 - e^4 \]
- **Polar:** \[ r = \sqrt{d^2 \cos 2\theta \pm \sqrt{d^4 \cos^2 2\theta + (a^4 - d^4)}} \]

There are four different shapes for Cassinian ovals. The shape depends on relationship of $a$ (the square root of the constant $k$) and $e$ (half of the distance between the two fixed points):

- When $a < e$, the result is two oval islands.
- When $a = e$, the result is Lemniscate of Bernoulli (see below).
- When $e < a < e\sqrt{2}$, the result is oval with concave sides.
- When $a > e\sqrt{2}$, the result is oval with convex sides.
Example: $EQ: (\sqrt{d^2 \cos(2\theta) + \sqrt{d^4 \cos(2\theta)^2 + a^4 - d^4}})' \sqrt{d^2 \cos(2\theta) - \sqrt{d^4 \cos(2\theta)^2 + a^4 - d^4}}')$

- TYPE: Polar
- $\Delta$: Deg
- INDEP: $\theta$
- H-VIEW: $-2 \ 2$
- V-VIEW: $-1.1 \ 1.1$
- LO: $0$
- HI: $360$
- STEP: $1$

$a = .9; \ d = 1$

Example: $a = 1.1; \ d = 1$

Example: $a = 1.5; \ d = 1$
**Lemniscate of Bernoulli.** The *Lemniscate of Bernoulli* is a special case of a Cassinian oval, where $a = d$. The area of one of the loops is $a^2$.

- **Cartesian:**
  \[(x^2 + y^2)^2 = 2a^2(x^2 - y^2)\]

- **Polar:**
  \[r^2 = 2a^2 \cos 2\theta\]
  \[x = \frac{at\sqrt{2}(1 + t^2)}{1 + t^4}\]

- **Parametric:**
  \[y = \frac{at\sqrt{2}(1 - t^2)}{1 + t^4}\]

**Example:**

EQ: \[\sqrt{(2*a^2)*\cos(2*\theta))}\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE: Polar</th>
<th>(\Delta): Deg</th>
<th>INDEP: (\theta)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H-VIEW: -3 3</td>
<td>V-VIEW: -1.5 1.5</td>
<td>LO: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HI: 360</td>
<td>STEP: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(a = 1.5\)
Cissoids and Conchoids

A cissoid is the locus of points P that are the same distance from a fixed point, F₁, as the distance between points, Q and R, on two curves such that F₁, P, Q, and R are collinear. Ordinary cissoids employ a circle and a line as the two curves.

A conchoid is the locus of points, P₁ and P₂, that are equidistant from a point Q on a given curve and a fixed point F₁ along a line containing both Q and F₁. If you draw a line from F₁ through Q, then P₁ will be a distance k farther from F₁ than Q and P₂ will be a distance k closer to F₁ than Q along the drawn line. Conchoids are cousins of cissoids, a fact which becomes clearer when you consider that the Conchoid of Nicomedes (discussed below) is both an ordinary cissoid and the conchoid of a line with respect to a fixed point not on the line.

Cissoid of Diocles. The Cissoid of Diocles is an ordinary cissoid with the origin as the fixed point, the point (R,0) as the center of the circle (radius = R), and the line x = 2R as the line. The curve is asymptotic to the line x = 2R; and the area between curve and asymptote is $3R²\pi$.

- Cartesian: $y^2 = \frac{x^3}{2R - x}$
- Parametric: $x = \frac{2Rt^2}{1 + t^2}$, $y = \frac{2Rt^3}{1 + t^2}$
- Polar: $r = 2R\sin \theta \tan \theta$

Example: EQ: '2*R*SIN(θ)*TAN(θ)'

TYPE: Polar  ∠: Deg  INDEP: θ
H-VIEW: -6.5 6.5  V-VIEW: -3.1 3.2
LD: 0  HI: 360  STEP: 1

$R = 3$

A Garden of Curves 79
Folium of Descartes. The Folium of Descartes is a cissoid of the ellipse defined by $x^2 - xy + y^2 - a(x + y) = 0$, and the straight line $y = -x - a$. The curve is asymptotic to the line $y = -x - a$; the vertex of loop is at $(3a/2, 3a/2)$; the area of loop is $\frac{3a^2}{2}$, as is also the area between curve and its asymptote.

- Cartesian: $x^3 + y^3 - 3axy = 0$
- Polar: $r = \frac{3a \sin \theta \cos \theta}{\sin^3 \theta + \cos^3 \theta}$
- Parametric: $x = \frac{3at}{1 + t^3} \quad y = \frac{3at^2}{1 + t^3}$

Example: EQ: '(3*a*SIN(θ)*COS(θ))/(SIN(θ)^3 + COS(θ)^3)'

TYPE: Polar \hspace{1cm} \angle: \text{Deg} \hspace{1cm} \text{INDEP: } \theta

H-VIEW: -14 14 \hspace{1cm} Y-VIEW: -7 7

LO: 0 \hspace{1cm} HI: 180 \hspace{1cm} STEP: 2

$a = 4$
Conchoid of Nicomedes. The Conchoid of Nicomedes is an ordinary cissoid with the fixed point being the center of the circle. The curve has an asymptote at $x = a$, which lies between the y-axis and cissoid’s second “curve,” the line $x = a + b$. The shape depends upon the relation of $a$ and $b$.

- Cartesian: \((x^2 + y^2)(x - a)^2 - b^2 x^2 = 0\)
- Polar: \[ r = \frac{a}{\cos \theta} \pm b \]
- Parametric: \[
\begin{align*}
x &= a + b \cos \theta \\
y &= a \tan \theta + b \sin \theta
\end{align*}
\]

Example: \(E0: \left((a + b \cos(\theta), a \tan(\theta) + b \sin(\theta))\right)\)

**TYPE:** Parametric  \(\angle: \text{Deg} \quad \text{INDEP: } \theta\)

**H-VIEW:** -6.5 6.5  \(V-\text{VIEW: } -3.1 3.2\)

**LO:** \(0\)  \(\text{HI: } 360\)  \(\text{STEP: } 1\)

\[ a = 3; \quad b = 2 \]

Example: \(a = 2; \quad b = 3\)
**Strofoid.** A *strofoid* is a cissoid of a circle (radius = \( a \)) and a line through its center with respect to a fixed point on the circle. The vertex of the loop is at \((a,0)\); the loop area is \(a^2\left(1 - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)\); the area between curve and asymptote is \(a^2\left(1 + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)\).

- Cartesian: \(y^2 = x^2 \frac{a-x}{a+x}\)
- Polar: \(r = a \frac{\cos 2\theta}{\cos \theta}\)
- Parametric: \(x = \frac{a(1-t^2)}{1+t^2}, \quad y = \frac{at(1-t^2)}{1+t^2}\)

**Example:**

EQ: `'\(a*\cos(2*\theta)/\cos(\theta)\)'`

**TYPE:** Polar  **\(\Delta\):** Deg  **INDEP:** \(\theta\)

**H-VIEW:** -6.5 6.5  **Y-VIEW:** -3.1 3.2

**LO:** 0  **HI:** 360  **STEP:** 1

![Graph of a strofoid](image)

**Pascal’s Snails.** Pascal’s snails, or *limaçons*, are conchoids of a circle where the fixed point is on the circle—i.e. the locus of points \(P_1\) and \(P_2\) a distance \(b\) from each point on a circle of diameter \(a\), as measured along a line containing a fixed point on the circle. Limaçons come in four typical shapes, depending on the relation of \(a\) to \(b\). When \(b \geq a\), the area enclosed by the curve is \(\pi \left(\frac{b^2 + a^2}{2}\right)\)

- Cartesian: \(x^2 + y^2 - ax^2 - b^2(x^2 + y^2) = 0\)
- Polar: \(r = a \cos \theta \pm b\)
- Parametric: \(x = a \cos^2 \theta + b \cos \theta\)
  \(y = a \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin \theta\)
Example: \[ \begin{align*} & (a \times \cos(\theta))^2 + b \times \cos(\theta), \\
& a \times \cos(\theta) \times \sin(\theta) + b \times \sin(\theta) \end{align*} \]

**TYPE:** Parametric  \( \triangle: \text{Rad} \)  \( \text{INDEP}: \theta \)

**H-VIEW:** -15 15  \( \text{Y-VIEW}: -7.2 7.4 \)

**LO:** 0  \( \text{HI}: 6.3 \)  \( \text{STEP}: .05 \)

\[ a = 4, \quad b = 5 \quad (a < b < 2a) \]

**Example:** \[ a = 2, \quad b = 5 \quad (b > 2a) \]

**Example:** \[ a = b = 5 \quad (a = b) \]

**Example:** \[ a = 5, \quad b = 2 \quad (a > b) \]
Cycloidal Curves

Cycloidal curves are an interesting family of curves. They represent the motion of a point on, “beyond” or “within” a circle as it rolls along another curve. The cycloid itself represents the motion of a point on a circle as it rolls along a straight line. The epicycloid represents the motion of a point on a circle as it rolls along the outside of a second circle. The hypocycloid represents the motion of a point on a circle as it rolls along the inside of a second circle. Then, for each of those three branches of the family, there are the trochoid versions, where the point on the circle isn’t precisely on the circle but “beyond” the radius of the circle (prolate) or “within” the radius of the circle (curtate).

The learning toy, Spirograph™, makes extensive use of the cycloidal family of curves, with circles of differing radii rolled around or within one another to form beautiful patterns. In particular, Spirograph utilizes the key feature of the cycloid curves—the ratio of the radii (as expressed by the number of “teeth”) on two circles. The program, SPIRO, on page 312, takes the number of teeth of the fixed circle from level 3, the number of teeth of the rolling circle from level 2, and a number indicating whether it rolls inside (-1) or outside (1) the fixed circle. SPIRO always draws a prolate curve.*

Ordinary Cycloid. The ordinary cycloid is generated by a fixed point P on a circle of radius a which rolls without slipping along the x-axis. The period of curve is 2πa; the length of curve between two cusps is 8a; the area between one full arch of the curve and x-axis is 3πa².

- Cartesian: \[ x = a \cos^{-1} \frac{a - y}{a} - \sqrt{y(2a - y)} \]
- Parametric:
  \[ x = a(\theta - \sin \theta) \]
  \[ y = a(1 - \cos \theta) \]

Example: EQ: '(a*(θ-SIN(θ)),a*(1-COS(θ)))'

TYPE: Parametric  \( \Delta: \) Rad  INDEP: \( \theta \)
H-VIEW: -30 30  Y-VIEW: -2.5 15
LO: -10  HI: 10  STEP: .05

*Short programs like SPIRO may be written to provide easy control of parameters for other curve families as well.

84 3. Polar and Parametric Equations
Trochoid. The trochoid curve is generated by a fixed point P at a distance $\lambda a$ from the center of a circle of radius $a$ which rolls without slipping along the $x$-axis. If $\lambda < 1$, curve is *curtate cycloid*. The “base” is the horizontal line above $x$-axis. If $\lambda > 1$, curve is *prolate cycloid*. The “base” is the horizontal line below $x$-axis. If $\lambda = 1$, curve is ordinary cycloid.

- Parametric: $$x = a(\theta - \lambda \sin \theta) \quad y = a(1 - \lambda \cos \theta)$$

**Example:**

EQ: $'(a*(\theta-\lambda*\text{SIN}(\theta)),a*(1-\lambda*\text{COS}(\theta)))'$

TYPE: Parametric \hspace{1cm} \omega: Rad \hspace{1cm} INDEP: $\theta$

H-VIEW: -30 30 \hspace{1cm} V-VIEW: -5 12

LO: -10 \hspace{1cm} HI: 10 \hspace{1cm} STEP: .05

$a = 3; \lambda = 0.5$

**Example:** $a = 3; \lambda = 1.5$
**Ordinary Epicycloid.** The ordinary epicycloid is generated by a fixed point $P$ on a circle of radius $b$, which rolls without slipping on the outside of a fixed circle of radius $a$. If $a/b = N$ is an integer, then: the curve has $N$ equal branches; the arc length of each branch is $\frac{8}{N} (a + b)$; the area of one sector is $\frac{b\pi}{a} (a + b)(a + 2b)$.

$$x = (a + b)\cos \theta - b\cos \frac{a + b}{b} \theta$$

- Parametric:

$$y = (a + b)\sin \theta - b\sin \frac{a + b}{b} \theta$$

**Example:**

EQ: `'((a+b)*COS(θ)-b*COS((a+b)/b*θ)), (a+b)*SIN(θ)-b*SIN((a+b)/b*θ))'`

**Type:** Parametric  \( θ \) : Rad  \( \text{Indep: } θ \)

**H-View:** -15 15  \( \text{V-View: } -7.2 7.4 \)

\( a = 5; b = 1 \)

(integral ratio)

Reduce the ratio $a/b$, if possible; and plot one cycle ($2\pi$) for each $b$.

**Example:**

EQ: `'((a+b)*COS(θ)-b*COS((a+b)/b*θ)), (a+b)*SIN(θ)-b*SIN((a+b)/b*θ))'`

**Type:** Parametric  \( θ \) : Rad  \( \text{Indep: } θ \)

**H-View:** -24 24  \( \text{V-View: } -12 12 \)

\( a = 5; b = 3 \)

(non-integral ratio)
Nephroid. The nephroid is the 2-cusped epicycloid \((a = 2b)\).

Example: \[E0: \((a+b)\cos(\theta) - b\cos\left((a+b)/b\theta\right),\]
\[\quad (a+b)\sin(\theta) - b\sin\left((a+b)/b\theta\right))\]

\[\text{TYPE: Parametric } \Delta: \text{Rad } \text{INDEP: } \theta\]
\[\text{H-VIEW: } -15 15 \quad \text{V-VIEW: } -7.2 7.4\]
\[\text{LD: } 0 \quad \text{HI: } 6.3 \quad \text{STEP: } .05\]

\[a = 2; \quad b = 1\]

Cardioid. The cardioid is an ordinary epicycloid where two circles are the same size \((a = b)\), which simplifies the epicycloid equation. The length of the curve is \(16a\); the area enclosed by the curve is \(7a^2\pi\).

- Cartesian: \[(x^2 + y^2 - a^2)^2 = 4a^2[(x - a)^2 + y^2]\]
- Polar: \[r = 2a(1 - \cos \theta)\]
- Parametric: \[x = a(2\cos \theta - \cos 2\theta)\]
\[y = a(2\sin \theta - \sin 2\theta)\]

Example: \[E0: '2*a*(1-COS(\theta))'\]

\[\text{TYPE: Polar } \Delta: \text{Rad } \text{INDEP: } \theta\]
\[\text{H-VIEW: } -30 30 \quad \text{V-VIEW: } -15 15\]
\[\text{LD: } 0 \quad \text{HI: } 6.3 \quad \text{STEP: } .05\]

\[a = 5\]
**Epitrochoid.** The epitrochoid is generated by a fixed point $P$ at a distance $b\lambda$ from the center of a circle of radius $b$, which rolls without slipping on the outside of a fixed circle of radius $a$. If $\lambda < 1$, curve is a *curtate epicycloid*. If $\lambda > 1$, curve is a *prolate epicycloid*. If $\lambda = 1$, curve is a normal cycloid. If $a/b = N$ is an integer, the curve consists of $N$ equal branches. If $N$ is a fraction, the branches intersect.

\[
x = (a + b)\cos \theta - b\lambda \cos \frac{a + b}{b} \theta
\]

- Parametric:

\[
y = (a + b)\sin \theta - b\lambda \sin \frac{a + b}{b} \theta
\]

**Example:**

\[
E: '((a+b)\times\cos(\theta)-b\times\cos((a+b)/b\times\theta),(a+b)\times\sin(\theta)-b\times\sin((a+b)/b\times\theta))'
\]

**TYPE:** Parametric  \hspace{1cm}  **\(\varphi\):** Rad  \hspace{1cm}  **INDEP:** \(\theta\)

**H-VIEW:** -30 30  \hspace{1cm}  **V-VIEW:** -15 15

**LO:** 0  \hspace{1cm}  **HI:** 6.3  \hspace{1cm}  **STEP:** .05

\[a = 5; b = 1; \lambda = 0.5\]

**Example:**  
\[a = 5; b = 1; \lambda = 2\]
Example:  \( a = 5; \ b = 3; \ \lambda = 2 \)

**Ordinary Hypocycloid.** The ordinary hypocycloid is generated by a fixed point P on a circle of radius \( b \) which rolls without slipping on the inside of a fixed circle of radius \( a \). If \( a/b = N \) is an integer, the curve has \( N \) equal branches; if \( N \) is a fraction, the branches cross one another. If \( N = 2 \), the hypocycloid reduces to a straight line.

The arc length of each branch is \( \frac{8}{N} (a - b) \); the area of a sector is \( \frac{b\pi}{a} (a - b)(a - 2b) \).

\[
x = (a - b) \cos \theta + b \cos \frac{a-b}{b} \theta
\]

- Parametric:
  \[
y = (a - b) \sin \theta - b \sin \frac{a-b}{b} \theta
\]

Example:  

\[
\text{EQ:}'((a-b)\times \text{COS(\theta)}+b\times \text{COS((a-b)/b*\theta)},(a-b)\times \text{SIN(\theta)}-b\times \text{SIN((a-b)/b*\theta)})'
\]

**Type:** Parametric  \( \triangle \) Rad  \( \text{INDEP:} \ \theta \)

**H-View:** -12 12  \( \text{V-View:} \ -6 \ 6 \)

\( \text{LD:} \ \emptyset \ \text{HI:} \ 6.3 \ \text{STEP:} \ 0.05 \)

\( a = 5; \ b = 1 \)
Astroid. The astroid is a hypocycloid with 4 cusps \((a = 4b)\)—a simpler equation than the general hypocycloid. The length of the curve is \(6a\); the area between the curve and the fixed circle is \(\frac{5}{8}a^2\pi\); the area enclosed by the curve is \(\frac{3}{8}a^2\pi\).

- Cartesian: \(x^\frac{2}{3} + y^\frac{2}{3} = a^\frac{2}{3}\)
- Parametric: \(x = a\cos^3\theta \quad y = a\sin^3\theta\)

Example: EQ: \('(a\times\cos(\theta)^3, a\times\sin(\theta)^3)'\)

Deltoid. A deltoid is a 3-cusped hypocycloid \((a = 3b)\)—a simpler equation:

- Parametric: \(x = b(2\cos\theta + \cos 2\theta) \quad y = b(2\sin\theta - \sin 2\theta)\)

Example: EQ: \('(b\times(2\times\cos(\theta)+\cos(2\times\theta)),\)
\(b\times(2\times\sin(\theta)-\sin(2\times\theta)))'\)
Hypotrochoid. The hypotrochoid is generated by a fixed point P at a distance $b\lambda$ from the center of a circle of radius $b$ which rolls without slipping on the inside of a fixed circle of radius $a$. If $\lambda < 1$, curve is a curtate hypocycloid. If $\lambda > 1$, curve is a prolate hypocycloid. If $\lambda = 1$, curve is a normal cycloid. If $a/b = N$ is an integer, the curve consists of $N$ equal branches; if $N$ is a fraction, the branches intersect.

\[ x = (a - b) \cos \theta + b\lambda \cos \frac{a - b}{b} \theta \]

- Parametric:
\[ y = (a - b) \sin \theta - b\lambda \sin \frac{a - b}{b} \theta \]

Example:  
\begin{verbatim}
EQ: '((a-b)*COS(\theta)+b*\lambda*COS((a-b)/b*\theta),(a-b)*SIN(\theta)-b*\lambda*SIN((a-b)/b*\theta))'
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
TYPE: & Parametric & \hspace{1cm} \\
\hline
\hspace{1cm} & \hspace{1cm} & \hspace{1cm} \\
H-VIEW: & -12 12 & \hspace{1cm} \\
\hline
LO: & 0 & Hi: 6.3 \hspace{1cm} \\
\hline
STEP: & 0.05 & \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\[ a = 5; b = 1; \lambda = 0.5 \]

Example:  
\[ a = 5; b = 1; \lambda = 2 \]
Example: \[ \text{H-VIEW: } -90 \ 90 \quad \text{V-VIEW: } -45 \ 45 \]
\[ \text{LO: } 0 \quad \text{HI: } 19 \]
\[ a = 40; \quad b = 3; \quad \lambda = 3 \]

Example: \[ \text{H-VIEW: } -90 \ 90 \quad \text{V-VIEW: } -45 \ 45 \]
\[ \text{LO: } 0 \quad \text{HI: } 32 \]
\[ a = 36; \quad b = 15; \quad \lambda = 0.6 \]

Example: \[ \text{H-VIEW: } -106 \ 106 \quad \text{V-VIEW: } -53 \ 53 \]
\[ \text{LO: } 0 \quad \text{HI: } 95 \]
\[ a = 49; \quad b = 15; \quad \lambda = 1.4 \]
Roses. A *rose* is a hypotrochoid in which $\lambda = \frac{a-b}{b}$, which makes for a simple polar form. Note that roses can be either curtate or prolate hypocycloids.

- Polar: $r = 2(a - b) \cos \frac{a}{a-2b} \theta$

**Example:**
- **EQ:** '2*(a-b)*COS(a/(a-2*b)*\theta)'
  - **TYPE:** Polar
  - **\( \alpha \):** Rad
  - **INDEP:** \( \theta \)
  - **H-VIEW:** -12 12
  - **V-VIEW:** -6 6
  - **LO:** 0
  - **HI:** 6.3
  - **STEP:** .05

  \( a = 5; \ b = 2 \)

**Example:**
- **H-VIEW:** -2 2
  - **V-VIEW:** -1 1
  - **LO:** 0
  - **HI:** 22

  \( a = 4; \ b = 3.5 \)
**Spirals**

Spirals all share certain common traits: the polar radius gets larger as the polar angle increases; and the function is *not* periodic.

**Spiral of Archimedes.** The polar radius is proportional to the polar angle. The arc length of the curve is \( \frac{a}{2} \left( \theta \sqrt{\theta^2 + 1 + \sinh^{-1} \theta} \right) \), which, for large \( \theta \), is approximately \( \frac{a}{2} \theta^2 \); the area of the sector bounded by two radian angles is \( \frac{a^2}{6} \left( \theta_2^3 - \theta_1^3 \right) \).

- Polar: \( r = a \theta \)

**Example:**

| Type: Polar | \( \alpha \): Rad | INDEP: \( \theta \) |
| H-View: -150 150 | V-View: -75 75 |
| LO: 0 | HI: 32 | STEP: .05 |

Hyperbolic Spiral. The *hyperbolic spiral* is the inverse of the Spiral of Archimedes, with an asymptote at \( y = a \). It represents the path of a particle under a central force that varies as the cube of the distance of the particle from the central force. The area of sector bounded by two radian angles is \( \frac{a^2}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\theta_1} - \frac{1}{\theta_2} \right) \).

- Polar: \( r = \frac{a}{\theta} \)

**Example:**

| Type: Polar | \( \alpha \): Rad | INDEP: \( \theta \) |
| H-View: -6.5 6.5 | V-View: -3.1 3.2 |
| LO: 0 | HI: 16 | STEP: .05 |
Logarithmic Spiral. The logarithmic spiral, also known as the equiangular spiral, is the spiral form often seen in nature—in the Nautilus shell, in the arrangement of sunflower seeds, and in the formation of pine cones. It is “equiangular:” the angle $\beta$ formed between the tangent to any point $P$ on the spiral and the polar radius (the segment connecting $P$ to the pole) is constant.

Other interesting properties: The length of an arc from the pole along the spiral to $r$ is $\frac{r}{\cos \beta}$; and lengths of $r$ drawn at equal angular intervals to each other form a geometric progression; also, if you roll the spiral along a line, the path of the pole is also a line.

- Polar: $r = ae^{\theta/\tan \beta}$

Example: $E0: 'a*e^{(\theta/TAN(\beta))}'$

```
TYPE: Polar   $\phi$: Rad  INDEP: $\theta$
H-VIEW: -35 35  Y-VIEW: -17.5 17.5
LO: 0        HI: 20     STEP: .05
```

$a = 0.1; \beta = 1.3$
**Parabolic Spiral.** The *parabolic spiral* is so named because of its analogy to the equation for a parabola: \( y^2 = a^2 x \)

- Polar: \( r^2 = a^2 \theta \)

**Example:**

EQ: '\( \sqrt(a^2 \theta) \)'

TYPE: Polar

\( \theta \): Rad

INDEP: \( \theta \)

H-VIEW: -18 18

V-VIEW: -9 9

LO: 0

HI: 40

STEP: .05

\( a = 2 \)

---

**Lituus Spiral.** The *Lituus spiral* is the inverse with respect to the pole of the parabolic spiral—it has the x-axis as an asymptote. This is the spiral often used in the whorls sitting atop columns in classical (Roman) architecture.

- Polar: \( r^2 = \frac{a^2}{\theta} \)

**Example:**

EQ: '\( \sqrt(a^2 / \theta) \)'

TYPE: Polar

\( \theta \): Rad

INDEP: \( \theta \)

H-VIEW: -2.5 6.5

V-VIEW: -2.25 2.25

LO: 0

HI: 20

STEP: .05

\( a = 2 \)
Sinusoidal Spirals. A particle acted upon by a central force that is inversely proportional to the \((2n+3)\) power of its distance from the force (where \(n\) is a rational number) moves along a sinusoidal spiral. Some special cases:

- \(n = -2\) rectangular hyperbola
- \(n = -1\) line
- \(n = -1/2\) parabola
- \(n = -1/3\) rectangular hyperbola
- \(n = 1\) circle
- \(n = 1/2\) cardioid
- \(n = 1/3\) oval

- Polar: \(r^n = a^n \cos(n\theta)\) or \(r^n = a^n \sin(n\theta)\)

Example: \(E\)Q: '\((a^n \times \sin(n\times\theta))^{(1/n)}\)'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE: Polar</th>
<th>(\Delta): Rad</th>
<th>INDEP: 0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(H)-VIEW: -40 40</td>
<td>(V)-VIEW: -25 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(a = 2; n = -1/3\)

Example: \(H\)-VIEW: -5 5 \(V\)-VIEW: -2.5 2.5

\(a = 2; n = 3/4\)

Example: \(H\)-VIEW: -20 20 \(V\)-VIEW: -10 10

\(a = 2; n = -7/5\)
**Other Curves**

**Lissajous.** The parametric description for the standard sine curve is: \(x = \theta, y = a \sin(b \theta + c);\) only the \(y\)-component undergoes the sine function. But in the lissajous, both components undergo their own independent sine functions.

- Parametric:
  \[x = a \sin(m \theta + c)\]
  \[y = b \sin(n \theta + d)\]

**Example:**
\[
E=\left(\text{a*}\sin(m*\theta+c), \text{b*}\sin(n*\theta+d)\right)
\]

**Tractrix.** The *tractrix* is the curve of points \(P\) such that the distance from \(P\) to the \(x\)-axis along the tangent at \(P\) is constant. It is the track of the back wheel of a bicycle as the front wheel makes a 90° turn.

- Parametric:
  \[x = a \ln(\sec \theta + \tan \theta) - a \sin \theta\]
  \[y = a \cos \theta\]

**Example:**
\[
E=\left(\text{a*}\ln(1/\cos(\theta)+\tan(\theta))-\text{a*}\sin(\theta), \text{a*}\cos(\theta)\right)
\]
**Witch of Agnesi.** The *Witch of Agnesi*, whose name comes from a mistranslation of the Italian *versoria* (“free to move in any direction”) as *versiera* (“witch”, or “devil’s wife”), is a curve that is asymptotic to x-axis, with the area between curve and asymptote equal to $4R^2\pi$. It is an unusual curve, whose definition is somewhat complicated. Here’s how to construct the graph manually:

1. From a fixed point $F_1$ on a circle of radius $R$, construct the tangents to the circle at $F_1$ and at $F_2$, the point on the circle diametrically opposite $F_1$.
2. Then at an angle $\theta$ from the diameter connecting $F_1$ and $F_2$, draw a secant from $F_1$ to point $T_2$ on the opposite tangent line. The secant intersects the circle at $Q$.
3. Finally, draw a line through $Q$ that is parallel to the tangents and a line through $T_2$ parallel to the diameter connecting $F_1$ and $F_2$. The point $P$ is the intersection of these two lines.
4. The Witch is the locus of points $P$ generated as $\theta$ is allowed to vary.

- **Cartesian:** 
  \[ y = \frac{8R^3}{x^2 + 4R^2} \]

- **Parametric:** 
  \[ x = 2R\cot\theta \]
  \[ y = R(1 - \cos 2\theta) \]

**Example:** 
```
EQ: '(2*R/TAN(\theta),R*(1-COS(2*\theta)))'
```

**TYPE:** Parametric

**\( \text{INDEP: } \theta \)**

**H-VIEW:** -10 10

**V-VIEW:** -3 7

**LO:** 0

**HI:** 3.1416

**STEP:** .05

\[ R = 2 \]
4. Polynomials
Polynomials and their Characteristics

The term *polynomial* has a more limited meaning on the HP 48 than in math textbooks. Expressions such as $4xy^3 - 7x^2y - 3y$, with two or more variables, are also polynomials. But the HP 48 (and this chapter, too) limits its definition of polynomial to “polynomials in a single variable.” (It can handle expressions with two or more variables, but it doesn’t treat them as polynomials.) So a polynomial here is a function of the form $P(x) = a_nx^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1x + a_0$, where $n$ is a positive integer. The real numbers, $a_n, a_{n-1}, \ldots, a_1, a_0$, are the coefficients of the polynomial. If $a_n \neq 0$, the polynomial is said to have degree $n$.

Note that there are two important aspects to this definition. First, a polynomial is a *function*, which means it will pass the vertical line test. Second, because it has a single variable, polynomials differ from one another only in their set of coefficients, which allows the HP 48 to compute with a polynomial more rapidly than with many other functions by using a *vector* of its coefficients. For example, $2x^5 - 3x^4 + x^3 + 6x^2 - 18x + 11$ would become $[2 -3 1 6 -18 11]$; and $2x^5 + x^3 + 11$ would be $[2 0 1 0 0 11]$.

Note here that coefficients for missing terms are included as zeroes, to distinguish between, say, $2x^5 + x^3 + 11$ and $2x^2 + x + 11$. Note, too, that although computations with polynomials are faster in vector form, you must still use their standard algebraic form to *plot* them—but you can use the polynomial solving application to help you convert from vector to symbolic form before plotting.

**Example:** Using the *Solve poly...* application, enter the polynomial $[ -5 -3 3 2 0 1 ]$ and convert it to its symbolic form.

1. From the stack, open the *Solve poly...* application:  
   →SOLVE ▼ ▼ ENTER.
2. With the **COEFFICIENTS [ AN ... A1 A0 ]** field highlighted, enter the polynomial:  
   ←{15+-/3 SPC 3+-/3 SPC 2 SPC 0 SPC 1 ENTER}.
3. Re-highlight the **COEFFICIENTS** field (▲), and then press **SYMB** ▼ CANCEL to see the symbolic form on stack level 1:

   $\neg(5x^5)-3x^4+3x^3+2x^2+1$
Graphs of Polynomials

The graph of a polynomial tells a lot about it. You can find the number of real roots, estimate the degree and also points of local maxima and minima.

**Example:** Plot the polynomial created in the previous example.

1. Open the PLOT application (PLOT) and change the plot type to Function (F).

2. Highlight the EQ: field and grab the polynomial from stack level 1: [level 1) _l, if necessary, to put the target polynomial in.

3. Set H-VIEW to -2 3 and V-VIEW to -3.5 4.5.

4. Set INDEP: to X and the plotting range and step size (in the PLOT OPTIONS screen) to their defaults (RESET each field, if necessary).

5. Plot the function (DRAW).

Observe the plot to see what you can determine from it.

- The plot of a polynomial will cross the x-axis once for each real root. This polynomial appears to have only one real root.

- The plot of a polynomial will have one fewer “bend” than its degree. However, the number of “bends” is not always immediately obvious. This plot appears to have two bends—like a third-degree polynomial—but you know from its equation that it is in fact a fifth-degree polynomial. A plot’s extra bends may be “hiding” within one of the visible bends that doesn’t curve very sharply, but which is rather flat and broad.
Look again at the plot and notice that the left-most bend looks like it might be a suspect for such hidden bends. Test your suspicion by using the Box-zoom to magnify the flat region: Move the cursor to the upper-left corner of the region you want to magnify and press `ZOOM|BOX2`. Then press the `>` and `<` keys until the zoom-box encloses the flat region that you’re investigating:

![Zoom box on plot]

Press `ZOOM` to draw the magnified region:

![Magnified region]

As you can see, the “flat” bend is actually composed of three bends; the polynomial has four bends altogether (which is, after all, what you would expect of a fifth-degree polynomial).
Actually, each “bend” in a polynomial represents spot where the \textit{slope} of the polynomial “levels out”—to zero. If you plot the \textit{slope} of the polynomial (known as the \textit{first derivative} of the polynomial) instead of the polynomial itself, you can count the number of times this plot crosses the $x$-axis (i.e. the number of times that the slope is zero) to determine the number of “bends” in the original polynomial.

**Example:** Plot the previous polynomial again using the original display coordinates. Then plot the first derivative of the polynomial.

1. Press \textbf{CANCEL} to return to the \textbf{PLOT} screen.
2. Reset \textbf{H-VIEW} to $-2 \, 3$ and \textbf{V-VIEW} to $-3.5 \, 4.5$.
3. Redraw the polynomial: \textbf{ERASE} \textbf{DRAW}.
4. Draw the first derivative of the polynomial: \textbf{FCN} \textbf{NXT} \textbf{F'}. Both the polynomial and its derivative will be drawn:

   ![Graph of polynomial and its derivative](image)

   Clearly, the graph of the first derivative (slope) crosses the $x$-axis (i.e. becomes zero) in four spots—four real roots—so the original polynomial is a fifth-degree polynomial.

The plot of the first derivative can also be used to determine more precisely the location of the bends—which are local maximums and minimums (\textit{extrema}, to your HP 48). The $x$-coordinate of the extremum is the same as the $x$-coordinate at the corresponding \textit{zero} of the first derivative.
Example: Find the coordinates of the left-most extremum of the polynomial by finding the corresponding zero of its first derivative.

1. While viewing the plot of the polynomial and its first derivative, move the cursor so that it’s close to the left-most zero of the derivative function. Remember: whenever there are two or more functions plotted, only one of them is the current function. The derivative function is the current function at the moment.

2. Press \( \text{FCTN} \ \text{ROOT} \). Note that the cursor moves to the actual spot of the root being solved. Make sure that it is the one you intended—this is a good check to be sure you’ve communicated properly with your HP 48. Result: \( \text{ROOT: } -0.657387549433 \)

3. The \( x \)-coordinate of the left-most extremum is -0.66. To find the \( y \)-coordinate, switch the current function to the polynomial \( \text{NXT} \ \text{NXT} \ \text{NEXEQ} \), and then compute the value of the polynomial at \( x \approx -0.66 \) \( \text{NXT} \ \text{FCTN} \). Result: \( F(x): 1.06564988764 \)

Thus, the coordinate of the left-most extremum is about (-0.66, 1.07).

The HP 48, of course, can find the coordinates of an extremum more directly if it is easily distinguished from others. The method of the previous example is usually better when extrema (“bends”) are hidden or very close together, but another method is quicker when the extremum is easy to “point out.”

Example: Find the coordinates of the right-most extremum directly from the plot of the polynomial itself.

1. Assuming that the original polynomial is still the current function, move the cursor right to a point near the right-most extremum.

2. Press \( \text{NXT} \) (to redisplay the menu) \( \text{NXT} \ \text{EXTR} \) to compute the nearest extremum. Result (to 2 places): \( \text{EXTRM: (0.59, 1.59)} \)

The previous two examples may suggest that every polynomial has exactly one less “bend” (extremum) than its degree. But that’s not true, particularly in polynomials with some coefficients equal to zero. The next example shows how you can determine the degree from the plot of these exceptional polynomials.
Example: Plot the polynomial, \([-5 0 3 2 0 1]\), and its first derivative. Demonstrate graphically the degree of the polynomial.

1. Return to the stack (\(\text{CANCEL}\)) and move to the Solve poly... application (\(\rightarrow\text{SOLVE}\) \(\text{ENTER}\)).

2. Enter the polynomial into the COEFFICIENTS field: \(\langle\rangle 5+/-\text{SPC} 0\text{SPC} 3\text{SPC} 2\text{SPC} 0\text{SPC} 1\text{SPC}\text{ENTER}\).

3. Create the symbolic version: \(\triangle\text{SYMBL}\) \(\text{CANCEL}\).

4. Open the PLOT application, enter the symbolic polynomial, and, using the same settings as with the previous polynomial (they should still be there), plot the polynomial: \(\rightarrow\text{PLOT}\) \(\text{NXT}\) \(\text{CALC}\) \(\bullet\) \(\text{OK}\) \(\text{NXT}\) \(\text{ERASE}\) \(\text{DRAW}\).

5. Add the first derivative to the plot: \(\text{FCN}\) \(\text{NXT}\) \(\text{F}\): ![Graph of polynomial and its first derivative]

Notice that original polynomial appears to have two bends (i.e. is third-degree). And the first derivative plot seems to concur: it has two zeroes, exactly the number expected for a third-degree polynomial. But look at the shape of the first derivative: it appears to have three bends. A first derivative cannot have more bends than its original polynomial. In fact, the first derivative of a third-degree polynomial can have no more than one bend. This is a powerful clue that the original polynomial is actually fifth-degree, at least.

For polynomials of high degree that lack most lower-degree terms, you may have to find the derivative of the derivative (the second derivative), or the derivative of that (the third derivative), etc., until the necessary clues appear. If at any stage, the result is a straight-line, then the degree of the polynomial is one higher than the number of derivatives it took to generate the straight line.
**Example:** Continue plotting higher derivatives for the polynomial in the previous example until the result is a straight-line.

1. Assuming that the plot of the polynomial and its first derivative is still displayed, press \[ \text{FCN} \ (\text{NXT}) \ \text{F} \] to add the plot of the second derivative to the display:

![Plot of Polynomial and First Derivative]

Sure enough, the second derivative still has two bends (one of them occurring abruptly at a hidden point of inflection in the original polynomial’s broad left-most bend).

2. Repeat step 1 and generate the third derivative. Because the plots are getting steeper and narrower, perform some zooming to adjust the viewing scale. Press \[ \text{ZOOM} \ \text{2FACT} \] to be sure that the zoom-factor is set to the default, 4. Press \[ \text{OK} \ (\text{NXT}) \ \text{V2OUT} \] (Vertical Zoom OUT), then interrupt the drawing \[ (\text{CANCEL}) \] and press \[ \text{ZOOM} \ (\text{NXT}) \ \text{H2IN} \] (Horizontal Zoom IN). Interrupt again, move the cursor to the origin, and press \[ \text{ZOOM} \ (\text{NXT}) \ \text{CNTR} \]. All zooms are reflected in the set of plots finally drawn:

![Plot of Polynomial and Second Derivative]

This appears to be a parabola with one bend.

*Graphs of Polynomials*
3. Repeat step 1 again and generate the fourth derivative:

![Graph showing the fourth derivative]

The fourth derivative appears to be a nearly vertical line. Zoom out to confirm that it isn’t merely an illusion caused by the current display settings. Press `ZOOM` (NXT) `V2OUT`. Press `FCN` (NXT), then press and hold down `VIEW`. This displays the symbolic expression of the current function (the fourth derivative).

![Symbolic expression of the fourth derivative]

The fourth derivative is a line—a first-degree polynomial—which demonstrates that the original polynomial was a fifth-degree polynomial.
Polynomial Arithmetic

The easiest way to do arithmetic with polynomials—add, subtract, multiply, divide, and raise to a power—is to use the vector form of polynomials.

Addition and Subtraction

The addition and subtraction of polynomials is most easily accomplished by adding or subtracting corresponding coefficients in the two polynomials. For example, adding $x^4 + 3x^3 - 7x^2 - 5x + 17$ and $-5x^3 + 3x - 4$ is simply a matter of adding the coefficients of like terms:

$$
\begin{align*}
x^4 &+ 3x^3 - 7x^2 - 5x + 17 \\
+ &-5x^3 + 3x - 4 \\
\hline
x^4 &- 2x^3 - 7x^2 - 2x + 13
\end{align*}
$$

On the HP 48, you can perform polynomial addition and subtraction in either of two ways—symbolically, using the built-in algebraic abilities or “numerically” using the vector form of the polynomial and the program PHOL! (see page 289 for listing).

Example: Add $x^4 + 3x^3 - 7x^2 - 5x + 17$ and $-5x^3 + 3x - 4$, using the built-in symbolic tools of the HP 48.

1. From the stack, enter the first polynomial in its symbolic form: `EQUATION α←X YX 4 ► + 3 α←X YX 3 ► 7 α←X YX 2 ► − 5 α←X + 17 ENTER`.

2. Enter the second polynomial in symbolic form: `EQUATION − 5 α←X YX 3 ► + 3 α←X − 4 ENTER`.

3. Add the polynomials; collect like terms: `+ EQUATION COLECT`.

Result: '13-7x^2-2-2x^3+3x^4-2x'

It’s all there, even if it is a bit out of order.
Example: Add those same two polynomials, $x^4 + 3x^3 - 7x^2 - 5x + 17$ and $-5x^3 + 3x - 4$, using their vector forms and the program \texttt{PADD} (assuming that you have previously entered and stored the program —see page 289—and that it is available in the current directory).

1. Enter the first polynomial: 
\[ \text{[1] [1] SPC 3 SPC 7 +/- SPC 5 +/- SPC 17 ENTER} \]

2. Enter the second polynomial: 
\[ \text{[1] [5 +/- SPC 0 SPC 3 SPC 4 +/- ENTER} \]

3. Run the program \texttt{PADD}: \[ \text{[+] [PAD] [D] ENTER} \]
Result: \[ [1 -2 -7 -2 13] \]

4. Optional. Now enter a variable name and use the program \texttt{P\rightarrow SYM} (see page 296) to convert the polynomial from its vector to its symbolic form: \[ \text{[+] [X] ENTER [+] [P] [\rightarrow] [SYM] ENTER} \]
Result: \[ 'x^4-2x^3-7x^2-2x+13' \]

Example: Subtract $x^4 + 3x^3 - 7x^2 - 5x + 17$ from $x^5 - 2x^2 + 12$.

1. Enter the two polynomials in the same order as you would enter two real numbers that you are subtracting: 
\[ \text{[1] [1] SPC 0 SPC 0 SPC 2 +/- SPC 0 SPC 12 ENTER} \]
\[ \text{[1] [1] SPC 3 SPC 7 +/- SPC 5 +/- SPC 17 ENTER} \]

2. Perform the subtraction. You may either press \[ +/- \], then execute \texttt{PADD}, or you may execute \texttt{PSUB} (see page 296) directly.

Result: \[ [1 -1 -3 5 5 -5] \]

3. Convert the result to a symbolic expression: \[ [+] [X] [ENTER] 'P\rightarrow SY' \]
Result: \[ 'x^5-x^4-3x^3+5x^2+5x-5' \]
**Multiplication**

The real virtues of using the vector form of polynomial are evident when you multiply two polynomials. While symbolic multiplication is technically feasible with the HP 48, it will often cost you a lot of time and patience to obtain a “legible” answer.

The program `PMULT` (see page 295) performs the multiplication of two polynomials in vector form.

**Example:** Find the product of \( x^5 - 2x^2 + 12 \) and \( 3x^3 - 4x^2 + 8x - 9 \).

1. Enter the two polynomials in vector form (in either order):  
   \[
   \begin{bmatrix}
   1 \\
   0 \\
   2 \\
   0 \\
   1 \\
   3 \\
   4 \\
   8 \\
   9 \\
   \end{bmatrix}
   \]
   \[
   \begin{bmatrix}
   1 \\
   0 \\
   1 \\
   2 \\
   0 \\
   1 \\
   3 \\
   8 \\
   9 \\
   \end{bmatrix}
   \]
   Enter.

2. Execute `PMULT`: \( \alpha\alpha\alpha\text{PMULT}\text{ENTER} \). You will need to view the result (press \( \downarrow \)) in the Matrix Writer to see it all.

   \[
   \begin{bmatrix}
   3 & -4 & 8 & -15 & 8 & 20 & -30 & 96 & -108 \\
   \end{bmatrix}
   \]

3. Convert the result to a symbolic polynomial in \( x \): \( \text{CANCEL}\alpha\text{ENTER} \)
   \[
   \left( 3x^8 - 4x^7 + 8x^6 - 15x^5 + 8x^4 + 20x^3 - 30x^2 + 96x - 108 \right)
   \]
Division

Division of polynomials does not always result in a polynomial. The result is a quotient (a polynomial) and a remainder—a rational fraction that can’t be further simplified. If the remainder is zero, then the result is a polynomial. If the remainder isn’t zero, then it is the ratio of two polynomials, the denominator polynomial being of the same or higher degree than the numerator polynomial.

The program **PLINIDE** (see page 291) takes two polynomials in vector form as inputs—in the same order as division of two real numbers. It returns four objects:

- the quotient polynomial (level 4);
- the numerator polynomial of the remainder (level 3);
- the denominator polynomial of the remainder (level 2);
- a complete and exact algebraic result of the division—including the remainder as a rational fraction (level 1).

**Example:** Divide $16x^4 + 26x^3 - 61x^2 + 16x + 3$ by $2x - 1$.

1. Enter the numerator in the division: $(1)+/-)(SPC)(1)6)(SPC)(3)(ENTER)$.
2. Enter the denominator: $(2)(SPC)(1)+/-)(ENTER)$.
3. Execute **PDiVide**: @@PDiVide(ENTER).

Result:

- $4:\begin{bmatrix} 8 & 17 & -22 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$
- $3:\begin{bmatrix} 0 \end{bmatrix}$
- $2:\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$
- $1:\'8x^3+17x^2-22x-3'$

In this case, the result is a polynomial with no remainder:

$8x^3 + 17x^2 - 22x - 3$
**Example:** Divide the polynomial $x^5 - 2x^2 + 12$ by $2x - 1$.

1. Enter the numerator polynomial: $\left[ \begin{array}{c} 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 2  \\ +/- \ 0 \ 1 \ 2 \ ENTER \end{array} \right]$

2. Enter the denominator polynomial: $\left[ \begin{array}{c} 2 \ 1 \\ +/- \ ENTER \end{array} \right]$

3. Execute PDIVIDE: $\alpha \alpha P D I V I D E \ ENTER$

Result:

$$\begin{array}{rrrrrr}
4: & \left[ \begin{array}{c} .5 \ .25 \ .125 \ -.9375 \ -.4687 \end{array} \right] \\
3: & \left[ \begin{array}{c} 11.53125 \end{array} \right] \\
2: & \left[ \begin{array}{c} 2 \ -1 \end{array} \right] \\
1: & \left[ \begin{array}{c} 1/2x^4+1/4x^3+1/8x^2-15/16x^1+(-15/16x+12)/(2x-1) \end{array} \right]
\end{array}$$

Here is how to interpret the result:

- The polynomial part of the quotient is returned to level 4. In this case it represents
  \[ \frac{1}{2} x^4 + \frac{1}{4} x^3 + \frac{1}{8} x^2 - \frac{15}{16} x - \frac{15}{32} \]  
- The numerator of the remainder is on level 3; the denominator is on level 2; so the remainder here is $\frac{11.53125}{2x-1}$ or $\frac{369}{32(2x-1)}$.
- The algebraic on level 1 is the exact result of the division and—as in this case—may not be a polynomial. Note how the algebraic incorporates the remainder into the polynomial part of the quotient. (Of course, if the remainder's numerator on level 3 is $\left[ \begin{array}{c} 0 \end{array} \right]$, the algebraic will simply be the level-4 quotient in its symbolic form—as in the previous example.)

PDIVIDE offers one approach to polynomial division. Synthetic division, discussed on pages 115-123, is another approach often used in finding the roots of polynomials.
Finding Positive Integral Powers of a Polynomial

The program FFILE makes it a lot easier and quicker to find expansions of polynomials than by repeatedly multiplying their symbolic expressions and expanding and collecting. FFILE considers only the positive integral powers of polynomials, so that the result is an ordinary polynomial (explicitly computing the 1/3 power or the -2 power of a polynomial usually complicates the expression a great deal without adding much new information).

Example: Find the fifth power of the polynomial \( x^2 + 6x - 10 \) using FFILE (assuming that it has been previously entered and is available in the current directory).

1. Put the polynomial on the stack in vector form: \( \rightarrow \{ 1 \text{ SPC} 6 \text{ SPC} 10 \text{ SPC} 0 \text{ ENTER} \). 
2. Put a vector containing the power on the stack: \( \rightarrow \{ 5 \text{ ENTER} \).
3. Execute FFILE: \( \text{VAR} \text{ (NXT) or } \text{PREV) as needed) } \text{FPOWER}. \) View the results by pressing \( \text{▼} \) and then \( \text{►} \) as needed.

Result: \[ 1 \text{ 30} \text{ 310} \text{ 960} \text{ -3220} \text{ -17424} \text{ 33200} \]
\[ 96000 \text{ -310000} \text{ 300000} \text{ -100000} \] 

4. Optional. Convert the result to a symbolic expression: \( \text{CANCEL} \) if necessary to exit the MatrixWriter, then \( \text{X} \text{ ENTER} \text{ VAR} \) (and \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \text{PREV} \) as needed), then \( \text{P►SY}. \)

Result: \( 'x^{10} + 30*x^9 + 310*x^8 + 960*x^7 - 3220*x^6 - 17424*x^5 + 33200*x^4 + 96000*x^3 - 310000*x^2 + 300000*x - 100000' \)
Finding Roots of Polynomials

The roots of a polynomial $P(x)$ are those values of $x$ that satisfy the equation $P(x) = 0$ (hence the other common names for roots, zeroes). There are several ways to find the roots of polynomials using the HP 48:

- Use synthetic division, guided by information obtained from a set of polynomial theorems, to manually search for roots.
- Use the Solver.
- Find roots graphically.
- Use root-finding algorithms customized for polynomials.

The traditional “manual” means of finding roots of polynomials required lots of trial-and-error computations involving polynomial division. To streamline these computations, the notational shortcut known as synthetic division was developed. Further, various theorems were used to help one narrow the search and reduce the number of computations. Look at each of these shortcuts.

**Synthetic Division**

Synthetic division reduces a polynomial to its coefficients (much like the vector form that you’ve seen earlier in this chapter). The factor being tested is also reduced to a single number. The division problem thus resembles regular long division. For example, dividing $x^3 + 4x^2 + 3x - 2$ by $x - 3$ goes like this:

\[
\begin{array}{c|cccc}
3 & 1 & 4 & 3 & -2 \\
\hline
 & 3 & 17 & 51 \\
\end{array}
\]

Bring down the first coefficient:

\[
1
\]

Multiply the resulting coefficient (1) by the factor (3) and add the product to the next lower coefficient in the original polynomial (4):

\[
\begin{array}{c|cccc}
3 & 1 & 4 & 3 & -2 \\
\hline
 & 3 & 17 & 51 \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
1 & 7
\]
Continue likewise through all coefficients in the polynomial:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
3 & 1 & 4 & 3 - 2 \\
3 & 21 & 72 \\
1 & 7 & 24 & 70
\end{array}
\]

Read the answer from the bottom line: The correct quotient is \( x^2 + 7x - 24 \); the final value (70) is the remainder. This shortcut works because, in fact, you are just doing long division:

\[
\begin{align*}
x^3 + 4x^2 + 3x - 2 & \quad \div \quad x - 3 \\
x^3 - 3x^2 & \\
7x^2 + 3x & \\
7x^2 - 21x & \\
24x - 2 & \\
24x - 72 & \\
& \\
& 70
\end{align*}
\]

Of course, such synthetic division is suitable for manual computation, but you can shorten its work by automating the process using your HP 48. The next two examples illustrate two different approaches.

**Example:** Use the S\text{DIV} \quad program (see page 303) to do the synthetic division of the polynomial \( 3x^5 + 2x^4 - 7x^3 + 3x - 9 \) by the factor -3.

1. Enter the vector form of the polynomial: \( \left\langle 3 \right\rangle \left\langle 2 \right\rangle \left\langle 7 \right\rangle \left\langle 3 \right\rangle \left\langle 9 \right\rangle \left\langle \pm \right\rangle \)(ENTER).
2. Enter the factor: \( 3 \left\langle \pm \right\rangle \)(ENTER).
3. Execute S\text{DIV}: \( \left\langle \text{xv} \right\rangle \left\langle \text{sd} \right\rangle \left\langle \text{i} \right\rangle \left\langle \text{v} \right\rangle \)(ENTER) or (VAR) (NXT) or \( \left\langle \text{var} \right\rangle \)(PREV) (as needed)

Result: \( \left\langle 3 \right\rangle \left\langle -7 \right\rangle \left\langle 14 \right\rangle \left\langle -42 \right\rangle \left\langle 129 \right\rangle \left\langle -396 \right\rangle \)

The quotient, in vector form, is returned to level 2, the remainder to level 1. The original polynomial and factor are returned to levels 4 and 3, respectively, in case you want to use S\text{DIV} repeatedly with the same polynomial (which you often will).
Example: Repeat the previous example using the program SYNQ (see page 313).

1. Execute the SYNQ program: \( \alpha \alpha \text{SYNQ} \text{ENTER} \) or \( \text{VAR} \text{(NXT or } \text{PREV} \text{ as needed)} \).

2. Enter the polynomial in the POLYNOMIAL field: \( \left[ \begin{array}{c} 3 \end{array} \right] \text{SPC} 2 \text{SPC} 7 \text{SPC} 0 \text{SPC} 3 \text{SPC} 9 \text{SPC} \text{ENTER} \).

3. Enter the factor in the FACTOR field: \( 3 \text{SPC} \text{ENTER} \).

4. Press \( \text{OK} \) to perform the synthetic division.

5. The SYNQ program is designed for repeated use of synthetic division, allowing you to search for roots without affecting the stack. Press \( \text{CANCEL} \) when you want to exit the program.
Polynomial Theorems

Wise use of synthetic division involves narrowing the number of factors that you must try in your search for roots. And there are a number of theorems which can help you do just that. With their proofs omitted, they are:

1. **Fundamental Theorem of Algebra**: Every polynomial equation with degree greater than zero has at least one root in the set of complex numbers.

2. **Corollary to Fundamental Theorem**: A polynomial equation of degree $n$ has exactly $n$ roots in the set of complex numbers, where two or more roots with the same value are treated as distinct.

   A fifth-degree polynomial, for example, has five complex roots, some of which may also be real, some of which may be identical to each other.

3. **Complex Conjugates Theorem**: If $a$ and $b$ are real numbers with $b \neq 0$ and the complex number $a + bi$ is a root of a polynomial equation, then its conjugate, $a - bi$, is also a root of the polynomial.

   Thus, polynomials can have only an even number of non-real complex roots. So, polynomials of odd degree must have at least one real root.

4. **Remainder Theorem**: If a polynomial $P(x)$ is divided by $(x - a)$, then the remainder is a constant, $P(a)$.

5. **Factor Theorem**: If a polynomial $P(x)$ is divided by $(x - a)$, and the remainder, $P(a)$, is zero, then $a$ is a root of $P(x)$.

6. **Rational Root Theorem**: If a polynomial has rational roots of the form $p/q$, where $p/q$ is in simplest form, then $p$ is a factor of the constant term and $q$ is a factor of the coefficient of the highest-degree term.

   For example, if the polynomial $6x^3 - 3x^2 + x + 7$ has rational roots ($p/q$), then $p$ is a factor of the constant term, 7 (i.e. either $\pm 1$ or $\pm 7$) and $q$ is a factor of the coefficient of the highest-degree term, 6 (i.e. either $\pm 1$, $\pm 2$, $\pm 3$, or $\pm 6$). Thus, the only possible rational roots of this polynomial are:

$$\pm 1, \pm \frac{1}{2}, \pm \frac{1}{3}, \pm \frac{1}{6}, \pm 7, \pm \frac{7}{2}, \pm \frac{7}{3}, \pm \frac{7}{6}$$
7. **Descartes’ Rule of Signs:** If \( P(x) \) is a polynomial whose terms are arranged in descending powers of the variable, then the number of positive real roots of \( P(x) \) is the same as the number of changes in sign of the coefficients of the terms, or is less than this number by an even multiple; and the number of negative real roots of \( P(x) \) is the same as the number of changes in the sign of \( P(-x) \), or is less than this number by an even multiple.

For example, for the polynomial \( 2x^4 - x^3 + 5x^2 + 3x - 9 \), the signs of the coefficients in descending order are \{+−+−−\}. Reading from left to right, there are three changes in sign. Therefore, there are either 3 or 1 positive real roots of \( P(x) \). Next, evaluate \( P(-x) \) and apply the rule of signs to assess the number of negative real roots. \( P(-x) = 2x^4 + x^3 + 5x^2 - 3x - 9 \) and the signs are \{+−+−−\}. There’s only one change and thus there is exactly one negative real root.

8. **Upper Bound Theorem:** If \( c \) is positive and \( P(x) \) is divided by \( x - c \) and the resulting quotient and remainder have no change in sign, then \( P(x) \) has no real roots greater than \( c \). Thus \( c \) is an upper bound of the roots of \( P(x) \).

For example, to test whether 4 is an upper bound of the roots of the polynomial, \( x^4 - 3x^3 - 2x^2 + 3x - 5 \), divide the polynomial by \( x - 4 \). All coefficients in the quotient \( (x^3 + x^2 + 2x + 11) \) and remainder \( 39 \) have the same sign, so all real roots of the polynomial must be less than 4.

9. **Lower Bound Theorem:** If \( c \) is a nonpositive number and \( P(x) \) is divided by \( (x - c) \) and the quotient and remainder have alternating signs, then \( P(x) \) has no real roots less than \( c \). Thus, \( c \) is a lower bound of the roots of \( P(x) \).

To test whether -2 is a lower bound of the polynomial \( x^3 - 2x^2 + 6 \), for example, divide the polynomial by \( x + 2 \). The coefficients in the quotient \( (x^2 - 4x + 8) \) alternate in sign, and the remainder \(-10\) is opposite in sign from the constant term in the quotient, thus confirming that all real roots of the polynomial must greater than -2.
Searching for Roots with Synthetic Division

Now that you have been introduced to the essential tools, try a few examples.

Example: Find the roots of \( P(x) = 5x^5 - 16x^4 - 7x^3 + 52x^2 - 70x + 12 \).

1. Use \texttt{APOLY} (see page 276) to apply Descartes’ Rule of Signs and to find an integral lower bound and an integral upper bound for the set of real roots of the polynomial. Enter the polynomial in vector form onto the stack and then type \small{(\texttt{\(\alpha\a
5. You can now use the quotient from step 4 when you found an exact root. It is sometimes referred to as the *depressed polynomial*. Press and begin your hunt for positive roots with the most positive of the possible set of rational roots, 3: 

\[ 3 \text{ ENTER} \text{ SDIV} \]

Result: \( 2: \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -11 & 12 & -2 \\ 1 & & & 0 \end{bmatrix} \)

You’re on a roll—you’ve found another root. Now that you have one positive real root, you know from Descartes’ Rule of Signs that there must be either one or three more positive real roots. If you can find one more, you can use the quadratic equation to find the other two.

6. Repeat the search using other possible positive rational roots. You can either continue to test roots in descending order, or you can test a sampling and watch for remainders changing signs. Try the latter method. Press and repeat the SDIV process on the latest depressed polynomial \([ 5 -11 12 -2 ]\) using factors of 2, 1, and 0.

Results:

- (2) \( 2: \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -1 & 10 \\ 1 & & 18 \end{bmatrix} \)
- (1) \( 2: \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -6 & 6 \\ 1 & & 4 \end{bmatrix} \)
- (0) \( 2: \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -11 & 12 \\ 1 & & -2 \end{bmatrix} \)

Because the remainder changes signs between 1 and 0, you know that at least one real root lies between 0 and 1 (possibly closer to 0).

7. Review the list of possible rational root values for those between 0 and 1. Repeat the search starting with the value nearest zero, 1/5.

Result: \( 2: \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -10 & 10 \\ 1 & & 0 \end{bmatrix} \)

Voilà! There’s the third root. Now you can use the quadratic formula to force the remaining two roots into the open.

8. Press , then execute QDSOLV (see page 297), which applies the quadratic formula to a vector of coefficients of a quadratic equation.

Result: \{ '1+i' '1-i' \}

Mission accomplished. The five roots of the polynomial are -2, 0.2, 3, 1+i, and 1-i.
Example: Find the roots of the polynomial $2x^3 - 3x^2 + 4x - 9$.

1. Enter the polynomial in vector form: $(2)(3)(4)(9) ENTER$. Your goal is simply to find one root—the other two can be obtained directly from the quadratic equation.

2. Execute APOLY to analyze the polynomial: VAR APOLY.

Result:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Polynomial</th>
<th>Signs:</th>
<th>Range:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>(3, 0)</td>
<td>(0, 3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>[2, -3, 4, -9]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are either 3 or 1 positive real roots, and no negative real roots—a fact confirmed by zero being the integral lower bound.

3. List the possible rational roots in the range. With $p = \{ \pm 1, \pm 3, \pm 9 \}$ and $q = \{ \pm 1, \pm 2 \}$, this list of candidates is short: $\left\{ \frac{1}{2}, 1, \frac{3}{2} \right\}$

4. Begin the SYND program; put the polynomial in the POLYNOMIAL: field: VAR SYND; then NXT CALC OK.

5. Enter the most positive candidate factor into the FACTOR: field and perform the synthetic division: ENTER OK.

```
SYNTHETIC DIVISION
POLYNOMIAL: [2 -3 4 -9]
FACTOR: 1.5
QUOTIENT: [2 0 4]
REMAINDER: -3
ENTER POLYNOMIAL AS VECTOR

The remainder is negative, unlike the positive remainder at the upper bound (3). Conclusion: There exists a real root between 1.5 and 3.

6. Before seeking the real, non-rational root between 1.5 and 3, you might try the other two rational root candidates in the list. (If the list were longer, it may not be worth it to do this.) Enter the factors 1 and then .5 and run the synthetic division. Note the remainders.

Results: For 1: REMAINDER: -6; for .5: REMAINDER: -7.5

4. Polynomials
Not only are the remainders still negative (i.e. there has been no change from 1.5), they are getting more so. Furthermore, the quotient and remainder are alternating signs, suggesting that these are lower bounds. Conclusion: There are no more positive real roots other than the one between 1.5 and 3 that you isolated in step 5.

7. Narrow down the range where the root lives by using the bisecion method. In this method, you choose as your next factor the approximate midpoint of the range where you know the root to be located, and keep repeating this choice as you narrow the range. Begin with 2.25 as the factor. Here are your results:

\[
\begin{align*}
(2.25) \text{ REMAINDER: } & 7.59375 \quad \text{(Positive; root is smaller)} \\
(1.88) \text{ REMAINDER: } & 1.206144 \quad \text{(Positive; root is smaller)} \\
(1.69) \text{ REMAINDER: } & -1.154682 \quad \text{(Negative; root is larger)} \\
(1.785) \text{ REMAINDER: } & -0.04385175 \quad \text{(Negative; root is larger)} \\
(1.833) \text{ REMAINDER: } & 0.569686074 \quad \text{(Positive; root is smaller)} \\
(1.809) \text{ REMAINDER: } & 0.25833258 \quad \text{(Positive; root is smaller)} \\
(1.797) \text{ REMAINDER: } & 0.106150146 \quad \text{(Positive; root is smaller)} \\
(1.791) \text{ REMAINDER: } & 0.030870342 \quad \text{(Positive; root is smaller)} \\
(1.788) \text{ REMAINDER: } & -0.06560256 \quad \text{(Negative; root is larger)} \\
(1.789) \text{ REMAINDER: } & -0.05901138 \quad \text{(Positive; root is smaller)} \\
(1.7885) \text{ REMAINDER: } & -0.000331491 \quad \text{(Negative; root is larger)}
\end{align*}
\]

You could continue this to the 12-digit limit of the HP 48, but 3 or 4 digits is usually enough. The approximate real root is 1.7885.

8. Use QDSOLVE to compute the other two roots (also approximate, because the real root is approximate). Assuming you have just computed the synthetic division for 1.7885, highlight the QUOTIENT: field and press \( \text{nxt} \text{calc} \text{enter} \text{ok} \text{cancel} \) to move a copy of the computed quotient—a quadratic—to the stack. Then execute QDSOLVE: \( \text{var} \text{real} \).

Results (displayed to 4 places): \{ \( '-0.1443+1.5796\text{i}' \) \\
\( '-0.1443-1.5796\text{i}' \) \}

Thus, the three roots of the polynomial (approximate to 4 decimal places) are: 1.7885 \ -0.1443+1.5796i \ -0.1443−1.5796i
Using the Solver to Find Roots

As you can see, the process of "zooming" in manually on approximate real roots can be quite tedious. The built-in Solver of the HP 48 can speed up this process considerably. The next two examples use the same two polynomials as the previous two examples, but this time, the built-in Solver is used.

Example: Find the roots of \( P(x) = 5x^5 - 16x^4 - 7x^3 + 52x^2 - 70x + 12 \).

1. Enter the polynomial in vector form onto the stack and make an extra copy: \( {\{ 5 \} \{ 1 \} \{ -16 \} \{ -7 \} \{ 52 \} \{ -70 \} \{ 12 \} } \) \( \text{ENTER} \) \( \text{ENTER} \).

2. Use \( \text{APOLY} \) to apply Descartes' Rule of Signs and find an integral lower bound and an integral upper bound for the set of real roots of the polynomial. Enter the polynomial in vector form onto the stack and then type \( \text{ENTER} \).

   Result: \( \text{Range: } \{ -3 \, 4 \} \)

   As before, this gives you some idea about the distribution of roots.

3. Convert the vector form of the polynomial to the symbolic: \( \text{ENTER} \) \( \text{VAR} \) \( \text{P→SY} \).

   Result: \( '5*x^5-16*x^4-7*x^3+52*x^2-70*x+12' \).

4. Store the equation as the current equation (in the variable \( \text{EQ} \)) and begin the Solver: \( \text{SOLVE} \) \( \text{ROOT} \) \( \text{EQ} \) \( \text{SOLVR} \).
5. To search for the negative real root, enter, as a list, the range of values that bracket it; put the list in x: \( \{3, 0\} \). 

6. Launch the root-finder. It will start with the range you specified and stop when it comes to a root: \(-2\). Result: \( x: -2 \).

7. It found the negative real root. Enter the range for the positive real roots and start the root-finder again: \( \{0, 4\} \). Result: \( x: 2 \).

8. It has found one positive real root, but Descartes’ Rule of Signs says there must also be another. To find it, just specify a different starting search range than that of the root you just found. You already found a root in the first half of the range, so try the second half, \( \{2, 4\} \): \( x: 3 \).

9. Now that you’ve found the three real roots, you need to return to the vector approach to polynomials; the Solver cannot find complex or imaginary solutions. Press \( w \) repeatedly until the vector form of the original polynomial is on level 1. Then use \( \text{SDIV} \) to “depress” the polynomial to a quadratic by “removing” the roots you just found: \( 2^\frac{1}{2} \) \( \text{VAR} \) \( \text{SDIV} \) \( 2 \text{SDIV} 3 \text{SDIV} \).

10. Use \( \text{QDSOLV} \) to find the remaining roots: \( \text{QDSOLV} \). 

Result: \( \{1+i, 1-i\} \)

Finding Roots of Polynomials 125
Example: Find the roots of the polynomial \(2x^3 - 3x^2 + 4x - 9\).

1. Enter the polynomial in vector form: \(2 \text{SPC} 3 \text{SPC} 4 \text{SPC} 9 \text{SPC} 9 \text{SPC} -3 \text{SPC} 4 \text{SPC} 9 \text{SPC} +/- \text{ ENTER}\). Note that your goal is simply to find one root; the other two you can obtain directly from the quadratic equation.

2. Execute \(\text{APOLY}\) to analyze the polynomial: \(\text{VAR} \text{APOLY}\).

   Result: 
   - Signs: \(\{ 3 \ 0 \} \)
   - Range: \(\{ 0 \ 3 \} \)
   - \([ 2 \ -3 \ 4 \ -9 ]\)

3. This time, for illustration purposes, use the other Solver (you can then use either one you wish for your own work). Press \(\text{SOLVE}\) \(\text{ENTER}\) to begin the \(\text{SOLVE EQUATION}\) application. The equation from the previous example will be highlighted in the \(\text{EQ}\) field.

   ![Solve Equation Screen]

4. Use the \(\text{CALC}\) feature to bring a copy of the symbolic polynomial into the \(\text{EQ}\) field: \(\text{NXT} \text{CALC} \text{ENTER}\).

5. Move the highlight to the \(\text{#}\) field and enter the range for locating a positive real root: \(\text{1 0 SPC 3 ENTER}\). Then move the highlight to the \(\text{#}\) field again and begin the root-finder: \(\text{SOLVE}\).

   Result: \(\text{NXT} \text{X} \text{ENTER} \text{OK}\).

6. Press \(\text{CANCEL}\). On the stack you see the remaining copy of the polynomial vector (level 2) and the (tagged) root you just found (level 1).

7. Press \(\text{VAR} \text{EDIV} \text{EDIV}\) to find (approximations for) the other roots. Result: \{ \(-1.4426330053+1.5796283111*i\) \(-1.4426330053-1.5796283111*i\) \}
Finding Roots of Polynomials Graphically

Plotting a polynomial before trying to find its roots will give you a reasonably good idea about the location of real roots. Furthermore, the FCW menu, available while you are viewing the plot gives you access to the same root-finder used by the Solver—it’s the best of both worlds. Look at an example.

Example: Find the real roots of \( P(x) = x^5 - 6x^4 - 7x^3 + 12x^2 - 10x + 24 \), using a graphical method.

1. Begin the PLOT application and make sure that the TYPE: field contains Function: 

2. Highlight the EQ: field and enter the polynomial: 

3. Enter \( X \) (lower-case) into INDEP:.

4. Set \( \text{H-VIEW} \) to \(-10 \ 10\) and \( \text{V-VIEW} \) to \(-5 \ 5\).

5. Press OPTS and be sure that the plotting range (HI: and LO:) and STEP: intervals are set to the default values.

6. Press OK ERASE DRAW:

A real root exists at each intersection of the graph with the x-axis. In this view, you see three very clear spots where the graph crosses the x-axis, which is very helpful for finding roots even if it gives you a poor view of the overall polynomial.
7. Move the cursor (press ▪ several times) so that it is to the left of the most negative root. Then use the root-finder to find that nearby root: 

\[ \text{FCN Root} \]  

Result: Root: \(-2.1304894272\).

8. Move the cursor near to the middle root and press △ Root again. 

Result: Root: \(1.34467026015\).

9. Move the cursor to the right of the most positive root and press ▶ Root. 

Result: Root: \(6.79120116627\).

10. You’ve found three real roots, but are there more? Zoom out to expand your view of the polynomial: ▼ NXT PICT ZOOM NXT Y2OUT ZOOM NXT Y2OUT.

Although you still can’t see all of the polynomial, you can now see enough to convince yourself that you’ve found all of the real roots. The “wiggle” in the graph suggests a pair of complex roots to bring the total to the required five.

4. POLYNOMIALS
Using the Built-In Polynomial Root-Finder

By far the quickest and easiest method of finding the roots of a polynomial on the HP 48 is to use its built-in polynomial root-finder. It uses a more specialized algorithm than the general root-finder used by the Solver.

Example: Use the built-in polynomial root-finder to find all roots of

\[ P(x) = x^5 - 6x^4 - 7x^3 + 12x^2 - 10x + 24 \]

1. From the stack, FIX the display to 4, then open the SOLVE POLYNOMIAL application:

   [MODES] [SOLVE] [COEFF]

   [ENTER]

   SOLVE

   POLYNOMIAL

   COEFFICIENTS [ A0 ... A1 A2 ]:

   ROOTS:

   ENTER COEFFICIENTS OR PRESS SOLVE

   EDIT... SYMB SOLVE

2. Enter the polynomial in vector form into the field labeled COEFFICIENTS [ A0 ... A1 A2 ]:

   [1 [SPC] [6] [SPC] [7] [SPC] [12] [SPC] [-10] [SPC] [24] [ENTER]

3. Press SOLVE.
4. The result is a complex vector containing five roots expressed as complex numbers. Press \[ \text{EDIT} \] to view the vector in the Matrix-Writer. Then press \[ \text{►} \] as needed to bring each element (i.e. root) in the result vector into the command line at the bottom of the screen. The five roots, to four places, are:

\[
\begin{align*}
(-0.0029, -1.1106) \\
(-0.0029, 1.1106) \\
(1.3449, 0.0000) \\
(-2.1302, 0.0000) \\
(6.7912, 0.0000)
\end{align*}
\]

The three roots whose imaginary coefficients are zero are, of course, real roots, but because the result vector contains some complex elements, the rules of HP 48 vectors require that all elements in the vector be expressed as complex numbers.

**Example:** Find all roots of \( P(x) = x^6 + 3x^5 - 4x^4 + 10x^2 - 34x + 42 \), but this time try the program \texttt{RROOTS} (see page 301), which makes use of the polynomial root-finder but provides more convenient output—a list showing real roots first.

1. Return to the stack (use \texttt{CANCEL} as needed) and enter the polynomial in vector form (be careful to note the missing third-degree term):

\[
\begin{align*}
\leftarrow [ 4 \ 2 \ \text{ENTER} \\
\end{align*}
\]

2. Execute \texttt{RROOTS}: Type \( \texttt{VAR \ \texttt{ENTER}} \) or press \texttt{VAR} (then \texttt{NXT} or \( \leftarrow \text{PREV} \) as needed) \texttt{RROOT}. Result (to 4 places):

\[
\{ -3.6305, -2.4045, (1.2904, -0.5445), (1.2904, 0.5445), (0.2271, -1.5496), (0.2271, 1.5496) \}
\]
Converting to Polynomials

There are many ways to find a set of roots of a given polynomial. But how would you find a polynomial that corresponds to a given set of roots? The HP 48 has a built-in function, PCOEFF, that makes it easy to do just that.

Example: Find the polynomial that has the following set of roots:

\[ \left\{ \frac{-1}{2}, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{7}{3}, 4 + 3i, 4 - 3i \right\} \]

1. Open the SOLVE POLYNOMIAL screen: \( \rightarrow \) SOLVE \( \downarrow \downarrow \) ENTER.

2. Highlight the ROOTS: field and enter the roots as a vector. Note that because two of the roots are complex, all roots must be entered as complex numbers; the real roots must use a zero as their imaginary part (and for this reason it is generally easier to enter each root onto the stack and assemble the vector at the end): \( \downarrow \) NXT \( \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \downarrow \) ENTER 4 ENTER 3 ENTER 4 ENTER 3 \(+/-\) ENTER 5 \(+/-\) ENTER 2 \( \div \) 7 ENTER 3 \( \div \) 5 PRG TYPE \( \rightarrow \) ARR \( \leftarrow \) CONT \( \text{OK} \).

3. Press \( \uparrow \rightarrow \) NXT \( \downarrow \downarrow \) SOLVE. This computes the polynomial’s coefficients and returns it to the COEFFICIENTS field and places a copy of it on the stack. Press \( \leftarrow \) NXT. This transforms the polynomial in vector form to its symbolic form and places it on the stack. Press CANCEL to view the results:

Result: \[ 'X^5-10.5000*X^4+45.0556*X^3-62.1667*X^2-4.8333*X+19.4444' \]

4. Since you have some rational coefficients, press \( \leftarrow \) SYMBOLIC \( \uparrow \rightarrow \) NXT.

Result: \[ 'X^5-21/2*X^4+811/18*X^3-373/6*X^2-29/6*X+175/9' \]
The result of the previous example is just one of the possible polynomials that have the given roots—the one whose highest-degree coefficient is 1. But if you multiply all coefficients by the least common multiple of all the rational denominators (18 here), you will get a polynomial with integral coefficients:

\[18x^5 - 189x^4 + 811x^3 - 1119x^2 - 87x + 350\]

Happily, there’s a program that will save you even this step....

**Example:** Repeat the previous example, but this time use \texttt{RCOEF} (see page 298), a program which will, given a list of roots, return a symbolic polynomial with integral coefficients.

1. Enter the roots in a list:

\[
\begin{align*}
\pm 1 & \\
\pm 2 & \\
\pm 3 & \\
\pm 7 & \\
\pm 3 & \\
\end{align*}
\]

2. Execute \texttt{RCOEF}:

\[
\texttt{RCOEF ENTER or VAR (then NXT or PREV as needed) RCOEF.}
\]

**Result:**

\[
\begin{align*}
18x^5 - 189x^4 + 811x^3 - 1119x^2 - 87x + 350
\end{align*}
\]

---

132

4. **Polynomials**
Another kind of conversion problem occurs when you have a function of one variable that must be converted to a polynomial before you can find its roots. The PCONV program (see page 290) is designed to perform such conversions.

Example: Find all roots of \( 4(x + 2)^3 - \frac{(x - 1)^2}{x + 1} + 5x - 7(x - 4) + 15 \).

1. Enter the function in its symbolic form: 
   \( \text{EQUATION} \quad 4 \quad () \quad \alpha \left( x + 2 \right) \quad \alpha \left( x - 1 \right) \quad 2 \quad \alpha \left( x + 1 \right) \quad 5 \quad \alpha \left( x - 7 \right) \quad \alpha \left( x - 4 \right) \quad 15 \quad \text{ENTER}. \)

2. Use PCONV to convert the symbolic function to a polynomial, if possible: 
   \( \alpha \quad \alpha \quad \text{PCONV} \quad \text{ENTER} \) or \( \alpha \quad \text{VAR} \quad \text{NXT} \) (then \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{PCONV} \).

   Result: 
   \[
   \begin{array}{c}
   2: \quad [ \quad 4 \quad 28 \quad 69 \quad 123 \quad 74 \quad ] \\
   1: \quad [ \quad 1 \quad 1 \quad ] 
   \end{array}
   \]

   The level-2 polynomial is the numerator; the level-1 polynomial is the denominator for the converted expression (so if the denominator is \([ \quad 1 \quad ]\), then the conversion result is a true polynomial). Save a copy: 
   \( \text{STACK} \quad \text{NXT} \quad \text{DUP2} \).

3. In any case, the roots of the original function are the same as the roots of the converted numerator, so press \( \text{VAR} \quad \text{ROOT} \) to compute the roots.

   Result (to 4 places): 
   \[
   \{-4.474, -0.9256, -0.8002, -1.9563, -0.8002, 1.9563\}
   \]

4. Optional. Drop the previous result and compute the actual symbolic version of the converted expression: 
   \( \text{POLYID} \).

   Result: 
   \[
   \begin{array}{c}
   4: \quad [ \quad 4 \quad 24 \quad 45 \quad 78 \quad ] \\
   3: \quad [ \quad -4 \quad ] \\
   2: \quad [ \quad 1 \quad 1 \quad ] \\
   1: \quad \left( 4x^3 + 24x^2 + 45x + (78x + 74)/(x+1) \right)
   \end{array}
   \]
5. Systems of Linear Equations
Characterizing Systems

Systems of linear equations (and inequalities) are a powerful means of modeling real-world problems and solutions. Such systems are classified according to two characteristics:

- The relationship of the individual equations to each other.
- The ratio of independent variables to independent equations.

Any two linear equations within a system—representing lines—may either intersect, not intersect, or coincide. When they intersect, the equations are considered to be consistent and independent. When they don’t intersect, they are inconsistent. When they coincide, they are consistent and dependent. When working with a system of linear equations, your goal is to include only equations that are consistent and independent with all of the others in the system, because only those equations will contribute information useful in determining a solution.

However, many kinds of real-world problems present two (or more) equations that don’t precisely coincide, but are close enough to each other to practically coincide. Equations which coincide—exactly or practically—are called degenerate, which, if they are a part of a linear system that you’re solving, can lead to untrustworthy solutions.

The other important characteristic of a linear system is the ratio of independent variables to independent equations. Their true independence is critical. Variables can appear independent—for example, test performance and shoe size—when there is actually some dependency relationship between them—age. Thus equations can appear independent (i.e. “intersecting”) but be actually quite degenerate. Moral: Before deciding on the ratio of variables to equations, be sure that everything you count meets the test of independency.

If the true independence ratio is exactly 1, then the linear system has a single, exact solution. If the ratio is less than 1 (fewer variables than equations), then the linear system is over-determined, and you probably must settle for a best solution rather than an exact one. If the ratio is greater than 1 (more variables than equations), then the linear system is under-determined, and has either no solutions or an infinite number of them—thus requiring you to decide which is the best solution.
There are several ways to test the nature of a linear system: You can plot the equations together and visually check for near-coincidental lines; you can enter the system as a matrix of coefficients and find the condition number of the matrix; or, you can compute the rank of the matrix of coefficients. Look at each technique.

**Example:** Plot the following system of linear equations and look for one or more near-coincidental lines:

\[
\begin{align*}
18x + 24y &= 54 \\
27x + 36y &= 80 \\
5x - 8y &= -7
\end{align*}
\]

1. Because the **PLOT** application works best if there is no equal sign in the expressions, mentally convert each of the equations into expressions equal to zero (i.e. \(18x + 24y = 54\) becomes \(18x + 24y - 54\)).

2. Open the **PLOT** application, make sure that **TYPE** field says **Function**, and then reset the plot: \(DEL \downarrow \text{ENTER}\).

3. Highlight the **EQ** field, then enter the lines in a list:

\[
\begin{align*}
18x + 24y &= 54 \\
27x + 36y &= 80 \\
5x - 8y &= -7
\end{align*}
\]

4. Because \(y\) is on the same side of the equal sign as the independent variable \(x\), you must be sure that some value is stored in \(y\) before attempting a Function plot. The value you choose will affect the location of the plots, but not the positions of each with respect to the others. Store 1 in \(y\): \(\text{NXT} \text{CALC} \uparrow \leftarrow y \text{STO} \uparrow \alpha \downarrow \text{OK} \text{NXT}\).

5. Enter \(x\) (lower-case) in **INDEP**; set **H-VIEW** to \(-10 \uparrow 10\); and set **Y-VIEW** to \(-4 \uparrow 6\). Then press **ERASE DRAW**.
6. The two lines on the right are suspiciously close. Press \textit{TRACE} to begin trace mode. Then press \(\uparrow\) until the cursor is visible along one of the suspect lines. With the cursor on one of the lines (press \(\uparrow\) as needed to switch lines) press \(\leftarrow\), then press and hold down \(\downarrow\). You will see the equation of the current line displayed above the plot until you release \(\downarrow\). Repeat the procedure with the other suspect line.

Of course, visually inspecting the plots of system of linear equations is not possible for systems involving more than two independent variables.

\textbf{Example:} Find the condition number for the square (4 x 4) matrix representing

\[
\begin{align*}
18x + 24y + 6z - 54 \\
27x + 36y + 9z - 80 \\
5x - 8y + 4z + 7 \\
-3x + 6y - 9z + 12
\end{align*}
\]

this linear system:

1. Press \((\text{CANCEL}\,\text{CANCEL})\) to return to the stack. Then enter the matrix of coefficients for this system: \(\rightarrow\text{MATRIX} [1 \, 8 \, \text{ENTER} \, 2 \, 4 \, \text{ENTER} \, 6 \, \text{ENTER} \, 5 \, 4 \, +/ - \, \text{ENTER} \, \downarrow \, 2 \, 7 \, \text{ENTER} \, 3 \, 6 \, \text{ENTER} \, 9 \, \text{ENTER} \, 8 \, 0 \, +/ - \, \text{ENTER} \, 5 \, \text{ENTER} \, 8 \, +/ - \, \text{ENTER} \, 4 \, \text{ENTER} \, 7 \, \text{ENTER} \, 3 \, +/ - \, \text{ENTER} \, 6 \, \text{ENTER} \, 9 \, +/ - \, \text{ENTER} \, 1 \, 2 \, \text{ENTER} \, \text{ENTER})\). Make a copy of the matrix for later and find the condition number: \(\text{MTH} \rightarrow \text{MAT: NORM COND}\). \text{Result:} 1443.73404255.

The larger the condition number of a matrix, the more likely it is to be \textit{ill-conditioned}—contain dependent equations. But how large is too large? That depends upon how many digits in your answer you want to trust.

2. Do a small computation to give a rough idea of how many digits you can trust in a solution computed using this matrix. Enter 15 (you’d use 12 if the coefficients in the matrix were themselves the result of HP 48 computations). Then press \(\text{SWAP} \rightarrow \text{LOG} \rightarrow\).

\text{Result:} 11.840512883

Following this rule-of-thumb, you can trust up to 12 digits of any solution computed using this matrix. Thus, although they are close, the first two equations in the system are indeed independent.
However, the condition number can be found only for *square matrices*. To characterize non-square matrices, you must find their *rank*.

**Example:** Find the rank of the matrix representing the following system of linear equations, and use it to determine whether all its equations are independent:

\[
\begin{align*}
18x + 24y + 6z &= -54 \\
27x + 36y + 9z &= -80 \\
5x - 8y + 4z &= 7
\end{align*}
\]

1. You should still have a copy of the previous matrix on level 2. If you don’t, enter the matrix above directly. If you do, edit it by removing the last (i.e. fourth) row: \( \text{EDIT} \) \( \text{MATRX} \) \( \text{ROW} \) \( \text{ROW-} \) \( \leftarrow \).

2. Make another copy of the revised matrix and then compute the rank:
   \( \text{ENTER} \) \( \text{MATRX} \) \( \text{NORM} \) \( \text{NXT} \) \( \text{RANK} \). Result: 3

   The result indicates that all three equations are independent—the matrix is of *full rank*.

3. Press \( \text{EDIT} \) \( \text{EDIT} \) \( \text{EDIT} \) \( \text{EDIT} \) \( \text{EDIT} \) \( +/\) \( \text{ENTER} \) \( \text{ENTER} \) \( \text{ENTER} \) \( \text{ENTER} \) to edit the matrix by changing the constant in the second equation from -80 to -81. Find the rank of the edited matrix: \( \text{RANK} \). Result: 2

   The \( \text{RANK} \) computation is indicating that the second equation is now linearly dependent upon the first, so now there are only two truly independent equations.
Introduction to Matrix Arithmetic

Solving systems of linear equations of more than two equations in two variables requires the use of matrices. The HP 48 handles all manner of matrix math with ease. The following few examples illustrate some of the basic matrix operations.

**Matrix Addition**

Two matrices may be summed only if they have exactly the same dimensions. Matrix addition simply sums corresponding elements of the two matrices and is therefore commutative: if \( A \) and \( B \) have identical dimensions, \( A + B = B + A \).

**Example:** Add \( A = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 4 & 2 \\ 5 & -1 & -6 \end{bmatrix} \) and \( B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -4 & -8 \\ 0 & 5 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \).

1. Enter \( A \) onto the stack: \( \text{MATRIX} \ 2 +/- \text{ENTER} \ 4 \text{ENTER} \ 2 \text{ENTER} \) \( \text{ENTER} \ 5 \text{ENTER} \ 1 +/- \text{ENTER} \ 6 +/- \text{ENTER} \text{ENTER} \).
2. Enter \( B \) onto the stack: \( \text{MATRIX} \ 3 \text{ENTER} \ 4 +/- \text{ENTER} \ 8 +/- \text{ENTER} \) \( \text{ENTER} \ 0 \text{ENTER} \ 5 \text{ENTER} \ 2 \text{ENTER} \text{ENTER} \).
3. Press \( + \). Result: \( \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -6 \\ 5 & 4 & -4 \end{bmatrix} \)

**Scalar Multiplication**

Scalar multiplication is the multiplication of a matrix and a number (known as a scalar in this context). Each element of the matrix is multiplied by the scalar, resulting in the scalar product. Scalar multiplication is commutative: \( n \cdot A = A \cdot n \).

**Example:** Find the scalar product of 5 and \( A = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 4 & 2 \\ 5 & -1 & -6 \end{bmatrix} \).

1. Enter \( A \) on the stack: \( \text{MATRIX} \ 2 +/- \text{ENTER} \ 4 \text{ENTER} \ 2 \text{ENTER} \) \( \text{ENTER} \ 5 \text{ENTER} \ 1 +/- \text{ENTER} \ 6 +/- \text{ENTER} \text{ENTER} \).
2. Enter the scalar: \( 5 \text{ENTER} \).
3. Press \( \times \). Result: \( \begin{bmatrix} -10 & 20 & 10 \\ 25 & -5 & -30 \end{bmatrix} \)
Matrix Subtraction

Matrix subtraction is analogous to the subtraction of real numbers. Therefore, on the HP 48, you can do matrix subtraction \((A-B)\) in any one of three ways:

1. Enter \(A\), enter \(B\), press \(-\).
2. Enter \(B\), press \(+/-\), enter \(A\), press \(+\).
3. Enter \(B\), enter \(-1\), press \(\times\), enter \(A\), press \(+\).

Matrix Multiplication

Matrix multiplication \((A \cdot B)\) is defined only for two matrices that are dimensionally compatible in the given order: The number of columns in the first matrix \(A\) must equal the number of rows in the second matrix \(B\). The result of matrix multiplication will have the same number of rows as \(A\) and the same number of columns as \(B\).

This table illustrates the rules for dimensional compatibility with a few examples (note that the dimensions are always listed as \(rows \times columns\)):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>A \cdot B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3x2</td>
<td>2x5</td>
<td>3x5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3x2</td>
<td>5x2</td>
<td>not defined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2x3</td>
<td>3x2</td>
<td>2x2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1x4</td>
<td>4x1</td>
<td>1x1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4x1</td>
<td>1x4</td>
<td>4x4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Matrix multiplication combines each row of \(A\) with each column of \(B\), in a process known as the inner product or dot product, which multiplies corresponding elements (i.e. the first element of the row by the first element of the column, etc.), then sums all the products.
Thus each row/column combination results in a single element in the result matrix. The following figure demonstrates this process for the multiplication of a 2 x 3 matrix (A) with a 3 x 2 matrix (B):

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
x & y & z \\
r & s & t
\end{bmatrix} \times \begin{bmatrix}
a & b & c \\
d & e & f
\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}
xa + yb + zc & xd + ye + zf \\
ra + sb + tc & rd + se + tf
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Example: Find \(AB\) if \(A = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 4 & 2 \\ 5 & -1 & -6 \end{bmatrix}\) and \(B = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 4 \\ 7 & -2 \end{bmatrix}\).

1. Enter A: \(\text{MATRX} 2 \text{+/- Enter } 4 \text{ Enter } 2 \text{ Enter } \text{DownArrow } 5 \text{ Enter } 1 \text{+/- Enter } 6 \text{+/- Enter Enter} \).
2. Enter B: \(\text{MATRX} 3 \text{+/- Enter } 5 \text{ Enter } \text{DownArrow } 1 \text{+/- Enter } 4 \text{ Enter } 7 \text{ Enter } 2 \text{+/- Enter Enter} \).
3. Press \(\times\). Result: \(\begin{bmatrix} 16 & 1 \\ -56 & 33 \end{bmatrix}\)

**Matrix Transposition**

Transposing a matrix converts its rows into columns and its columns into rows—an important operation in many different matrix applications.

Example: Transpose the matrix \(A = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 4 & 2 \\ 5 & -1 & -6 \end{bmatrix}\).

1. Enter A: \(\text{MATRX} 2 \text{+/- Enter } 4 \text{ Enter } 2 \text{ Enter } \text{DownArrow } 5 \text{ Enter } 1 \text{+/- Enter } 6 \text{+/- Enter Enter} \).
2. Transpose it: \(\text{MTH} \text{MATRX MAKE } \text{TRN} \).
   
   Result: \(\begin{bmatrix} -2 & 5 \\ 4 & -1 \\ 2 & -6 \end{bmatrix}\)
Finding the Determinant of a Square Matrix

The determinant of a matrix is a number computed from the elements of a square matrix. It isn’t defined for non-square matrices. The determinant plays a key role in determining whether a matrix has an inverse—which, in turn, is the key operation in solving a system of equations.

Example: Find the determinant of the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -4 & 1 \\ 2 & 6 & 0 \\ 4 & -1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$

1. Enter $A$: $\rightarrow$ MATRIX $\rightarrow$ ENTER $\rightarrow$ 3 $\rightarrow$ ENTER $\rightarrow$ 4 $\rightarrow$ +/- $\rightarrow$ ENTER $\rightarrow$ 1 $\rightarrow$ ENTER $\rightarrow$ \downarrow $\rightarrow$ 2 $\rightarrow$ ENTER $\rightarrow$ 6 $\rightarrow$ ENTER $\rightarrow$ 0 $\rightarrow$ ENTER $\rightarrow$ 4 $\rightarrow$ ENTER $\rightarrow$ 1 $\rightarrow$ +/- $\rightarrow$ ENTER $\rightarrow$ 2 $\rightarrow$ +/- $\rightarrow$ ENTER $\rightarrow$ ENTER.

2. Compute the determinant: MTH \rightarrow MATRIX \rightarrow NORM \rightarrow \text{\underline{NXT}} \rightarrow \text{\underline{DET}}.

Result: $-78$
Matrix Inversion

There is no matrix “division”—only multiplication of one matrix with the inverse of another. And not all matrices have inverses; matrix inversion is defined only for some (not all) square matrices. The inverse of a square matrix $A$ is the matrix $A^{-1}$ such that $A \cdot A^{-1} = A^{-1} \cdot A = I$, where $I$ is the identity matrix with the same dimensions as $A$. An identity matrix is a square matrix whose diagonal elements are 1 and all others are 0. For example, the 3 x 3 identity matrix is

$$
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
$$

**Example:** Invert the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -4 & 1 \\ 2 & 6 & 0 \\ 4 & -1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$ and compute $A \cdot A^{-1}$ to check.

1. Enter $A$: 

   \[ \text{(MATRIX) (3) [ENTER]} \]

2. Make a copy of $A$ and compute its inverse: 

   \[ \text{[ENTER] (/\)} \]

   Results (shown to 5 places):

   \[
   \begin{bmatrix}
   0.15385 & 0.11538 & 0.07692 \\
   -0.05128 & 0.12821 & -0.02564 \\
   0.33333 & 0.16667 & -0.33333
   \end{bmatrix}
   \]

3. **Optional.** Make a copy of the inverse and use the program $A\rightarrow Q$ (see page 277) to convert the array elements to fractions to see if you can obtain an exact answer: 

   \[ \text{[ENTER] (}/\)]

   Results:

   \[
   \{ \{ '2/13', '3/26', '1/13' \} \\
   \{ '-(2/39)', '5/39', '-(1/39)' \} \\
   \{ '1/3', '1/6', '-(1/3)' \} \}
   \]

   Note that the result is a list of lists representing rows of the matrix. This notation is standard for representing *symbolic arrays* on the HP 48 (actual arrays don’t allow algebraic objects).*

4. Check the results by multiplying $A$ by its computed inverse (if you performed step 3, first press $\times$): 

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

*Converting an array of decimal approximations to a symbolic array of fractional equivalents will not be useful if the array is the result of an inversion (or other computation) of another array with approximate decimal elements.
Solving a Linear System

There are several approaches to solving a linear system of equations. The HP 48 can assist you with any of them.

- **Gaussian Elimination.** This approach uses elementary row operations of matrices to transform the matrix representing a linear system into one from which the solution can be easily computed. This is the most commonly used approach for manual solving.

- **Cramer’s Rule.** Cramer’s Rule is a theorem that allows you to compute the solution of a linear system by dividing its matrix into a set of smaller ones and then using ratios of the determinants of these smaller matrices to compute the solution.

- **Matrix Inversion.** While technically both of the preceding methods implicitly use matrix inversion, there are other methods better suited to electronic computation that will efficiently generate a solution directly from the matrix representing the linear system.

These methods are described in each of the next three sections.
Solving by Gaussian Elimination

The process of *Gaussian elimination* is a common approach to solving systems of linear equations when doing them manually. It transforms the *augmented* matrix representing the linear system into an equivalent *row echelon* or *reduced row echelon* matrix, from which the solution can be easily computed.*

To understand the goal more clearly, look at examples of augmented, row echelon and reduced row echelon matrices:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Augmented:</th>
<th>Row Echelon:</th>
<th>Reduced Row Echelon:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| \[
\begin{bmatrix}
  x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & k_1 \\
  x_2 & y_2 & z_2 & k_2 \\
  x_3 & y_3 & z_3 & k_3 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\] | \[
\begin{bmatrix}
  1 & a_{12} & a_{13} & k_1 \\
  0 & 1 & a_{23} & k_2 \\
  0 & 0 & 1 & k_3 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\] | \[
\begin{bmatrix}
  1 & 0 & 0 & x \\
  0 & 1 & 0 & y \\
  0 & 0 & 1 & z \\
\end{bmatrix}
\] |

The matrix of coefficients is partially transformed to the identity matrix in the row echelon form and fully transformed in the reduced row echelon form.

Each step of the Gaussian elimination process uses one of three elementary row operations for matrices:

1. Swapping two rows.
2. Multiplying one row by a nonzero constant.
3. Multiplying one row by a nonzero constant and adding it to another row.

Not surprisingly, the HP 48 has a command corresponding to each of these operations. Take a look at an extended example of using Gaussian elimination and the HP 48 to solve a linear system.

*Technically, the method of reducing the augmented matrix to a row echelon matrix is called *Gaussian elimination*, and the method that reduces the augmented matrix “all the way” to a reduced row echelon matrix is called *Gauss-Jordan reduction*. Both methods are referred to interchangeably as Gaussian elimination in this book.

*Solving by Gaussian Elimination*
Example: Solve this system of linear equations using Gaussian elimination:

\[
\begin{align*}
  x + 2y + 3z &= 6 \\
 2x - 4y + 2z &= 16 \\
 3x + y - z &= -2
\end{align*}
\]

1. Enter the augmented matrix onto the stack. The augmented matrix includes an extra column containing the constants that appear on the right-hand side of the equations:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
  1 & 2 & 3 & | & 6 \\
  2 & -4 & 2 & | & 16 \\
  3 & 1 & -1 & | & -2
\end{bmatrix}
\]

So, press \( matrix \ 1 \ enter \ 2 \ enter \ 3 \ enter \ 6 \ enter \ \downarrow \ 2 \ enter \ 4 \ +/- \ enter \ 2 \ enter \ 1 \ enter \ 6 \ enter \ 3 \ enter \ 1 \ enter \ 1 \ +/- \ enter \ 2 \ +/- \ enter \ enter \).

2. The upper left element of the matrix does not need to be transformed, so begin with element (2,1)—the first element of the second row. It must be transformed to 0. To do this, multiply row 1 by -2 and add it row 2:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
  1 & 2 & 3 & | & 6 \\
  0 & -8 & -4 & | & 4 \\
  3 & 1 & -1 & | & -2
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Result:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
  1 & 2 & 3 & 6 \\
  0 & -8 & -4 & 4 \\
  3 & 1 & -1 & -2
\end{bmatrix}
\]

3. Reduce element (3,1) to 0: Multiply row 1 by -3; add it to row 3.

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
  1 & 2 & 3 & 6 \\
  0 & -8 & -4 & 4 \\
  0 & -5 & -10 & -20
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Result:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
  1 & 2 & 3 & 6 \\
  0 & -8 & -4 & 4 \\
  0 & -5 & -10 & -20
\end{bmatrix}
\]

4. Reduce element (2,2) to 1: Swap rows 2 and 3, then multiply row 2 by -1/5 (to avoid fractional elements).

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
  1 & 2 & 3 & 6 \\
  0 & 1 & 2 & 4 \\
  0 & -8 & -4 & 4
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Result:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
  1 & 2 & 3 & 6 \\
  0 & 1 & 2 & 4 \\
  0 & -8 & -4 & 4
\end{bmatrix}
\]

5. Reduce element (2,3) to 0: Multiply row 2 by 8 and add it to row 3.

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
  1 & 2 & 3 & 6 \\
  0 & 1 & 2 & 4 \\
  0 & 0 & 12 & 36
\end{bmatrix}
\]

5. Systems of Linear Equations
6. Reduce element (3,3) to 1: Multiply row 3 by 1/12.

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
0 & 1 & 2 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\] 

This produces the row echelon form, which, when translated it back

\[
x + 2y + 3z = 6
\]

\[
y + 2z = 4
\]

\[
z = 3
\]

7. Of course, you could now solve this system by substituting \(z = 3\) into the second equation, solving there for \(y\), then substituting for \(y\) and \(z\) in the first equation, and solving there for \(x\). But for the purposes of this example, continue the elimination process until you produce the completely reduced row echelon form.

Reduce element (1,2) to 0: Multiply row 2 by -2; add it to row 1.

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & -1 \\
0 & 1 & 2 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

8. Reduce element (2,3) to 0: Multiply row 3 by -2; add it to row 2.

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & -1 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

9. Finally, reduce element (1,3) to 0: Multiply row 3 by 1 and add it to row 1:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

The solution is now directly obvious if you translate this reduced row echelon form into a system of equations:

\[
x = 1
\]

\[
y = -2
\]

\[
z = 3
\]
As the previous example makes clear, Gaussian elimination will get you to a solution sooner or later, but it may take more than a few steps. The HP 48 has a command to accelerate the process. \texttt{RREF} takes you directly from the augmented matrix to the reduced row echelon form; in essence, it automatically executes all of the elementary row operations necessary to complete the process.

\textbf{Example:} Use the \texttt{RREF} command to solve the following system:

\[
\begin{align*}
    x + 2y + 3z &= 6 \\
    2x - 4y + 2z &= 16 \\
    3x + y - z &= -2
\end{align*}
\]

1. Enter the augmented matrix representing the system: \texttt{\textasciitilde MATRIX} 1 ENTER 2 ENTER 3 ENTER 6 ENTER \texttt{\textasciitilde} 2 ENTER 4 +/- ENTER 2 ENTER 1 ENTER 6 ENTER 3 ENTER 1 ENTER 1 +/- ENTER 2 +/- ENTER ENTER.

2. Transform the augmented matrix directly to its reduced row echelon form: \texttt{MTH MATH FACTR RREF}.

Result:

\[
\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}
\]

3. As in the previous example, you can simply read the solution from the right-most column: \( x = 1; \ y = -2, \ z = 3. \)
The Gaussian elimination process can be used on any augmented matrix—even one that has been augmented with more than one column.

For example, to invert a square matrix, you can augment it with an identity matrix of the same dimensions and then reduce the augmented matrix to its reduced row echelon form. The inverse is returned to the right-hand section, just as the solution is returned to the right-hand section in the examples above.

Example: Use Gaussian elimination to invert \[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
1 & 1 & 2 \\
0 & 1 & 2
\end{bmatrix}.
\]

1. Enter the matrix: 

```
1 2 3
ENTER
1 1 2
ENTER
0 1 2
ENTER
```

2. Create a 3 x 3 identity matrix: 

```
3 MTH MATR MAKE IDN
```

3. Augment the original matrix by inserting the identity matrix on the right side (i.e. beginning in column 4) of the original matrix: 

```
MATR COL 4 COL
```

Result: 

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 2 & 3 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

4. Transform the augmented matrix to its reduced row echelon form: 

```
MATR FACTR IRREF
```

Result: 

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 2 & -2 & -1 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 1 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Notice that the left half of the augmented matrix has been converted to a 3 x 3 identity matrix and the right half is the inverse of the original matrix.

5. Eliminate the first three columns, leaving only the inverse: 

```
1 MTH MATR COL 3 COL 4 COL COL COL
```

Result: 

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
0 & 1 & -1 \\
2 & -2 & -1 \\
-1 & 1 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]
**Solving with Determinants: Cramer’s Rule**

Determinants can be used to solve a system of linear equations provided that the following three conditions are met:

- The number of independent variables equals the number of independent equations in the system.
- The determinant of the matrix of coefficients is non-zero.
- At least one of the constants to the right of the equal signs is non-zero.

Cramer’s Rule requires that you create a set of specially augmented matrices from the matrix of coefficients. For example, to use Cramer’s Rule to solve the linear system:

\[
\begin{align*}
  x + 2y + 3z &= 6 \\
  2x - 4y + 2z &= 16 \\
  3x + y - z &= -2
\end{align*}
\]

you first must create *four* matrices:

- The matrix of coefficients itself: \( A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & -4 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \)
- \( A \) with its first column replaced by the constants: \( A_x = \begin{bmatrix} 16 & -4 & 2 \\ -2 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \)
- \( A \) with its second column replaced by the constants: \( A_y = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 6 & 3 \\ 2 & 16 & 2 \\ 3 & -2 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \)
- \( A \) with its third column replaced by the constants: \( A_z = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 6 \\ 2 & -4 & 16 \\ 3 & 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \)

The unique solution of the given system is:

\[
x = \frac{|A_x|}{|A|}, \quad y = \frac{|A_y|}{|A|}, \quad z = \frac{|A_z|}{|A|},
\]

where \( |\cdot| \) indicates the *determinant* of the respective matrix.
Example: Solve the following system of linear equations using Cramer’s Rule:

\[
\begin{align*}
    x + 2y - z &= -7 \\
    2x + 3y + 2z &= -3 \\
    x - 2y - 2z &= 3
\end{align*}
\]

1. Enter the augmented matrix, just as with Gaussian elimination:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
    1 & 1 & 2 & -1 \[+/=] JENTER \\
    2 & 3 & 2 & \[+/=] JENTER \\
    1 & -2 & -2 & \[+/=] JENTER
\end{bmatrix}
\]

2. Copy the augmented matrix, then modify the copy by removing the column of constants:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
    1 & 2 & -1 \\
    2 & 3 & 2 \\
    1 & -2 & -2 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]

The matrix of coefficients \((A)\)

3. Find the determinant of \(A\):

\[
\det(A) = 17
\]

4. Bring the copy of the augmented matrix to level 1 and make another copy. Then create \(A_x\) by swapping column 4 and column 1 and then deleting column 4:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
    -7 & 2 & -1 \\
    -3 & 3 & 2 \\
    3 & -2 & -2 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]

5. The determinant of \(A_x\):

\[
\det(A_x) = 17
\]

6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 to find the determinant of \(A_y\). This time swap columns 2 and 4:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
    -7 & 2 & 1 \\
    -3 & 2 & 3 \\
    3 & -2 & 2 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]

7. Likewise, find the determinant of \(A_z\). This time swap columns 3 and 4:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
    17 & -51 & 24 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]

8. Collect the last three determinants in a list:

\[
\text{Result: } \{ 17, -51, 24 \}
\]

9. To compute the three solutions, swap levels and divide:

\[
\text{Result: } \{ 1, -3, 2 \}
\]

Thus, \(x = 1; y = -3; z = 2\).
Of course, this method of solving a system of linear equations by Cramer’s Rule is a good candidate for automation. The program CRAMER (see page 279) does just that.

Example: Use CRAMER to solve the following linear system:

\[
\begin{align*}
    a + b + c + d + f &= 340 \\
    a + b &= 90 \\
    a + c &= 110 \\
    d + f &= 180 \\
    c + f &= 170
\end{align*}
\]

1. Enter the augmented matrix representing the system:

   \[
   \begin{bmatrix}
   1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\
   1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
   1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\
   0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\
   0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
   1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
   \end{bmatrix}
   \]

2. Enter a list of the variables, in the order presented in the matrix:

   \[
   \{ 1 \alpha \leftrightarrow A \text{ SP} C \alpha \leftrightarrow B \text{ SP} C \alpha \leftrightarrow C \text{ SP} C \alpha \leftrightarrow D \text{ SP} C \alpha \leftrightarrow F \}
   \]

3. Execute CRAMER: \(\alpha \alpha \text{ CRAMER ENTER}\) or \(\text{VAR}\) (then \(\text{NXT}\) or \(\text{PREV}\) as needed) \(\text{CRAMER}\).

   Result: 
   
   \[
   2: \{ -1 -40 -50 -70 -80 -100 \} \\
   \]

The list on level 2 contains the determinants for the matrix of coefficients and each of the "Cramer"-augmented matrices. Level 1 contains a list of the solutions tagged with the names of the variables.
Solving by Matrix Inversion

While the preceding methods are robust (and could be adapted to symbolic—as opposed to numeric—solutions) they are not the most efficient means of solving a system of linear equations when using a computational device like the HP 48. The fastest methods usually employ algorithms to invert a matrix.

The crucial role that matrix inversion plays in the solution of a system of linear equations is obvious when you view a linear system as a single matrix equation:

\[
\begin{align*}
    x + 2y - z &= -7 \\
    2x + 3y + 2z &= -3 \\
    x - 2y - 2z &= 3
\end{align*}
\]

is equivalent to

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
    1 & 2 & -1 \\
    2 & 3 & 2 \\
    1 & -2 & -2
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
    x \\
    y \\
    z
\end{bmatrix}
=
\begin{bmatrix}
    -7 \\
    -3 \\
    3
\end{bmatrix}
\]

If you recall the rules of matrix multiplication, you will see that this relationship is exactly correct. The matrix equation can be simplified to \( A \cdot x = B \), where \( A \) is the matrix of coefficients, \( x \) is the vector of variables and \( B \) is the matrix of constants.

To solve the matrix equation, you must multiply both sides of the equation by the inverse of \( A \), as follows: \( A^{-1} \cdot A \cdot x = A^{-1} \cdot B = I \cdot x = x = A^{-1} \cdot B \). Thus the solution can be computed by multiplying the inverse of \( A \) by the vector of constants.

You’ve already seen two methods of computing the inverse: using the \( \frac{1}{x} \) key and using Gaussian elimination (the routine used by the HP 48 when you press \( \frac{1}{x} \) to inverse a matrix makes use of advanced matrix decomposition algorithms that are beyond the scope of this book to explain). But there is a third method for inverting a matrix that you should know about: the cofactor matrix. The cofactor matrix of a given square matrix is the square matrix in which each element is replaced by its respective cofactor.

So… what’s a cofactor?

To put it as simply as possible: Each element in a matrix belongs to a particular row \( i \) and a particular column \( j \). That element’s cofactor is \((-1)^{i+j}\) times the determinant of the matrix that remains if you remove row \( i \) and column \( j \).
For example, given $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 3 & 2 \\ 1 & -2 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$, the cofactor of the element in row 2, column 3, is $(-1)^{2+3} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 1 & -2 \end{vmatrix} = 4$. And likewise, if you find the cofactors for every element in $A$, you'll have its complete cofactor matrix: $A^c = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 6 & -7 \\ 6 & -1 & 4 \\ 7 & -4 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$.

As it turns out, the inverse of a matrix $A$ is the transpose of its cofactor matrix, divided by the determinant of $A$. Thus, for the example matrix:

$$A^{-1} = \left( \frac{A^c}{|A|} \right)^T = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 6 & 7 \\ 6 & -1 & -4 \\ -7 & 4 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{2}{17} & \frac{6}{17} & \frac{7}{17} \\ \frac{6}{17} & \frac{-1}{17} & \frac{-4}{17} \\ \frac{-7}{17} & \frac{4}{17} & \frac{-1}{17} \end{bmatrix}$$

Compare this to the result when you use $\sqrt{x}$ to compute the inverse and use $A^*Q$ to rationalize the elements:

\[
\begin{align*}
\{ \{ -(2/17)' \ '6/17' \ '7/17' \} \\
\{ \ '6/17' \ -(1/17)' \ -(4/17) \} \\
\{ -(7/17)' \ '4/17' \ -(1/17) \} \}
\end{align*}
\]

The program COFACTR (see page 278) computes the cofactor matrix for a given square matrix. Try an example using it to solve a linear system....
Example: Use COFACTR to help solve

\[
\begin{align*}
x + 2y + z - 6t &= 12 \\
2x + 3y - 2z + t &= 10 \\
-3x - 4y + 3z + 5t &= 3 \\
4x - 3y - z + t &= 6
\end{align*}
\]

1. The augmented matrix:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 2 & 1 & 6 \\
2 & 3 & -2 & 1 \\
-3 & -4 & 3 & 5 \\
4 & -3 & -1 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

2. Extract the column of constants from the matrix (column 5):

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
6 \\
10 \\
3 \\
6
\end{bmatrix}
\]

3. The column of constants will be used later; swap it to level 2: SWAP.

Then with the matrix of coefficients on level 1, make a copy and execute the COFACTR program to create the cofactor matrix:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
59 & 39 & 116 & -3 \\
73 & 85 & 93 & 56 \\
46 & 35 & 118 & 39 \\
51 & -26 & 13 & 2
\end{bmatrix}
\]

4. Transpose the cofactor matrix:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
59 & 73 & 46 & 51 \\
39 & 85 & 35 & -26 \\
116 & 93 & 118 & 13 \\
-3 & 56 & 39 & 2
\end{bmatrix}
\]

5. Grab the matrix of coefficients now sitting on level 2 and find its determinant:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 2 & 1 & 6 \\
2 & 3 & -2 & 1 \\
-3 & -4 & 3 & 5 \\
4 & -3 & -1 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Result: 271

6. Divide the transposed cofactor matrix by the determinant, make a copy and rationalize the result:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
'59/271' '73/271' '46/271' '51/271' \\
'39/271' '85/271' '35/271' '-(26/271)' \\
'116/271' '93/271' '118/271' '13/271' \\
'-(3/271)' '56/271' '39/271' '2/271'
\end{bmatrix}
\]

This is the inverse matrix of A.

7. Drop the rationalized version, then multiply the inverse matrix by the matrix of constants extracted in step 2. You must swap first to put the matrices in the proper order (\(A^{-1} \cdot B = x\)): \(\text{SWAP} \times\).

Result:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
6.9446 & 4.6753 & 10.1624 & 2.4096
\end{bmatrix}
\]

So, \(x = 6.9446; y = 4.6753; z = 10.1624;\) and \(t = 2.4096\).
Finally, here are some examples to illustrate the built-in routine for solving linear systems, which uses matrix inversion to solve the matrix equation: \( A \cdot \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{B} \).

\[
\begin{align*}
&x + 2y + z - 6t = 12 \\
&2x + 3y - 2z + t = 10 \\
&-3x - 4y + 3z + 5t = 3 \\
&4x - 3y - z + t = 6
\end{align*}
\]

**Example:** Solve this linear system using the stack:

1. Enter the array of constants (\( \mathbf{B} \)):\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 3 & 6
\end{bmatrix}
\]

2. Enter the matrix of coefficients (\( \mathbf{A} \)):\[
\begin{align*}
&\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 3 & 6 \\
2 & 3 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 3 \\
-3 & -4 & 3 & 5 & 0 & 1 \\
4 & -3 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix} \\
&\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 2 & 1 & -6 & 2 \ldots \\
12 & 10 & 3 & 6 & 1 \ldots \\
6.9446 & 4.6723 & 16.1624 & 2.4096 & \ldots
\end{bmatrix}
\end{align*}
\]

3. Divide the two arrays: \( \div \). This performs the \( \text{INV} \)erse operation (as in \( 1/x \)) on the level 1 matrix and multiplies the result by the level 2 array. Result: \[
\begin{bmatrix}
6.9446 & 4.6723 & 16.1624 & 2.4096
\end{bmatrix}
\]

**Example:** Use the **SOLVE SYSTEM** application to compute the solution to the same system as in the previous example.

1. Open the **SOLVE SYSTEM** application: \( \text{SOLVE} \) Application.
2. Enter the coefficients matrix in the \( \mathbf{A} \): field (same as step 2 above).
3. Enter the constants array in the \( \mathbf{B} \): field (same as step 1 above).
4. Highlight the \( \mathbf{X} \): field, and \( \text{SOLVE} \).
5. Press \( \text{EDIT} \), then \( \text{EDIT} \) as needed to clarify the results. Use \( \text{CANCEL} \) to see the stack and the result array, labeled **Solutions**.
Symbolic Solutions of Linear Systems

All of the built-in matrix operations, solving commands, and programs discussed so far in this chapter require that you use numeric arrays; algebraic objects are not allowed in such solutions on the HP 48.

However, you can extend the principles of the matrix operations and commands to “symbolic” matrices by devising a method to represent symbolic matrices on the HP 48. One common method for doing this is the “list-of-lists” notation.

For example, the linear system

\[\begin{align*}
ax + by + c &= d \\
ex + fy + gz &= h \\
jx + ky + lz &= m
\end{align*}\]

\[\begin{align*}
\begin{bmatrix}
a & b & c & d \\
e & f & g & h \\
j & k & l & m
\end{bmatrix}
\end{align*}\]

can be represented (in augmented form) as:

\[\begin{align*}
\begin{bmatrix}
a & b & c \\
| & | & | \\
e & f & g \\
| & | & | \\
j & k & l \\
| & | & | \\
h & m
\end{bmatrix}
\end{align*}\]

Using the same underlying mathematical principles as the numeric procedures, a set of programs has been designed to work with the “list of lists” form of symbolic matrices, performing essential matrix operations discussed in this chapter: matrix arithmetic, transposition, inversion, finding determinants, and solving systems of linear equations.* Like the other programs referred to in this book, these programs are listed in alphabetically order in the appendix at the end of the book.

---

*Some of the programs in this set—SDET, SMULT, STRN, SM+, →SM, SCOF, SMADD, SMSMUL, and SMSUB—were adapted from the set of programs developed by Bill Wickes in his book, *HP 48 Insights, Part I: Principles and Programming* and are used here with his permission.
Here is a summary of the symbolic matrix programs* and how they work (along with the page numbers where they are listed in the Appendix):

**Symbolic Matrix Arithmetic**

SMADD  Sums two symbolic matrices of equal dimensions (page 305).

SMSUB  Subtracts one symbolic matrix from another (page 307).

SMSMULT Multiplies a scalar (which may also be symbolic) by a symbolic matrix (page 306).

SMMULT Multiplies two symbolic matrices provided that they are dimensionally compatible (page 305).

**Symbolic Matrix Operations**

SM→ Disassembles a symbolic matrix onto the stack, with each element occupying its own stack level. The number of columns in the matrix is returned to level 2, and the number of rows is returned to level 1. This program is analogous to the built-in OBJ→ command for numeric arrays (page 304).

→SM Assembles a symbolic matrix from its elements on the stack. Level 2 should have the number of columns in the new matrix and level 1 should have the number of rows. This is analogous to the built-in →ARRAY command for numeric arrays (page 305).

STRN Transposes a symbolic matrix (page 313).

SDET Finds the determinant of a square symbolic matrix (page 302).

SCOF Finds the cofactor for an element in row r (level 2), column c (level 1) of a square symbolic matrix (level 3) (page 301).

SRSWP Swaps two rows of a symbolic matrix (page 312).

SRCI Multiplies a row of a symbolic matrix by a constant (which may be symbolic). Analogous to Rc for numeric matrices (page 312).

*Note that you may enter a numeric matrix as a symbolic matrix if you want to perform operations in combination with a truly symbolic matrix.
SRIJ Multiplies a row of a symbolic matrix by a constant (which may also be symbolic) and adds the product to a second row. Analogous to RCIJ for numeric matrices (page 312).

SXROW Extracts a designated row from a symbolic matrix, leaving it on level and the diminished matrix on level 2. Analogous to ROW⁻ for numeric matrices (page 313).

SNROW Inserts a row list or symbolic matrix into a symbolic matrix beginning in the designated position. Analogous to ROW+ for numeric matrices (page 307).

SCSWP Swaps two columns of a symbolic matrix (page 302).

SXCOL Extracts a designated column from a symbolic matrix, leaving it as a row list on level 1, and the diminished matrix on level 2. Analogous to COL⁻ for numeric matrices (page 313).

SNCOL Inserts a row list representing a column of elements or a symbolic matrix into a symbolic matrix beginning in the designated position. Analogous to COL+ for numeric matrices (page 307).

Symbolic Linear Solutions

SCRAMER Given an augmented symbolic matrix representing a linear system, returns a list of solutions computed using Cramer’s Rule. Analogous to CRAMER for numeric matrices. Uses SDET, SCOF, and SMMULT (page 302).

SCFACTR Computes the symbolic cofactor matrix for a square symbolic matrix. Analogous to COFACTR for numeric matrices. Uses SDET and SCOF (page 301).

SMINV Finds the inverse of a square symbolic matrix, using the cofactor matrix algorithm. Uses SCFACTR (page 305).

SMSOLV Solves a linear system represented by an augmented symbolic matrix, using the cofactor matrix algorithm. Uses SMINV and SMMULT (page 306).
Over- and Under-Determined Systems

All of the examples and techniques shown so far in the chapter have used \textit{exactly-determined} systems of linear equations—systems with equal numbers of independent equations and independent variables. But you may run across systems where this is not the case.

The HP 48 provides a special command for handling situations, where attempts fail to recast the linear system as exactly determined. The command \texttt{LSQ} finds the \textit{closest} solution—the one which results in the smallest least-squares error. Or, if \texttt{LSQ} finds more than one equivalent solution, it returns that with the smallest Euclidean norm (the array’s “absolute value”). Look at two cases—one over-determined system and one under-determined system (these examples apply only to numeric matrices; there is no symbolic equivalent provided in this book):

\begin{align*}
    x + 2y - 3z &= 34 \\
    -3x + y + 5z &= 21 \\
    4x - y + 2z &= 20 \\
    -x - 4y + 7z &= 15
\end{align*}

\textbf{Example:} Find the \textit{best} solution to this system:

1. Enter the vector of constants: \texttt{[1 3 4 SPC 2 1 SPC 2 0 SPC 1 5 ENTER].}
2. Enter the matrix of coefficients: \texttt{[\textup{MATRIX} 1 ENTER 2 ENTER 3 +/\ ENTER 3 +/\ ENTER 1 ENTER 5 ENTER 4 ENTER 1 +/\ ENTER 2 ENTER 1 +/\ ENTER 4 +/\ ENTER 7 ENTER ENTER].}
3. Solve the over-determined system: \texttt{[MTH MATA LSC].}

Result (to 4 places): \texttt{[5.4725 9.1617 6.0350]}

\textbf{Example:} Find the best solution for this linear system:

\begin{align*}
    x + 2y - 3z &= 34 \\
    -3x + y + 5z &= 21
\end{align*}

1. Enter the vector of constants: \texttt{[1 3 4 SPC 2 1 ENTER].}
2. Enter the matrix of coefficients: \texttt{[\textup{MATRIX} 1 ENTER 2 ENTER 3 +/\ ENTER 3 +/\ ENTER 1 ENTER 5 ENTER 4 ENTER ENTER].}
3. Solve the under-determined system: \texttt{[MTH MATA LSC].}

Result: \texttt{[-4.2222 16.6239 -1.6581]}

160

\textbf{5. SYSTEMS OF LINEAR EQUATIONS}
Systems of Linear Inequalities

Systems of linear inequalities differ from systems of linear equations primarily in the nature of their solution sets. Exactly-determined systems result in a unique solution—in essence, a point. But a system of inequalities gives a solution space—an infinite number of points, where every point satisfies all of the inequalities in the system. Such systems are not said to be either over- or under-determined; the ratio of equations to variables is unimportant.

For systems in two variables, plotting is a good means of determining the solution space. The program, INPLOT (see page 284), by Jim Donnelly, does this.*

\[
\begin{align*}
Y & \geq 2X - 1 \\
Y & \leq -2X - 2 \\
Y & \leq 3X + 2 \\
Y & \geq -2
\end{align*}
\]

**Example:** Plot this set of linear inequalities:

1. Open the PLOT application; set the TYPE: field to Function.
2. Highlight the EQ: field; enter the inequalities in a list: 
   \[
   \{ (”Y”) \}
   \[
   \}
   \]
   \[
   \}
   \]
   \[
   \}
   \]
3. Set the plot parameters—INDEP: to \(X\), H-VIEW to \(-2 \quad 2\) and V-VIEW to \(-3 \quad 3\). Save the settings and exit to the stack: \(\text{NXT} \quad \text{OK}\).
4. Plot the system using the INPLOT program: \(\alpha \alpha \text{INPLOT ENTER}\) or \(\text{VAR}\) (then \(\text{NXT}\) or \(\text{PREV}\) as needed) \text{INPLOT}.

*Note that INPLOT requires that you use \(X\) and \(Y\) (uppercase) as the independent and dependent variables.**

**Plotting a system of inequalities is relatively slow because each column of pixels must be tested against the values of the each of the functions. The line of pixels along the top shows you the progress of the plotting.

Systems of Linear Inequalities 161
Linear Programming

How do you solve a system of linear inequalities involving more than two independent variables, when it isn’t possible to plot the solution?

To be sure, there is no easy approach. However, most of the real-world applications for solving such systems of linear inequalities are found in the context of finding the optimum solution within a possible solution space. In these cases, you are not interested in the entire solution space (or even in defining it), but in determining the one solution within the universe of possible solutions that optimizes a particular function. Such problems are the realm of linear programming.

A linear programming problem consists of:

- An **objective function** that must be optimized—maximized or minimized.
- A set of **constraints**—linear inequalities that define the possible solution space for the problem.

Solving a linear programming problem requires that you find a means to “graph” the set of constraints. If there are only two independent variables in the system, the “graph” is a two-dimensional polygon and can be actually drawn on a piece of paper or on the HP 48 screen. If there are three independent variables, the “graph” is a three-dimensional polyhedron and might be sculpted as a model or be represented in 3D-rendering on a flat surface. However, the “graph” of a system containing four or more variables cannot be created in any physical way within the three dimensions of our existence. So how can you solve a linear programming problem with four or more variables?

Problems in four or more dimensions can’t be represented physically, only mathematically, via matrices. If a linear programming problem can be represented in terms of matrices, then there is a good chance that it can be solved—even if there are 5, 10, or more variables.

What does the “graph” of the solution space of a system with, say, 7 independent variables “look” like? The solution space of a 3-variable solution is a 3-dimensional polyhedron, but the mathematical term for a higher-dimensional analogue of a polyhedron is *simplex*. Thus, the solution space of a 7-variable system is a 7-dimensional simplex.
Recall that to graph any inequality, you must actually graph the corresponding equality (a line) and then decide on which “side” of the line the solution space lies. Similarly, the “edges” of any solution space for a system of linear inequalities—be it a polygon, polyhedron, or simplex—are the inequalities of the linear system after they are converted into equalities. These solution spaces all have vertices, which are the intersection points of two or more “edges” (i.e. inequalities converted into equations).

Now, one of central theorems of linear programming is that the optimal solution, if it exists, will always occurs at a vertex of the solution space that represents the set of constraints for the problem. Therefore, the process of “solving” a linear programming problem is simply the testing of the vertices of a simplex to see which of them—when its coordinates are substituted into the objective function—yields the optimum value (maximum or minimum, depending on the problem).

However, to solve a linear programming problem before the end of the millennium, you must test the vertices in an efficient way; it takes far too long to test every vertex, so you need to test only those vertices that might yield the optimum and ignore those that don’t stand a chance. (And obviously, this need for efficiency increases rapidly as the number of variables—the number of dimensions in the simplex—increases).

The Simplex Method is a matrix-based algorithm that explores the vertices of the solution simplex in an very efficient way. It starts with any vertex and then finds another vertex that improves the objective function, and repeats the procedure until there are no more improvements. It almost always finds the optimal vertex after just a few iterations—no more than the number of inequalities or the number of independent variables, whichever is larger.
The HP 48 can be programmed to use the Simplex method. The examples which follow use a collection of four programs:

- **LINPRG** (see page 286) is the master controlling program, collecting a description of the linear programming problem, converting it to the array form—the tableau—needed by the 2-phase Simplex algorithm, calling **PHASE1** and **SIMPLEX** as needed to solve the problem, and finally reporting the results.

- **PHASE1** (see page 292) adjusts the given tableau so that it is in canonical maximum form, suitable for the main **SIMPLEX** algorithm to search for an optimum solution.

- **SIMPLEX** (see page 303) applies the Simplex algorithm to the given tableau, using a specified objective function.

- **PIVOT** (see page 294), called by both **PHASE1** and **SIMPLEX**, performs a single pivot operation on the given tableau using a specified pivot row and pivot column.

Although **PHASE1**, **SIMPLEX**, and **PIVOT** are primarily designed for use with **LINPRG**, you may also use them independently if you want to examine the process more closely.*

Look at some examples using **LINPRG**. Be sure that all four programs are correctly entered in your current path before trying these examples.

---

*SIMPLEX takes as inputs: the number of constraints (level 6), the number of decision variables (level 5), a list of the indexes for the variables in the current solution—*basis variables* (level 4), a list of the indexes for the variables not in the current solution—*non-basis variables* (level 3), an array representing the current Tucker tableau (level 2), and either the value 2, if the tableau is non-canonical, or 1 if canonical (level 1). Note that the order of the index lists on levels 2 and 3 must correspond to the ordering of elements in the Tucker tableau and that the index, 0, is used for any artificial variables in the tableau. **PHASE1** takes the same inputs and in the same order as **SIMPLEX** with the exception of the final input (level 1 for **SIMPLEX**). **PIVOT** takes the same five inputs as **PHASE1**, in the same order, moving them to levels 7 through 3, and additionally takes the pivot row (level 2) and the pivot column (level 1). **SIMPLEX** and **PIVOT** return the number of constraints to level 5, the number of decision variables to level 4, a revised list of the indexes for the basis variables to level 3, a revised list of the indexes for the non-basis variables to level 2, and a revised Tucker tableau to level 1. **PHASE1** does not return anything to the stack, but (as **SIMPLEX** and **PIVOT** do as well) returns the revised list of basis indexes to the variable bvars, the revised list of non-basis indexes to the variable nvars, and the revised Tucker tableau to the variable a.
Example: An investment manager wants to invest $20,000 each month for a client in the bond market. He has three kinds of bonds (i.e. three different risk categories) that he may consider. The return on each kind varies from month to month, but this month he can get 7% on the safest kind of bond, 8.5% on the riskiest kind of bond he’s allowed to consider, and 8% on the moderately risky kind. He need not invest the entire fund, but he can invest no more than 40% of the amount invested in any one type of bond. Further, he must invest at least $4000 in the safest kind of bond. To maximize the return on his investment, how should he allocate the investment this month?

1. Define the variables. The variables here are the amount invested in each type of bond. Thus, there are three variables: $b_1$, $b_2$, and $b_3$.

2. Find the objective function. This is the function that computes the return on the investment: $0.07b_1 + 0.08b_2 + 0.085b_3$

3. Find the set of constraints. In most real-world LP problems, the most common constraint is that all variables must be nonnegative ($b_1 \geq 0$, $b_2 \geq 0$, and $b_3 \geq 0$). And in fact, the SIMPLEX program assumes that all variables are nonnegative. The other constraints here are:

   \[
   b_1 + b_2 + b_3 \leq 20,000 \\
   b_1 \leq 0.4(b_1 + b_2 + b_3) \\
   b_2 \leq 0.4(b_1 + b_2 + b_3) \\
   b_3 \leq 0.4(b_1 + b_2 + b_3) \\
   b_1 \geq 4000
   \]

However, before you can use the LINPRG program, you must express each of the constraints so that all the variable terms are on the left side of the inequality and the constant is on the right side (the first and last constraints are already in proper form). Rearrange the constraints as necessary to the form needed by LINPRG:

   \[
   b_1 + b_2 + b_3 \leq 20,000 \\
   0.6b_1 - 0.4b_2 - 0.4b_3 \leq 0 \\
   -0.4b_1 + 0.6b_2 - 0.4b_3 \leq 0 \\
   -0.4b_1 - 0.4b_2 + 0.6b_3 \leq 0 \\
   b_1 \geq 4000
   \]
4. Begin **LINPRG** by typing `$\alpha L I N P R G \text{ ENTER}$` or pressing **VAR** (then **NXT** or **PREV** as needed) **LINPR**.

5. Enter the objective function into the **OBJECTIVE** field:

\[ 0.07b_1 + 0.08b_2 + 0.085b_3 = 0 \]

Press `$1 \cdot 0 \cdot 7 \times \alpha \leftarrow B \ 1 + 1 \cdot 0 \cdot 8 \times \alpha \leftarrow B \ 2 + 1 \cdot 0 \cdot 8 \times \alpha \leftarrow B \ 3 = \ 0 \text{ ENTER}$`. Note that the objective function must have a right-hand constant, just like the constraints. If there is no constant in the expression, use zero.

6. Enter the set of constraints as a list:

\[ 1 \cdot 6 \times \alpha \leftarrow B \ 1 - 1 \cdot 4 \times \alpha \leftarrow B \ 2 - 0 \cdot 0 \times \alpha \leftarrow B \ 3 \times \alpha \leftarrow B \ 1 - 1 \cdot 4 \times \alpha \leftarrow B \ 2 + 1 \cdot 6 \times \alpha \leftarrow B \ 3 \text{ ENTER} \]

7. Enter the list of variables, in the same order as they are in the constraints and in the objective function:

\[ \leftarrow 1 \cdot 1 \times \alpha \leftarrow B \ 1 \text{ SPC} \times \alpha \leftarrow B \ 2 \text{ SPC} \times \alpha \leftarrow B \ 3 \text{ ENTER} \]

8. Since you do wish to maximize the objective function, you need not change the entry in the last field. Simply press `$\text{ OK }$` to compute the solution. After a bit, you will see a message box:

**Solution found.** Press `$\text{ OK }$` again.
A list of tagged values for each of the decision variables—the solution—is returned to level 1. Note that small round-off errors will show up in computed values. Choosing to fix the display to an appropriate degree of precision for the solution you're determining (eg. to two places for problems dealing with money) is usually a good idea. Thus, the manager would invest $4000 in bond type 1, $8000 in bond type 2, and $8000 in bond type 3 in order to maximize the return during the month in question.

The objects on levels 2 and 3 are there to help you evaluate the quality of the solution, if you so choose, and can be dropped if you do not so choose. The final tableau is returned to level 2. The list on level 3 contains, in order, the indexes of the variables used in the solution—the basis variables. Because there are three decision variables in this problem—$b_1$, $b_2$, and $b_3$—the smallest three non-zero indexes (1, 2, and 3) refer to them: All three figure in the solution in this case. Indexes higher than the number of decision variables or zero reflect slack and artificial variables created in the process of solving the problem and are not a part of the solution, even if they end up in the basis list.*

Try another example....

*Slack variables are useful sometimes in sensitivity analysis—the process of determining how sensitive the solution you computed is to small changes in the original constraints or objective function. However, this is beyond the scope of this book.
**Example:** A herd of livestock requires weekly at least 450 pounds of protein, 400 pounds of carbohydrates, and 1050 pounds of roughage. A bale of hay has 10 pounds of protein, 10 pounds of carbohydrates, 60 pounds of roughage, and costs $3.80. A sack of oats has 15 pounds of protein, 10 pounds of protein, 25 pounds of roughage, and costs $5.00. A sack of pellets has 10 pounds of protein, 5 pounds of carbohydrates, 55 pounds of roughage, and costs $3.50. A sack of sweet feed has 25 pounds of protein, 20 pounds of carbohydrate, 35 pounds of roughage, and costs $8.00. How would you adequately feed the herd at minimum cost?

1. **Define the variables.** The variables here are the amounts of each food source: bales of hay ($h$), sacks of oats ($o$), sacks of pellets ($p$), and sacks of sweet feed ($s$).

2. **Find the objective function.** The sum of costs of the food:
   
   $$3.80h + 5.00o + 3.50p + 8.00s$$

3. **Find the set of constraints.** The set of constraints incorporate the minimum weekly requirements for the three categories of nutrients: protein, carbohydrates, and roughage:
   
   $$10h + 15o + 10p + 25s \geq 450$$
   $$10h + 10o + 5p + 20s \geq 400$$
   $$60h + 250 + 55p + 35s \geq 1050$$

4. **Enter the LP problem into the LINPRG and compute the solution, if one exists.** Begin LINPRG by typing `@` ENTER or pressing `VAR` (then `NXT` or `PREV` as needed) ENTER.

5. **Enter the objective function in the OBJECTIVE field, including the right-hand constant (0 here):** $3.80h + 5.00o + 3.50p + 8.00s = 0$
   
   Press `3` `8` `H` `5` `O` `3` `5` `P` `8` `S` `= 0` ENTER.

6. **Enter the set of constraints (a list):**

   ```plaintext
   H + 1 5
   O + 1 0
   P + 2 5
   S
   ```

   ```plaintext
   H + 1 0
   O + 5 5
   P + 3 5
   ```

   Press `1` `6` `H` `2` `5` `P` `3` `1` `0` `5` `0` ENTER.
7. Enter the list of variables, in the same order as they are in the constraints and in the objective function: [sPC, P, SPC, a, P, SPC, a, S] (ENTER).

8. Since you wish to minimize the objective function, type "MIN" into the final field: [MIN] (ENTER).


Result (to one decimal place):

3: [ 1.0 4.0 7.0 ]
2: [[ -1.0 -1.5 -0.5 0.4 20.0 ]
   [ 1.0 1.0 0.2 -0.2 10.0 ]
   [ -50.0 -110.0 -23.0 17.0 500.0 ]
   [ -0.8 -1.2 -0.3 -0.1 156.0 ]
   [ 0.0 0.0 -1.0 -1.0 0.0 ]
1: [ h: 20.0 ;o: 0.0 ;p: 0.0 ;s: 10.0 ]

Thus, the minimum cost solution is to buy 20 bales of hay and 10 sacks of sweet feed weekly. (Note, however, that the herd will be eating 500 surplus pounds of roughage a week with this solution—so be prepared for the consequences!)

Try one more example....
Example: Find positive values for the variables $x$, $y$, and $z$ that satisfy

\[
x + 2y + z \leq 16 \\
4x + y + 3z \leq 30 \\
x + 4y + 5z \leq 40
\]

and for which the least of the three values, $x$, $y$ and $z$, is as large as possible.

This kind of problem, called a MaxMin problem, requires a small trick—adding a variable some inequalities to the problem. Note that the minimum of the variables $x$, $y$, and $z$ is the largest value of the objective value, $f$, for which $f \leq x$, $f \leq y$, and $f \leq z$. Thus, you must rewrite the set of constraints to include $f$ as a variable and the three new constraints involving $f$ (see step 3 below).

1. Define the variables. The variables here are $x$, $y$, $z$, and $f$.
2. Find the objective function. The objective function is simply $f$.
3. Find the set of constraints. The set of constraints, after making the MaxMin additions is:

\[
x + 2y + z \leq 16 \\
4x + y + 3z \leq 30 \\
x + 4y + 5z \leq 40 \\
-x + f \leq 0 \\
-y + f \leq 0 \\
-z + f \leq 0
\]

4. Enter the LP problem into the LINPRG and compute the solution, if one exists. Begin LINPRG by typing \textit{VAR L INPRG} \textit{ENTER} or pressing (\textit{VAR} (then \textit{NXT} or \textit{PREV} as needed) LINPRG).

5. Enter the objective function in the OBJECTIVE field, including all variables and the right-hand constant (0 here): $0x + 0y + 0z + f = 0$
Press $0x \leftrightarrow x + 0x \leftrightarrow y + 0x \leftrightarrow z + f \leftrightarrow 0 \leftrightarrow \text{ENTER}$. 

5. Systems of Linear Equations
6. Enter the set of constraints as a list:

\[
\begin{align*}
&y + z \leq 3 \quad 6 \quad 4 \quad x \leq 1 \quad \alpha \leq y \quad Z \quad 3 \quad 1 \quad 6 \quad 4 \quad x \leq x + \alpha \leq y + 3 \quad x \\
&\alpha \leq z \quad \alpha \leq 3 \quad 3 \quad 0 \quad \alpha \leq x + 4 \quad x \leq y \quad + \quad 5 \quad x \leq \\
&z \leq 3 \quad 4 \quad 0 \quad \alpha \leq x + 4 \quad x \leq y \quad \alpha \leq 3 \quad 3 \quad 0 \quad \alpha \\
&\text{+/-} \quad \alpha \leq y + \alpha \leq 3 \quad 0 \quad \alpha \leq y + \alpha \leq 3 \quad 0 \quad \alpha \leq 3 \quad 0 \quad \text{ENTER}.
\end{align*}
\]

7. Enter the list of variables:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{SPC} \alpha \leq X \quad \text{SPC} \alpha \leq Y \quad \text{SPC} \alpha \leq Z \\
\text{SPC} \alpha \leq F \quad \text{ENTER}.
\end{align*}
\]

8. Since you wish to maximize the objective function, leave "MAX" in the final field and press [OK] to compute the solution. After a bit, you will see a message box: Solution found. Now press [OK] once again.

Result (to three decimal places):

\[
\begin{align*}
3: & \{ 1.000 \ 3.000 \ 7.000 \ 4.000 \ 5.000 \ 2.000 \ } \\
2: & \{ [ 0.125 \ 0.375 \ -0.500 \ 0.125 \ 3.750 ] \\
& \quad [ 0.125 \ -0.625 \ 0.500 \ 0.125 \ 3.750 ] \\
& \quad [ 2.750 \ 1.250 \ -4.000 \ -1.250 \ 2.500 ] \\
& \quad [ 0.125 \ 0.375 \ 0.500 \ 0.125 \ 3.750 ] \\
& \quad [ 1.500 \ -0.500 \ -1.000 \ -0.500 \ 1.000 ] \\
& \quad [ -0.875 \ 0.375 \ 0.500 \ 0.125 \ 3.750 ] \\
& \quad [ -0.125 \ -0.375 \ -0.500 \ -0.125 \ -3.750 ] \\
& \quad [ -1.000 \ -1.000 \ 0.000 \ 0.000 \ 0.000 ] \}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
1: & \{ :x: \ 3.750 \ :y: \ 3.750 \ :z: \ 3.750 \\
& \quad :f: \ 3.750 \ }
\end{align*}
\]

It isn't unusual for a solution to a MaxMin problem to yield results in which the solution variable values are identical to one another. The value 3.75 represents the largest possible minimum value for x, y, and z such that the inequalities are satisfied.

Generally, MaxMin formulations are useful when you want to be sure that every decision variable have as large a value as possible, and that the smallest of the values is as large as possible. Their counterpart, MinMax formulations, are useful when you wish to be sure that every decision variable have as small a value as possible, and that the largest of the values is as small as possible.
6. Analytic Geometry
Introduction to Vectors

Analytic geometry is a marriage of algebra and geometry. Geometric concepts such as points, lines, planes, circles and angles are given algebraic descriptions and can thus be analyzed without necessarily portraying them graphically.

Central to this description method is the vector. In geometric terms, a vector is a directed line segment. Since it is a segment, it has a finite length or magnitude—also called its absolute value. And the direction of a vector is denoted by its two endpoints, the initial endpoint first and the terminal endpoint second. For example, the vector from point A to point B might be referred to as \( \vec{AB} \) (whereas the vector from point B to point A is denoted as \( \vec{BA} \)). Or, if you assume implicitly that the initial point is always the origin \((0,0,0)\), then vectors are especially useful to describe points: Every point can be described as a vector of its coordinates.

To illustrate this, use point \((-3,7,2)\). There is a directed line segment—a vector—connecting it to the origin \((0,0,0)\). Its coordinates form a set of instructions about how to get to it starting from the origin: “Move three units in the negative direction along the \(x\)-axis, then seven units in the positive direction of the \(y\)-axis and parallel to it, and finally two units in the positive direction of the \(z\)-axis and parallel to it.” The coordinates provide a more algebraic (and analytic) description of the direction of the vector than does the geometric description, \( \vec{AB} \). Thus, you can describe the point as a vector: \([-3\ 7\ 2]\).

The notation used for vectors is not accidental. They behave algebraically like matrices with one of its dimensions equal to one, so square brackets are used—just as with matrices. Indeed, it is the fact that vectors can make use of the powerful analytic capabilities of matrices that renders them so central to analytic geometry. Algebraically, a matrix is nothing more than a vector of vectors, and each row or each column of a matrix is itself a vector. Accordingly, the HP 48 uses the same delimiters for both matrices and vectors (together called arrays).

Also, note that any vector in three-dimensional space can be treated as the sum of three basis vectors, each running from the origin along one of the coordinate axes. The length of each basis vector is a component of the vector, shown in the vector notation explicitly: The vector \([\ 4\ 9\ -1\ ]\), for example, has an \(x\)-component of 4, a \(y\)-component of 9 and a \(z\)-component of \(-1\).
Vector Operations

The basic vector operations—addition, subtraction, and scalar multiplication—work just like their equivalent matrix operations.

Example: Add the two vectors [4 9 -1] and [3 -1 2].
1. Enter the two vectors onto the stack: \[ \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 9 & -1 \\ 3 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \]
2. Add: \[ \begin{pmatrix} 7 & 8 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \]

Example: Subtract the vector [3 -1 2] from the vector [4 9 -1].
1. Enter the vector [4 9 -1]: \[ \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 9 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \]
2. Enter the vector [3 -1 2]: \[ \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \]
3. Subtract: \[ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 10 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \]

Example: Multiply the vector [4 9 -1] by the scalar 5.3.
1. Enter the vector [4 9 -1]: \[ \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 9 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \]
2. Type in 5.3 and multiply: \[ \begin{pmatrix} 21.2 & 47.7 & -53 \end{pmatrix} \]

"Multiplying" two vectors is not analogous to arithmetic. There are actually two kinds of vector products. The dot product of two vectors is defined when the two vectors have the same number of elements, \( n \). Given two vectors \( r = [r_x \ r_y \ r_z] \) and \( s = [s_x \ s_y \ s_z] \), the dot product, \( r \cdot s \), is defined as \( r_x s_x + r_y s_y + r_z s_z \). The HP 48 has a built-in command to compute the dot product.

Example: Find the dot product of [4 9 -1] and [5 -3 2].
1. Enter the first vector: \[ \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 9 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \]
2. Enter the second vector: \[ \begin{pmatrix} 5 & -3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \]
3. Compute the dot product: \[ \text{\textbf{MTH \ VECTR \ DOT}} \]. Result: \(-9\)
Note how similar the dot product is to what you do when computing a single element in matrix multiplication: the first vector is treated as a “row,” the second as a “column”—and the result is a single number.

By contrast, the cross product of two vectors is a third vector—one perpendicular to both of the other vectors (assuming all three vectors originate at the same point). Given two vectors, \( \mathbf{r} = [r_x, r_y, r_z] \) and \( \mathbf{s} = [s_x, s_y, s_z] \), their cross product, \( \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{s} \), is the vector \( [r_y s_z - r_z s_y, r_z s_x - r_x s_z, r_x s_y - r_y s_x] \).

**Example:** Find the cross product of \([4 \ 9 \ -1]\) and \([5 \ -3 \ 2]\).

1. Enter the first vector: \([-4 \ 9 \ -1] \text{ ENTER}\).
2. Enter the second vector: \([-5 \ -3 \ 2] \text{ ENTER}\).
3. Compute the cross product: \(\text{CROSS}\).

   Result: \([15 \ -13 \ -57]\)

Like matrix multiplication, the order in which you perform the cross product is important. Look at this diagram:

\[ \begin{align*} \mathbf{z}_+ & \quad \mathbf{s} \\ \mathbf{r} & \quad \mathbf{z}_- \end{align*} \]

The point is this: When taking the cross product \( \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{s} \), you will get the \( \mathbf{z}_+ \) vector; when taking the other cross product, \( \mathbf{s} \times \mathbf{r} \), you will get the \( \mathbf{z}_- \) vector.

**Example:** Find the cross product of \([5 \ -3 \ 2]\) with \([4 \ 9 \ -1]\).

1. Enter the first vector: \([-5 \ -3 \ 2] \text{ ENTER}\).
2. Enter the second vector: \([-4 \ 9 \ -1] \text{ ENTER}\).
3. Compute the cross product: \(\text{CROSS}\).

   Result: \([-15 \ 13 \ 57]\)

Note that the result is the negative of the previous result.
Finding Angle and Magnitude of Vectors

A vector has both magnitude (length) and direction. It should therefore be possible to find these parameters easily for a vector entered in standard form.

Example: Find the length of the vector [4 9 -1].

1. Enter the vector onto the stack: Enter [4 9 1] with SPACES and ENTER.
2. Find its length: MTH VECTR ABS. Result: 9.89949493661

Finding the “direction” of a vector is more complicated. To determine an angle or direction, you must first decide the reference direction against which you are measuring the angle. For a vector in three dimensions, you use the three coordinate axes as your three reference directions; the vector forms a different angle with respect to each axis. The three direction angles for a vector can be computed from the vectors components and its length:

\[
\theta_x = \cos^{-1} \frac{v_x}{|V|} \quad \theta_y = \cos^{-1} \frac{v_y}{|V|} \quad \theta_z = \cos^{-1} \frac{v_z}{|V|}
\]

where \(v_x, v_y, \) and \(v_z\) are the vector components of the vector \(V\).

Example: Find the direction angles of the vector [4 9 -1].

1. Assuming that you’re in Degree mode (press \(\text{RAD}\), if necessary) and that the result of the previous example is still sitting on level 1, make two copies of the vector’s magnitude: ENTER ENTER.
2. Compute the x-direction angle: 4 ENTER SWAP \(\sqrt{\text{ACOS}}\).
   Result: 66.1677089381
3. Rotate another copy of the magnitude into level 1 and compute the y-direction angle: \(\text{STACK}\) \(\text{ROT} 9\) ENTER SWAP \(\sqrt{\text{ACOS}}\).
   Result: 24.613597653.
4. Repeat step 3 using the z-component: \(\text{ROT} 1 +/-\) ENTER SWAP \(\sqrt{\text{ACOS}}\). Result: 95.7976363295
The computation of the direction angles for a vector can be easily automated with a short program, which is what \texttt{VDIR} does (see page 317 for listing).

\textbf{Example:} Use \texttt{VDIR} to find the direction angles for the vector \([-5 3 2\).  

1. Put the vector onto the stack: \boxed{\begin{array}{c} \boxed{\boxed{-5}} \\ \boxed{\boxed{3}} \\ \boxed{\boxed{2}} \end{array}} \text{ ENTER.}

2. Execute \texttt{VDIR}: \boxed{\boxed{\text{VAR}(\text{then \texttt{NXT}} \text{ or \texttt{PREV}} \text{ as needed}) \text{ \texttt{VDIR}.}}}

\text{Result: } \{ 144.204240085 \text{ } 60.8784319297 \text{ } 71.0681768192 \} \text{ (in Deg mode).}
Overview of Analytical Geometry Examples

This part of this chapter organizes topics and examples in analytical geometry according to the information you have. For instance, the section titled "Given: Two Points" shows examples of computations you (and your HP 48) can perform if you already know the coordinates of two points. And so on. The examples in this part are organized as follows:

**Given: Two Points**

- Find the distance between them.
- Find the equation of the line they determine.
- Find the midpoint of the line segment they determine.
- Find the coordinate of the point on that line segment that divides it into a given ratio.
- Find the equation of the perpendicular bisector of that line segment.

**Given: Three Points**

- Determine if they are collinear.
- Find the equations of the lines they determine.
- Find the equation of the plane they determine.
- Find the equation of the perpendicular containing one point to the line containing the other two points.
- Find the distance of one point from the line containing the other two points.
- Find the area of the triangle they determine.
- Find the coordinates of the centroid of the triangle they determine.

**Given: A Line or Point-and-Slope**

- Find the desired alternative equation (general, intercept, or parametric) for a line.
Given: A Point and a Line

- Determine if the point is collinear with the line.
- Find the equation of the line perpendicular through a point on the line.
- Find the equation of the line perpendicular through a point not on the line.
- Find equation of the line parallel through a point not on the line.
- Find the distance from the point to the line.
- Find the equation of the plane they determine.
- Find the equation of the plane from a normal and a point in the plane.

Given: Two Lines

- Determine if they are parallel, skew, concurrent, collinear, perpendicular.
- Determine the point of intersection.
- Find the distance between two parallel lines.
- Find the angle formed by their intersection.
- Find the plane they determine.
- Find the plane from its traces (three lines).
- Find the line perpendicular to plane they determine (cross product).

Given: A Point and a Plane

- Find the distance of the point to the plane.
- Find the equation of the plane from a parallel plane and a point in the plane.
- Find the equation of the plane from a perpendicular plane and a point in the plane.

Given: One or Two Planes

- Find the equation of the line of intersection.
- Find the angle between the planes.
- Find the traces of a plane.
Given: Two Points

**Distance Between Points**

The distance between two points, \([x_1, y_1, z_1]\) and \([x_2, y_2, z_2]\), is given by the following formula:

\[
d = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}.
\]

While you can compute the distance by using this formula, note that simply subtracting the vector form of one point from another gives the vector connecting them. Then you only need to find the length (absolute value) of this difference vector to compute the distance between points.

**Example:** Find the distance between the two points, \([2, 4, -6]\) and \([-1, -2, 3]\).

1. Enter the second point (as a vector): \([-1, 2, 3]_{\text{ENTER}}\).
2. Enter the first point likewise: \([2, 4, 6]_{\text{ENTER}}\).
3. Compute the distance between the points: \([-\text{MTH} \text{VECTR ABS}]\).

**Result:** \(11.2249721603\)
**Midpoints**

The coordinates of the midpoint are simply the “average” of the two points. In vector terms, this means you must add the points together and divide by two.

**Example:** Find the midpoint of the line segment between the points \([2 \ 4 \ -6]\) and \([-1 \ -2 \ 3]\).

1. Enter the second point (as a vector): \([\text{1}+/-\text{2}+/-\text{3}]\) ENTER.
2. Enter the first point likewise: \([\text{1} \ \text{2} \ \text{4} \ \text{6}]\) ENTER.
3. Compute the midpoint: \([.2 \ .1 \ -.15]\).

The coordinates of a point \(P_3\) which divides a segment into a given ratio \(m:n\) can be individually computed as follows:

\[
x_3 = \frac{nx_1 + mx_2}{m+n} \quad y_3 = \frac{ny_1 + my_2}{m+n} \quad z_3 = \frac{nz_1 + mz_2}{m+n}
\]

This is a kind of weighted average of the coordinates of the endpoints. Of course, using vectors, you can compute all of the coordinates simultaneously, as the next example demonstrates.

**Example:** Find the coordinates of the point on the line segment between the points \([2 \ 4 \ -6]\) and \([-1 \ -2 \ 3]\) that divides the segment into a 3:2 ratio.

1. Enter the first point: \([\text{2} \ \text{4} \ \text{6}]\) ENTER.
2. Multiply it by the fractional weighting for the first point, \(n/(m+n)\): \(\text{2 ENTER} \ 5 \div \times\).
3. Enter the second point: \([\text{1}+/-\text{2}+/-\text{3}]\) ENTER.
4. Multiply that by the fractional weighting for the second point, \(m/(m+n)\): \(\text{3 ENTER} \ 5 \div \times\).
5. Add the two weighted vectors to find the coordinates of the desired point: \([.2 \ .4 \ -.6]\).

**Given:** Two Points
Lines

You may also find the equations of particular lines associated with the two points:

- The line containing both points. (Note that there are several different forms of equations for a line. See pages 193-195 for examples of converting between different forms.)
- The perpendicular bisector of the line segment linking the two points.

The next few examples illustrate each of these computations.

Example: Find the equation of the line in the xy-plane containing the points [2 4] and [-1 3].

1. Enter the first point: \(\text{2 4 ENTER}\).
2. Enter the second point: \(\text{1 3 ENTER}\).
3. Compute the slope of the line: \(\text{STACK OVER - LIST \(\text{+}\)}\). Result: 1/3.
4. Compute the y-intercept of the line: \(\text{SWAP \(\text{+}\)}\). Result: 3/10.

Thus the equation of the line is \(y = \frac{1}{3}x + \frac{10}{3}\).

Of course, the procedure in the previous example can be easily automated. The program, \(P2\rightarrow L\), listed on page 297, takes the two points in vector form from the stack and returns the slope-intercept form of the equation for the line.

Example: Repeat the previous example using the \(P2\rightarrow L\) program.

1. Enter the first point: \(\text{2 4 ENTER}\).
2. Enter the second point: \(\text{1 3 ENTER}\).
3. Execute \(P2\rightarrow L\): \(\text{2 \(\rightarrow\) L ENTER}\) or \(\text{VAR}\) (then \(\text{NXT}\) or \(\text{PREV}\) as needed). Result: 'y=1/3*x+10/3'.
So far, all the lines you have seen have been limited to the xy-plane; the points used to determine them have had just two coordinates (i.e. the z-coordinate was zero). But lines exist in three-dimensional space. How do you express their equations?

The best method is parametric description—describing in three short equations how each of the three components change with an independent parameter. For example, the following set of equations describes a line in space, parametrically:

\[ x = t + 2, \quad y = 2t - 3, \quad z = 2t + 4 \]

You can tell that this set of equations represents a line because all three are linear in the parameter, \( t \)—i.e. each coordinate changes in a straight line as \( t \) changes.

You can find the parametric form for the equation of a line in space from two points, \([ x_1, y_1, z_1 ]\) and \([ x_2, y_2, z_2 ]\), as follows:

1. Find the vector \([ A B C ]\) of the line segment connecting the two points.
2. Create the parametric equations \( x = At + x_1, \quad y = Bt + y_1, \quad z = Ct + z_1 \).

**Example:** Find the set of parametric equations for the line determined by the points \([ 2, 4, -6 ]\) and \([ -1, -2, 3 ]\).

1. Enter the first point onto the stack and make an extra copy: \( 2 \) \( \text{SPC} \) \( 4 \) \( \text{SPC} \) \( 6 \) \( +/− \) \( \text{ENTER} \) \( \text{ENTER} \).
2. Enter the second point: \( −1 \) \( +/− \) \( \text{SPC} \) \( 2 \) \( +/− \) \( \text{SPC} \) \( 3 \) \( \text{ENTER} \).
3. Find the vector connecting the points: \( \text{ENTER} \) \( \text{ENTER} \). \( \text{Result: } \) \( [ 3 \ 6 \ -9 ] \).
4. Create the parametric equations. You can either assemble equations manually, using the first point and the computed vector; or you can use the program \( \text{PD} \) \( \text{+P} \) (see page 291), which takes a point (in vector form) from level 2 and a vector representing the line from level 1 and assembles the proper parametric equations for the line: \( \text{ENTER} \) \( \text{ENTER} \text{ or } \text{VAR} \) (then \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{PD} \) \( \text{+P} \).

**Result:** \{ 'x=3*t+2' 'y=6*t+4' 'z=-(9*t)-6' \}
Another line that is determined by two points is the perpendicular bisector of the line segment that joins the two points. Because it is perpendicular, it will have a slope that is the negative reciprocal of the slope of the line segment. Because it is the bisector, it contains the midpoint of the line segment. Thus, if the slope of the line segment is \( m \) and the coordinates of the midpoint is \([a \ b]\), then the equation of the perpendicular bisector is \( y = \frac{-x}{m} + \left(\frac{a}{m} + b\right)\).

**Example:** Find the perpendicular bisector for the segment whose endpoints are \([2 \ 4]\) and \([-1 \ 3]\).

1. Enter the first point: \( \left[\begin{array}{c}2 \\ 4\end{array}\right]\) (ENTER).
2. Enter the second point: \( \left[\begin{array}{c}-1 \\ 3\end{array}\right]\) (ENTER).
3. Make copies of these points and find the slope of the perpendicular bisector: \( \text{STACK NXT DUPED SWAP OBJ} \). Result: \(-3\)
4. Compute the coordinates of the midpoint: \( \text{SWAP ROT} +2 \div \). Result: \([0.5 \ 3.5]\)
5. Now find the y-intercept of the perpendicular bisector: \( \text{PRG LIST OBJ} \). Result: \(5\)

Thus the equation of the perpendicular bisector is \( y = -3x + 5 \).

The short program, \( P2 \rightarrow PB \) (see listing on page 297), automates the process of determining the equation of the perpendicular bisector.

**Example:** Repeat the previous example using the \( P2 \rightarrow PB \) program.

1. Enter the first point: \( \left[\begin{array}{c}2 \\ 4\end{array}\right]\) (ENTER).
2. Enter the second point: \( \left[\begin{array}{c}-1 \\ 3\end{array}\right]\) (ENTER).
3. Execute \( P2 \rightarrow PB \): \( \var \ P2 \rightarrow PB \). Result: \( 'y=-(3*x)+5' \)
Finally, here’s how you compute the perpendicular bisector for a line in space.

**Example:** Find the perpendicular bisector of the line segment connecting the points \([2, 4, -6]\) and \([-1, -2, 3]\).

1. Enter the two points: \([1, 2, 4, 6, +/-, \text{ENTER}] [1, 1, +/-, 2, +/-, 3, \text{ENTER}]\).
2. Make copies of the two points, compute the vector connecting them, and find its negative: \([\text{STACK}, \text{NXT}, \text{DUPF}], -+/-.\)

   **Result:** \([-3, -6, 9]\)

   This is the direction vector for the perpendicular bisector.

3. Find the coordinates of the midpoint: \([\text{SWAP}, \text{NXT}, \text{ROT}], +2, -.\)

   **Result:** \([0.5, 1, -1.5]\)

   This is a point on the perpendicular bisector.

4. Assemble the set of parametric equations representing the perpendicular bisector: \([\text{SWAP}, \text{VAR}, \text{PD}].\)

   **Result:** \(\{'x=-(3*t)+1/2', 'y=-(6*t)+1', 'z=9*t-3/2'\}\)

Remember, too, that you can always use this approach to find the parametric equations for points in the \(xy\)-plane, simply by including a zero as the \(z\)-component.

*Given: Two Points*
Given: Three Points

Whenever you have three distinct points, you need to know whether they are collinear (i.e. all contained in a single line). If they are noncollinear, then they determine a plane, a triangle, and three distinct intersecting lines. If they are collinear, the three points determine only a single line.

Example: Determine if the points [4 2 -6], [5 -3 2], [-1 2 3] are collinear.

1. Calculate vectors representing the line segments between any two pairs of points: \( \begin{vmatrix} 4 & 2 & 6 \end{vmatrix} \) and \( \begin{vmatrix} 5 & -3 & 2 \end{vmatrix} \). Result: \( \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 5 & -8 \end{vmatrix} \). Make copies of those vectors: \( \begin{vmatrix} 4 & 2 & 6 \end{vmatrix} \) and \( \begin{vmatrix} 5 & -3 & 2 \end{vmatrix} \). Next, multiply their magnitudes: \( \text{MTH VECTR ABS SWAP ABS} \times \). Result: 97.6729235768

4. Compare that to the absolute value of their dot product: \( \text{DOT ABS} \). Result: 67

The two results differ, so the three points are noncollinear.

The program COLIN? (see page 278) makes it easier to test for collinearity (and is useful in other programs). It tests whether a point (in vector form) on level 1 is collinear with the vector on level 2. If so, it returns a 1; if not, it returns a 0.

Example: Repeat the previous example, using COLIN?.

1. Enter the first two points as a line (in array form): \( \text{MTRX 4 SPC 2 SPC 6} +/\text{ ENTER 5 SPC 3 +/- SPC 2} \). Enter.

2. Enter the third point: \( \begin{vmatrix} 1 & +/- & 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix} \). Enter.

3. Execute the COLIN? test: \( \text{COLIN} \). Result: 0 Noncollinear
Lines and Planes

If three points are noncollinear, they determine three lines. You may find these three lines easily by using the \( P2 \rightarrow L \) program for each combination of points.

**Example:** Find the equations of the three lines determined by the noncollinear points \([4\ 6\ ],\ [-2\ 1\ ]\) and \([5\ -2\ ]\).

1. Enter the first two points and execute \( P2 \rightarrow L \): \([4\ SPC\ 6\ ENTER\ 2\ +/-\ SPC\ 1\ ENTER\ VAR\ P2 \rightarrow L]\).
   
   Result: 'y=5/6*x+8/3'

2. Enter the second and third points and execute \( P2 \rightarrow L \): \([2\ +/-\ SPC\ 1\ ENTER\ 5\ SPC\ 2\ +/-\ ENTER\ VAR\ P2 \rightarrow L]\).
   
   Result: 'y=-(3/7*x)+1/7'

3. Enter the first and third points and execute \( P2 \rightarrow L \): \([4\ SPC\ 6\ ENTER\ 5\ SPC\ 2\ +/-\ ENTER\ VAR\ P2 \rightarrow L]\).
   
   Result: 'y=-(8*x)+38'

Of course, three noncollinear points also determine a unique plane. The general form of the equation for a plane is \( Ax + By + Cz + D = 0 \).

It turns out that the coefficients \( A, B, \) and \( C \) determine the “orientation” of the plane and are equal to components of the vector perpendicular (or normal) to the plane. The \( D \) coefficient identifies the particular plane (from the infinitely large set of parallel planes with the given orientation) determined by the three points.

Thus, to compute the equation of the plane, you must find a line perpendicular to at least two of the lines determined by the points. This is easily accomplished by finding the cross product of two of the vectors representing the line segments determined by the points. Once you have the orientation of the plane, you need only to substitute the coordinates of any one of the points to determine the \( D \) coefficient. This substitution is efficient accomplished using the dot product of the normal vector and the point. The next example illustrates the full procedure....
Example: Find the equation of the plane determined by the three noncollinear points, \([4 \ 2 \ -6], [5 \ -3 \ 2], [-1 \ 2 \ 3]\).

1. Enter the first two points and compute the vector of the line segment connecting them: \((4, 2, -6) + (5, 2, 3) = (9, 4, -3)\).

2. Enter the first and third points and compute the vector of the line segment connecting them: \((4, 2, -6) + (-1, 2, 3) = (3, 4, -3)\).

3. Compute the cross product of the two line segment vectors: 
   \[
   \begin{vmatrix}
   i & j & k \\
   9 & 4 & -3 \\
   3 & 4 & -3 \\
   \end{vmatrix} = (-43, -49, -23)
   \]
   The components of this normal vector are the coefficients \(A, B,\) and \(C\) respectively in the equation for the plane.

4. Enter the first point again and compute the negative of the dot product of the normal vector and the first point (you should get the same result using any of the points): 
   \[
   -45 \times -49 \times -23 = 128
   \]
   This is the coefficient \(D\) in the equation of the plane, so the equation is 
   
   \(-45x - 49y - 23z + 128 = 0\).

A related task is to find the equation of the line containing one of the points that is perpendicular to the line determined by the remaining two points.

Example: Find the equation of a line containing the point \([4 \ 6]\) perpendicular to the line determined by the points \([-1 \ 5]\) and \([3 \ -5]\).

1. Enter the two points of the line: 
   \((-1, 5) + (3, -5) = (2, 0)\).

2. Find the slope of the perpendicular: 
   \[\tan \theta = \frac{-1}{2}\] 
   \[\theta = \tan^{-1}(-\frac{1}{2}) = 1.11\] 
   \[(2, 0) \to (0, 1)\] 
   \[\tan \theta = \frac{1}{2}\] 
   \[\theta = \tan^{-1}(\frac{1}{2}) = 0.47\] 

3. Enter the point on the perpendicular: 
   \((4, 6)\).

4. Find the perpendicular’s \(y\)-intercept: 
   \[4 = 0 \times 0 + b\] 
   \[b = 4\] 
   The equation of the perpendicular through \([4 \ 6]\) is 
   \[y = \frac{2}{5}x + \frac{22}{5}\].
The distance between point \([ r s ]\) and line \(Ax + By + C = 0\), is \(d = \frac{|Ar + Bs + C|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}\).

**Example:** Find the distance from the point \([ 4 6 ]\) to the line determined by the points \([-1 5]\) and \([3 -5]\).

1. Enter the two points of the line: \( \begin{bmatrix} 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 5 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 5 \end{bmatrix} \). 

2. Find the general equation of the line. The quickest method uses the programs \(P2\rightarrow L\) and \(I\rightarrow GEN\) (see page 284): \( \text{VAR} \quad \text{P2\rightarrow L} \quad \text{I\rightarrow GEN} \). 

   Result: \( [ -2.5 -1 2.5 ] \) 

   \( \begin{bmatrix} 1 \end{bmatrix} '5/2-5/2x-y=0' \)

3. Drop the symbolic form of the line, make an extra copy and remove the last element from the vector: \( \begin{bmatrix} 1 \end{bmatrix} \text{COL-} \). 

4. Append a 1 as the third element of the vector of the distant point and enter the result \([4 6 1]\): \( \begin{bmatrix} 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 6 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \end{bmatrix} \). 

5. Now compute the distance: \( \begin{bmatrix} 4 \end{bmatrix} \text{STACK} \quad \text{DOT} \quad \text{ABS} \quad \text{ABS} \quad \begin{bmatrix} 5.01377413078 \end{bmatrix} \). 

The short program \( \text{Dt\rightarrow L} \) (see page 280) takes a point in vector form on level 2 and an array on level 1. The array is a matrix containing the two points that determine a line. The program returns the distance from the point to the line.

**Example:** Repeat the previous example using the \( \text{Dt\rightarrow L} \) program.

1. Enter the distant point \([4 6]\): \( \begin{bmatrix} 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 6 \end{bmatrix} \). 

2. Enter a matrix with the points representing a line: \( \begin{bmatrix} 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 5 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 5 \end{bmatrix} \). 

3. Execute \( \text{Dt\rightarrow L} \): \( \text{VAR} \quad \text{NXT} \quad \text{Dt\rightarrow L} \) or \( \text{VAR} \) (then \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{Dt\rightarrow L} \). 

Result: \( 5.01377413078 \)
Triangles

The other geometric form defined by three points is the triangle. These examples show how to find the perimeter, area, median length and centroid of the triangle.

Example: Find the perimeter of the triangle formed by the three points [4 6], [-1 5], and [3 -5].

1. Enter the first two points and find the length of the segment connecting them: \[\text{Result: } 5.72875 \text{ units}\].
2. Enter the first and third points and find the length of the segment connecting them: \[\text{Result: } 3.60556 \text{ units}\].
3. Enter the second and third points and find the length of the segment connecting them: \[\text{Result: } 3.60556 \text{ units}\].
4. Compute the perimeter: \[\text{Result: } 12.93087 \text{ units}\].

The area of a triangle determined by three points can be found by using the length of cross product of two of the vectors determined by the three points. If \(\mathbf{r}\), \(\mathbf{s}\), and \(\mathbf{t}\) are the three vectors, then the area of the triangle is given by

\[
\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2} |\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{s}| = \frac{1}{2} |\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{t}| = \frac{1}{2} |\mathbf{s} \times \mathbf{t}|.
\]

Note that the direction (or sign) of the cross product doesn’t matter for computing the area of the determined triangle because you are only interested its length.

Example: Find the area of this triangle: [4 6 -2], [-1 5 3], [3 -5 1].

1. Compute a vector formed by the first and second points: \[\text{Result: } 10.77288 \text{ units}\].
2. Compute a vector formed by the first and third points: \[\text{Result: } 10.77288 \text{ units}\].
3. Compute the area: \[\text{Result: } 37.81534 \text{ units}^2\].
A median of a triangle is a line segment connecting a vertex with the midpoint of the opposite side.

**Example:** Find the length of the median of a triangle from the vertex \([4, 6]\) to the midpoint of the segment with endpoints \([-1, 5]\) and \([3, -5]\).

1. Find the midpoint of the side opposite the vertex \([4, 6]\): \([-3/2, 1]\).
2. Enter the vertex endpoint of the median: \([-1/2, 4\text{ spc }6]\).
3. Compute the length of the median: \(1/2\).

Result: \(6.7082039325\)

The centroid of a triangle is the point where the three medians intersect. It divides each median so that the distance from the centroid to the vertex is twice the distance from the centroid to the midpoint of the opposite side. The coordinates of the centroid are the average of the coordinates of the three sides.

**Example:** Find the coordinates of the centroid of the triangle determined by the points \([4, 6]\), \([-1, 5]\), and \([3, -5]\).

1. Enter the points on the stack: \([-1\text{ spc }3\text{ spc }5]\).
2. Compute the coordinates of the centroid: \(2/3\).

Result: \(\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}\)

Given: Three Points
Given: A Line or Point-and-Slope

As you know, with two points, you may determine the equation of the line that contains them. But you can also find the equation of the line if you know just a single point on the line and line’s slope: Given the point \([rs]\) in the \(xy\)-plane and a slope \(m\), the equation of the line (in slope-intercept form) is \(y = mx + (s - mr)\).

**Example:** Find the equation of a line of slope 4, containing the point \([3\ -8]\).

1. Compute the \(y\)-intercept, \(s - mr\): \(8 +/\ - \text{ENTER} \ 4 \text{ ENTER} \ 3 \times \)  \(\text{ENTER}\). 
   **Result:** \(-20\). So the equation in slope-intercept form is \(y = 4x - 20\).

For lines in space, the concept of “slope” becomes “direction vector.” Thus, to find the equation of a line in space, you need to know only a point on the line and its direction vector. The program \(P\rightarrow\text{P}\) (see page 291) does exactly this—takes a point (in vector form) from level 2 and a direction vector from level 1 and computes the set of parametric equations describing the line determined.

**Example:** Find the equation of a line in space containing the point \([3\ -8\ 2]\) whose direction vector is \([2\ -1\ -2]\).

1. Enter the point: \(\text{ENTER} \ 3 \text{ SPCE} 8 +/\ - \text{SPCE} 2 \text{ ENTER}\).
2. Then the direction vector: \(2 +/\ - \text{SPCE} 2 +/\ - \text{ENTER}\).
3. Execute \(P\rightarrow\text{P}\): \(\text{VAR} \ P\rightarrow\text{P}\). 
   **Result:** \(\{x=2*t+3\ \ 'y=-t-8\ \ 'z=-(2*t)+2\ \}\)
There are five important forms of linear equations. Two of them apply only to lines in the $xy$-plane; three apply to any line, including lines in space:

- **Slope-Intercept form** (also known as direction form): $y = mx + b$, where $m$ is the slope and $b$ is the $y$-intercept. This form only applies to lines in the $xy$-plane (there is no $z$-component).

- **General form**: $Ax + By + C = 0$ where, if $C = -AB$, then $A$ is the $y$-intercept and $B$ is the $x$-intercept. This form only applies to lines in the $xy$-plane (there is no $z$-component).

- **Position-Direction form**: $[x_0, y_0, z_0], [a, b, c]$ where $[x_0, y_0, z_0]$ is the position vector representing a point on the line and $[a, b, c]$ is a direction vector for the line. This form is a vector version of the slope-intercept form and can apply to any line.

- **Parametric form**: $x = pt + x_0, y = qt + y_0, z = rt + z_0$, where $[x_0, y_0, z_0]$ is a point on the line and $[p, q, r]$ is a direction vector for the line. This form applies to all lines. For lines in the $xy$-plane, the third equation reduces to $z = 0$. Note that $[x_0 + p, y_0 + q, z_0 + r]$ is a second point on the line.

- **Array form**: $[x_1, y_1, z_1, x_2, y_2, z_2]$ where $[x_1, y_1, z_1]$ and $[x_2, y_2, z_2]$ are points on the line. This form applies to all lines. For lines in the $xy$-plane, the array only has two columns (there is no $z$-column). The array form can be generalized to represent any arbitrary collection of points—very useful for performing transformations (as you will see later in this chapter).

Depending on circumstances, one of these forms will be more convenient to find than the others. However, you may find instances when you need to convert from one form to another. Some small programs make these conversions easier:

- **PAR<>I** (see page 290) converts a set of parametric equations to an equation in slope-intercept form (but only possible for lines in the $xy$-plane).

- **P<>PD** (see page 295) converts a set of parametric equations to a point (in vector form) and a direction vector (position-direction form).

- **G<>A** (see page 282) converts an equation in general form to an array.

- **I<>GEN** (see page 284) converts an equation in slope-intercept form to an equation in general form.
Example: Convert these to slope-intercept form: \( x = 3t - 4, \ y = -2t + 5 \)

1. Enter the set of parametric equations as a list: \( \left[ 3 \times x \leftarrow t - 4 \right], \ y \leftarrow 2 + \left[ - x \right] \times \left[ t + 5 \right] \) (ENTER). Note that the parameter must always be \( t \) (lower-case), and the other variables \( x \) and \( y \).

2. Execute \( \text{PAR} \Rightarrow I \): \( \left[ \begin{array}{l} \alpha \leftarrow \text{PAR} \Rightarrow I \end{array} \right] \) (ENTER) or \( \text{VAR} \) (then \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{PAR} \Rightarrow I \). Result: \( y = 7/3 - 2/3 \times x \)

Example: Convert the line, \( 3x - 2y + 5 = 0 \), to a set of parametric equations.

1. Enter the line (which is in general form): \( \left[ 3 \times \alpha \leftarrow x \right], \ y \leftarrow 2 \times \alpha \leftarrow 0 \leftarrow 5 \) (ENTER).

2. Convert it to an array: \( \text{VAR} \Rightarrow \text{MAT} \). Result: \( \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 2 & 5.5 \end{bmatrix} \)

3. Now disassemble the array into its two point vectors: \( \text{MTH} \Rightarrow \text{MAT} \Rightarrow \text{ROW} \Rightarrow \text{ROW} \). Result: \( \begin{bmatrix} x & 1 + t \\ y & 3/2 \times t + 4 \end{bmatrix} \)

Example: Convert the following set of parametric equations to a line in array form: \( x = 3t - 4, \ y = -2t + 5, \ z = t + 3 \).

1. Enter the equations: \( \left[ 3 \times \alpha \leftarrow x \right], \ y \leftarrow 2 + \left[ - x \right] \times \left[ t + 5 \right] \)

2. Convert it to a point and a direction vector: \( \text{VAR} \Rightarrow \text{PD} \Rightarrow \text{PD} \). Result: \( \begin{bmatrix} x & t + 1 \\ y & 3/2 \times t + 4 \end{bmatrix} \)

3. Make a copy of the point and add it to the vector to form a second point: \( \left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{STACK} \Rightarrow \text{OVER} \Rightarrow + \end{array} \right] \)

4. Now assemble the two points into a matrix: \( \text{MTH} \Rightarrow \text{MAT} \Rightarrow \text{ROW} \Rightarrow \text{ROW} \Rightarrow \text{ROW} \). Result: \( \begin{bmatrix} -4 & 5 & 3 \\ -1 & 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \)
Example: Convert the following set of parametric equations to the general form: \( x = -5t + 2, y = 3t + 1 \).

1. Enter the parametric equations: \( \begin{cases} x = -5t + 2 \\ y = 3t + 1 \end{cases} \)-vars-par→1.
   Result: \( y = 11/5 - 3/5x \).

2. Convert to the slope-intercept form: \( \text{VAR PAR→I} \).
   Result: \( y = 11/5 - 3/5x - y = 0 \).

3. Convert to the general form: \( \text{VAR GE} \).
   Result: \( 2: \begin{bmatrix} -0.6 & -1 & 2.2 \end{bmatrix} \)
   \( 1: '11/5 - 3/5x - y = 0' \).

Example: Convert the array \( \begin{bmatrix} -4 & 3 \\ 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \) to a line in general form.

1. Enter the array: \( \begin{bmatrix} 1 \rightarrow \text{MATRIX} 4 \rightarrow \text{ENTER} 3 \rightarrow \text{ENTER} 1 \rightarrow \text{ENTER} 2 \rightarrow \text{ENTER} \rightarrow \text{ENTER} \end{bmatrix} \).
2. Now disassemble the array into its component points: \( \text{MTH MTR ROW ROW} \).
3. Compute the slope-intercept form: \( \text{VAR P2→L} \).
4. Convert the slope-intercept form to general form: \( \text{VAR GE} \).
   Result: \( 2: \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \)
   \( 1: '1 - x - y = 0' \).

Example: Convert the line, \( y = 4x - 6 \), to array form.

1. Enter the line (in slope-intercept form): \( \begin{bmatrix} 1 \rightarrow \text{X} \rightarrow \text{Y} \rightarrow = 4 \times \alpha \rightarrow \text{ENTER} \).
2. Convert the line to general form: \( \text{VAR GE} \text{ SWAP} \).
3. Convert to an array: \( \text{G→A} \). Result: \( \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \).
Given: A Point and a Line

The procedures for using a point and a line are very similar to those for using three points. After all, once you find the line determined by two of the three points, the conditions for the two situations are identical. However, there are some practical differences that arise, depending on the form which the linear equation takes. The examples below illustrate this.

Example: Is the point \([4, -1]\) collinear with the line \(-2x + y - 4 = 0\)?

1. Enter the equation of the line:
   \[
   \begin{array}{l}
   2 \times x + \alpha \times x + \alpha \times y - 4 = 0 \\
   \text{ENTER.}
   \end{array}
   \]

2. Next, convert that equation to a direction vector:
   \[
   \begin{array}{l}
   \text{VAR} \text{MATR} \text{ROW} \times \text{ROW} \text{ ENTER.} \\
   \text{Result: } [-1 \ 2] \\
   \end{array}
   \]

3. Enter the point:
   \[
   \begin{array}{l}
   \text{VAR} \text{COLIN} \text{ ENTER.} \\
   \text{Result: } 0. \text{ The point and line are noncollinear.}
   \end{array}
   \]

Example: Find the equation of the plane (in general form) determined by the point \([4, -1, 2]\) and the line \(x = 3t - 2, y = -2t + 5, z = t - 3\).

1. Enter the list of parametric equations:
   \[
   \begin{array}{l}
   \text{VAR} \text{P} \times \text{D} \text{ ENTER.} \]

2. Find the direction vector for the line:
   \[
   \begin{array}{l}
   \text{VAR} \text{P} \times \text{D} \text{ ENTER.} \\
   \text{Result: } [-1 \ -7 \ -11] \\
   \end{array}
   \]

3. Compute the set of coefficients \([A \ B \ C]\) for the equation of the plane:
   \[
   \begin{array}{l}
   \text{STACK} \text{OVER} \text{ MTH} \text{VECTRA CROSS} \text{ ENTER.} \\
   \text{Result: } [-1 \ -7 \ -11] \\
   \end{array}
   \]

4. Enter the point and compute the \(D\) coefficient:
   \[
   \begin{array}{l}
   \text{VAR} \text{P} \times \text{D} \text{ ENTER} \text{ OUT} \text{ ENTER} \text{ +/-} \text{ ENTER.} \\
   \text{Result: } 19 \\
   \text{Thus the equation for the plane is } -x - 7y - 11z + 19 = 0.
   \end{array}
   \]
Example: Find the set of parametric equations of the perpendicular to the line 
\( x = 3t - 2, \ y = -2t + 5, \ z = t - 3 \), that contains the point \([ 4 \ -1 \ 2 ]\).

1. Enter the list of parametric equations:
   \[ \begin{align*}
   \alpha & \leftarrow T - 2 \\
   \beta & \leftarrow 2 + - \times \alpha \leftarrow T + 5 \\
   \gamma & \leftarrow 3 \times \alpha \leftarrow T - 3 \end{align*} \]

2. Convert to a point and direction vector for the line: \( \operatorname{VAR} \ P \rightarrow \mathbf{PD} \).

3. Find the direction vector for the perpendicular: \( \begin{align*}
   \operatorname{STACK} \ \operatorname{OVER} \\
   \operatorname{MTH} \ \operatorname{VECTRA} \ \operatorname{CROSS} \end{align*} \). Result: \([ -1 \ -7 \ -11 ]\)

4. Enter the point and find the set of parametric equations for the perpendicular:
   \( \begin{align*}
   \operatorname{VAR} \ P \rightarrow \mathbf{PD} \ \operatorname{PD} \rightarrow \mathbf{P} \end{align*} \). Result:
   \( \{ 'x=-t+4' \ 'y=-(7t)-1' \ 'z=-(11t)+2' \} \)

Two parallel lines, given in point-direction vector form, will have equal direction vectors but different sets of points; the points of one of the lines are noncollinear with the points of the other. If they were collinear, the two lines would then be \textit{concurrent}—essentially the same line. It is relatively easy to find the equation of a line parallel to a given line, through a given point not on that line.

Example: Find the equation of the line parallel to the line \( x = 3t - 2, \ y = -2t + 5, \ z = t - 3 \), that contains the point \([ 4 \ -1 \ 2 ]\).

1. Enter the list of parametric equations:
   \[ \begin{align*}
   \alpha & \leftarrow T - 2 \\
   \beta & \leftarrow 2 + - \times \alpha \leftarrow T + 5 \\
   \gamma & \leftarrow 3 \times \alpha \leftarrow T - 3 \end{align*} \]

2. Convert to point-direction vector form: \( \operatorname{VAR} \ P \rightarrow \mathbf{PD} \).

3. Replace the point vector for the given line with the given point:
   \( \operatorname{VAR} \ \operatorname{PD} \rightarrow \mathbf{P} \). Result:
   \( \{ 'x=3t+4' \ 'y=-(2t)-1' \ 'z=t+2' \} \)

\textit{Given: A Point and a Line}
Finding the distance between a point in space and a line is a bit tricky, because it would seem that you must compute the point of intersection between the given line and the perpendicular containing the given point. However, recall that the given point and any two points on the given line form a triangle.

The area of the triangle is \( A = \frac{1}{2}bh \) where \( b \) is the length of the base and \( h \) is the length of the height. If you choose the base of the triangle to run along the given line, then the height is the distance between the given point and the given line. Thus, since you can use the cross product to find the area of a triangle in space, and you can choose any base points and compute the distance between them, you can find the height without computing any coordinates of intersection points.

**Example:** Find the distance from the point \([-5 \ 2 \ 1]\) to the line defined by \( x = 3t - 2, \ y = -2t + 5, \ z = t - 3 \).

1. Enter the list of parametric equations: 
   \[
   \left[ \begin{array}{c}
   x \ \alpha \\
   y \ \alpha \\
   z \ \alpha \\
   \end{array} \right] = \left[ \begin{array}{c}
   3 \ \alpha \\
   -2 \ \alpha \\
   1 \ \alpha \\
   \end{array} \right] \left[ \begin{array}{c}
   -2 \\
   2 \\
   3 \\
   \end{array} \right] \text{ ENTER}.
   \]

2. Convert to a point and direction vector for the line, then make an extra copy of the direction vector: \( \text{VAR P+PV} \text{ ENTER} \).

3. Rotate the point into level 1, enter the given point (the one not on the given line), and compute the vector between these two points:
   \[
   \left[ \begin{array}{c}
   \text{STACK} \\
   \text{ROT} \\
   \text{15} \\
   \text{SPC} \\
   \text{SPC} \\
   \text{1} \\
   \text{ENTER} \end{array} \right] 
   \]
   Result: \([-3 \ -3 \ -4]\)

4. Find the area of the triangle: \( \text{MTH VECTOR CROSS ABS} \text{ ENTER} \).

5. Find the height of the triangle, and thus the distance from the given point to the given line: \( 2 \times \text{SWAP ABS} \text{ ENTER} \).
   Result: \(5.82482372589\)
The program, $\text{DtOL}$, first discussed on page 189, can be used to automate the procedure of finding the distance between a point and a line. The following shows how the previous example should be modified in order to use $\text{DtOL}$.

**Example:** Repeat the previous example using the program, $\text{DtOL}$.

1. Enter the point in space: $\text{S}5+/-\text{SPC 2 SPC 1 ENTER}$.
2. Enter the list of parametric equations: $\text{S}3x\leftarrow t-2\text{SPC 1}\alpha\leftarrow z\leftarrow t-3\text{ENTER}$.
3. Convert to a point and direction vector for the line: $\text{VAR P+PD}$.
4. Find the array for the line: $\text{STACK OVER + 2 MTH MATR ROW ROW}$.
5. Find the distance from the point to the line with $\text{DtOL}$: $\text{VAR DTOL}$.

**Result:** $5.82482372511$

**Example:** Find the distance from the origin to the line $-2x + y - 4 = 0$.

1. Enter the point of the origin [0 0]: $\text{S}0\text{SPC 0 ENTER}$.
2. Enter the equation of the line: $\text{S}2+/-\alpha\leftarrow x\leftarrow y\leftarrow -4\text{SPC 0 ENTER}$.
3. Convert the line to array form: $\text{VAR G+R}$.
4. Execute $\text{DtOL}$: $\text{DTOL}$. Result: $1.788854382$

*Given: A Point and a Line*
Given: Two Lines

Two lines, if restricted to the xy-plane, are either **concurrent** (i.e. they are the same line), **parallel**, or **intersecting with** respect to one another. If the two lines are not restricted in space, they may also be **skew** with respect to one another—that is, they neither intersect nor are parallel.

Before working with a pair of lines, it is important to establish their relationship with one another. The program **LIMZ™** (see page 288) takes equations of the two lines, in array form, and returns an object indicating their relationship on level 2 and a test result on level 1: 0 if the lines don’t intersect and 1 if they do. If the lines intersect, then the object returned on level 2 is a vector containing the coordinates of the point of intersection. If the lines do not intersect, then the object on level 2 is a string indicating the relationship (parallel, skew, or concurrent).

**Example:** Determine the relationship of the following two lines, \(4x - 3y + 1 = 0\) and \(-2x + 5y + 2 = 0\).

1. Enter the first line and convert to an array: \[4\ X\ (\alpha\leftarrow\ X\ (\alpha\leftarrow\ (-3\ X\ \alpha\leftarrow\ Y\ +\ 1\ \leftarrow\ =\ 0)\ \text{ENTER}\ \text{VAR}\ \text{G}+\text{R}].

2. Enter the second line and convert to an array: \[2\ +/\ -\ X\ (\alpha\leftarrow\ X\ \alpha\leftarrow\ Y\ +\ 2\ \leftarrow\ =\ 0)\ \text{ENTER}\ \text{VAR}\ \text{G}+\text{R}].

3. Execute **LIN2**: \[\alpha\ (\alpha\ \text{LIN}2)?\ \text{ENTER}\] or \[\text{VAR}\] (then \[\text{NXT}\] or \[\leftarrow\ \text{PREV}\] as needed) **LINE2**.

   **Result:** 2: \([-0.785714, -0.714286]\]
   1:
   1

The lines intersect at the point \((-\frac{11}{14}, -\frac{5}{7})\). (As you’ve seen earlier, you can compute the fractions using the program \(\frac{A}{Q}\).)
Example: Determine the relationship of the following two lines, which are given here parametrically: \( \{ x = 3t + 6, y = -2t - 1, z = t - 5 \} \) and \( \{ x = -t + 3, y = 3t - 1, z = -4t + 3 \} \).

1. Enter the first set of parametric equations: \( \begin{align*}
3 \times \alpha & \leftarrow t + 6 \\
1 \times \alpha & \leftarrow y + 2 \\
1 \times \alpha & \leftarrow t - 1
\end{align*} \) \( \alpha \leftarrow 2 \leftarrow \alpha \leftarrow t - 5 \) \( \text{ENTER} \).

2. Convert the set to array form: \( \text{VAR-P-PD} \leftarrow \text{STACK} \text{ OVER} \text{ +2 MTH MATH ROW ROW} \).

3. Enter the second set of parametric equations: \( \begin{align*}
3 \times \alpha & \leftarrow t + 3 \\
1 \times \alpha & \leftarrow y + 3 \\
1 \times \alpha & \leftarrow t + 3
\end{align*} \) \( \alpha \leftarrow 4 \leftarrow \alpha \leftarrow t + 3 \) \( \text{ENTER} \).

4. Convert the set to array form: \( \text{VAR-P-PD} \leftarrow \text{STACK} \text{ OVER} \text{ +2 MTH MATH ROW ROW} \).

5. Execute \( \text{LINE} \): \( \text{VAR-LINE} \). Result: 2: "Skew" 1: 0.

If two lines are parallel, the distance between them is constant, so you can find the distance by identifying a point on one of the lines and using the \( \text{DTOL} \) program....

Example: Find the distance between \( 4x - 8y + 3 = 0 \) and \( 2x - 4y - 6 = 0 \).

1. Enter the first line: \( \begin{align*}
4 \times \alpha & \leftarrow x - 8 \times \alpha \leftarrow y + 3 \leftarrow 0
\end{align*} \) \( \text{ENTER} \).

2. Convert that to an array, then reduce it to one point on the line: \( \text{VAR} \text{ G+H MATH MATH ROW ROW} \). Result: \( \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ .875 \end{bmatrix} \)

3. Enter the other line; convert to an array: \( \begin{align*}
2 \times \alpha & \leftarrow x - 4 \times \alpha \\
y & \leftarrow -6 \leftarrow 0
\end{align*} \) \( \text{ENTER} \text{ VAR G+H} \). Result: \( \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \)

4. Find the distance from the point to the line (also the distance between the parallel lines): \( \text{DTOL} \). Result: 1.67705098312

Given: Two Lines
The angle ($\theta$) formed by two intersecting lines can be computed from the definition of the dot product:

$$\theta = \cos^{-1} \frac{A \cdot B}{|A||B|},$$

where $A$ and $B$ are direction vectors for the two lines.

**Example:** Compute the angle (in degrees) between the two intersecting lines $4x + 2y - 1 = 0$ and $5x - y + 3 = 0$.

1. Set degree mode (if necessary) by pressing $\left\langle \text{RAD} \right\rangle$ to turn off the angle annunciator.

2. Enter the first line and then find its direction vector: $\left\langle 4 \right\rangle \times \alpha \left\langle x \right\rangle + 2 \times \alpha \left\langle y \right\rangle - 1$ \text{ENTER} \text{VAR} \text{G} \rightarrow \text{A} \text{MTH} \text{MATR} \text{ROW} \left\langle \text{ROW} \right\rangle \left\langle \rightarrow \right\rangle$. Result: $[-1 \quad 2]$.

3. Enter the second line and compute its direction vector: $\left\langle 5 \right\rangle \times \alpha \left\langle x \right\rangle - \alpha \left\langle y \right\rangle + 3$ \text{ENTER} \text{VAR} \text{G} \rightarrow \text{A} \text{MTH} \text{MATR} \text{ROW} \left\langle \text{ROW} \right\rangle \left\langle \rightarrow \right\rangle$. Result: $[-1 \quad -5]$.

4. Compute the angle between the two lines: $\left\langle \text{STACK} \right\rangle \left\langle \text{NXT} \right\rangle \left\langle \text{DUPZ} \right\rangle \text{MTH} \text{VECTR} \text{DOT} \left\langle 3 \right\rangle \left\langle \text{STACK} \right\rangle \text{ROLLD} \left\langle \text{MNU} \right\rangle \text{ABS} \text{SWAP} \text{ABS} \times \left\langle \rightarrow \right\rangle \left\langle \text{ACOS} \right\rangle$.

Result: $142.125$ (in degrees, to three decimal places)

Note that this procedure finds the angle between two vectors sharing initial endpoints and there is only one angle between them, but it is a stand-in for the angle between intersecting lines, which form two angles. Thus the supplementary angle ($\approx 37.875^\circ$) is also formed by the intersection of the two lines.
Two lines that either intersect or are parallel determine a unique plane. The easiest approach to finding the equation of the plane given two lines is to find three points—two from one line and one from the other (but not the point of intersection)—and use the procedure described on page 186 when given three non-collinear points. (The following two examples assume that you already know that the two lines either intersect or are parallel.)

**Example:** Find the equation of the plane determined by the lines \{ x = 3t - 2, y = -2t + 5, z = t - 3 \} and \{ x = -t + 14, y = 4t - 19, z = 5t - 19 \}.

1. Enter the first set of parametric equations: \(3\times \alpha \leftarrow T - 2\), \(4\times \alpha \leftarrow T + 5\), \(5\times \alpha \leftarrow T - 3\) [ENTER].

2. Find a position vector (point) for the line; make a copy: \(\text{VAR} \rightarrow \text{PD} \rightarrow \text{ENTER}\).

3. Enter the other set of parametric equations; convert it to position-direction form: \(\alpha \leftarrow \frac{-1}{2} \times \alpha \leftarrow T + 14\), \(\alpha \leftarrow \frac{1}{4} \times \alpha \leftarrow T - 19\), \(\alpha \leftarrow \frac{5}{2} \times \alpha \leftarrow T - 19\) [ENTER] \(\rightarrow \text{PD} \rightarrow \text{ENTER}\).

4. Compute the set of coefficients \([A \ B \ C]\) for the equation of the plane: \(\text{3} \rightarrow \text{STACK} \rightarrow \text{RULLD} \rightarrow \text{MTH} \rightarrow \text{VECTR CROSS}\).

   Result: \([-56 \ -64 \ 40]\)

5. Compute the \(D\) coefficient: \(\text{DOT} \rightarrow \text{ENTER}\). Result: \(328\)

   Thus an equation for the plane is \(-56x - 64y + 40z - 328 = 0\). Note that this can be reduced by dividing through by 8:

   \(-7x - 8y + 5z + 41 = 0\)
A plane has three traces. A trace is the line of intersection of the plane with one of the three coordinate planes (the \(xy\)-plane, the \(yz\)-plane, and the \(xz\)-plane). The following example illustrates how to compute the equation of the plane from its three traces.

**Example:** Find the equation of the plane that has the following three traces:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{xy - trace: } & \quad 2x - 3y + 12 = 0 \\
\text{yz - trace: } & \quad -3y - 6z + 12 = 0 \\
\text{xz - trace: } & \quad 2x - 6z + 12 = 0
\end{align*}
\]

1. Write down the \(xy\)-trace.
2. Inspect the \(yz\)-trace and find the \(z\)-term.
3. Insert the \(z\)-term into the \(xy\)-trace:

   \[
   2x - 3y - 6z + 12 = 0
   \]

The inverse process, finding the traces of a plane given the equation of the plane, is almost as easy.

**Example:** Find the three traces of the plane \(4x - 5y + z + 1 = 0\).

1. Write down the equation of the plane \(4x - 5y + z + 1 = 0\).
2. To find the \(xy\)-trace, eliminate the \(z\)-term (equivalent to letting \(z=0\)):

   \[
   4x - 5y + 1 = 0
   \]

3. To find the \(yz\)-trace, eliminate the \(x\)-term (equivalent to letting \(x=0\)):

   \[
   -5y + z + 1 = 0
   \]

4. To find the \(xz\)-trace, eliminate the \(y\)-term (equivalent to letting \(y=0\)):

   \[
   4x + z + 1 = 0
   \]
Given: Two Planes

The general equation of a plane is $Ax + By + Cz + D = 0$, often expressed as a vector of its coefficients, $[A \ B \ C \ D]$. The vector represented by $[A \ B \ C]$ is the normal vector for the plane—the direction vector for a line perpendicular to the plane. Thus, a unique plane is defined by a point in the plane and its normal vector.

Two planes are either parallel or concurrent if the normal vector of one plane is a constant multiple of the normal vector of the other. If the ratio of the $D$ coefficients is equal to this same constant multiple, the planes are concurrent; if the $D$-ratio is different than the constant multiple, the planes are parallel.

If two planes are not parallel, they intersect in a line which has a direction vector perpendicular to the normal vectors for the two planes. To determine the equation of the line:

1. Determine a point on the line of intersection;
2. Find the cross product of the normal vectors;
3. Convert this to a set of parametric equations for a line.

Example: Find the line of intersection, if any, of these two planes:

$$4x - 5y + z - 2 = 0 \text{ and } x + 2y + 2z = 0$$

1. Find a point on the line of intersection. Assume that this point has a $z$-coordinate of 0 and solve the two plane equations simultaneously to find the $x$- and $y$-coordinates: Enter a vector of the negatives of the two constant terms: $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -5 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$. Enter a matrix of the $x$- and $y$-coefficients: $\begin{bmatrix} 4 & 5 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$. Solve the linear system, then append a 0 to the result as the $z$-coefficient you assumed: $\begin{bmatrix} .38769 \\ -.15385 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$

2. Find the cross product of the normals: $\begin{bmatrix} -12 \\ -7 \\ 13 \end{bmatrix}$

3. Convert the point and vector to a set of parametric equations: $\begin{cases} x = -(12t) + 4/13 \\ y = -(7t) - 2/13 \\ z = 13t \end{cases}$
The following example uses the program \( PL2L \) (see page 294), which first determines whether or not two planes (entered as vectors of coefficients) are parallel, and if not, the set of parametric equations for the line of intersection.

**Example:** Repeat the previous example using \( PL2L \).

1. Enter the two planes in vector form: 

   \[
   \begin{align*}
   & (1) \quad \begin{bmatrix} 4 \, \text{SPC} \, 5 \, \text{SPC} \, \pm/ \, \text{SPC} \, 1 \\ 2 \, \text{SPC} \, \pm/ \end{bmatrix} \\
   & (2) \quad \begin{bmatrix} 1 \, \text{SPC} \, 2 \, \text{SPC} \, 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ ENTER}.
   \end{align*}
   \]

2. Execute \( PL2L \): 

   \[
   \text{VAR} \, \text{PL}2\text{L}.
   \]

   **Result:** 

   \[
   \begin{align*}
   & 'x=-(12t)+4/13' \quad 'y=-(7t)-2/13' \\
   & 'z=13t'.
   \end{align*}
   \]

The angle formed by the intersection of two planes is easily determined by computing the angle between their normal vectors:

\[
\theta = \cos^{-1} \frac{A \cdot B}{|A| |B|}, \text{ where } A \text{ and } B \text{ are normal vectors for the two planes.}
\]

**Example:** Find the angle (in degrees) between the two planes, \( x - 2y - 2z + 3 = 0 \) and \( 6x + 3y + 2z - 1 = 0 \).

1. Set degree mode (if necessary) by pressing \( \text{RAD} \) to turn off the angle annunciator.

2. Enter the normal vectors of the two planes: 

   \[
   \begin{align*}
   & \begin{bmatrix} 2 \, \text{SPC} \, \pm/ \end{bmatrix} \text{ ENTER}; \\
   & \begin{bmatrix} 1 \, \text{SPC} \, 2 \, \text{SPC} \, 2 \end{bmatrix} \text{ ENTER}.
   \end{align*}
   \]

3. Compute the angle between the two lines: 

   \[
   \begin{align*}
   & \text{STACK} \, \text{NXT} \, \text{DUP} \, \text{MTH} \, \text{VECTR} \, \text{DOT} \, 3 \, \text{STACK} \, \text{ROLL} \, \text{MENU} \, \text{ABS} \, \text{SWAP} \, \text{ABS} \, \times \, \text{SWAP} \, \text{ACOS}. \quad \text{Result: } 100.981 \text{ (in degrees, to 3 places)}
   \end{align*}
   \]

Note that this procedure finds the angle between two vectors sharing initial endpoints and there is only one angle between them, but it is a stand-in for the angle between intersecting planes, which form two angles. Thus the supplementary angle (~79.019°) is also formed by the intersection of the two planes.
Given: A Point and a Plane

Your most common calculation when given a point and a plane is to determine the distance between them, which is given by

$$\text{distance} = \frac{|Aa + Bb + Cc + D|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2 + C^2}}$$

where $A$, $B$, $C$, and $D$ are the coefficients of the plane in general form, and $a$, $b$, and $c$ are the components of the given point $[a b c]$. If you let $\mathbf{N}$ be the normal vector for the plane and $\mathbf{P}$ the position vector for the point, then the distance equation becomes

$$\text{distance} = \frac{\mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{P} + D}{|\mathbf{N}|}$$

**Example:** Calculate the distance between the point $[4 -1 -3]$ and the plane $-2x + 3y - 2z + 6 = 0$.

1. Enter the normal vector for the plane and make an extra copy: $[2 +/- SPC 3 SPC 2 +/-] \text{ ENTER ENTER}$.  
2. Enter the $D$-constant for the plane and swap it with the copy of the normal vector: $[6] \text{ ENTER SWAP}$.  
3. Enter the point: $[4 +/- SPC 1 +/- SPC 3 +/-] \text{ ENTER}$.  
4. Now compute the distance: $[\text{ MTH VECTA DOT + ABS SWAP ABS }]$. Result: 0.242535625036

Note: If the resulting distance is zero, then the point lies in the plane.
The next two examples illustrate how to find the equation of a plane given a point in that plane and the equation of a second plane.

**Example:** Find the equation of the plane parallel to \( x - 3y + 2z - 5 = 0 \) that contains the point \([4 \ 2 \ -3]\).

1. Enter the normal vector of the given plane (the same as the normal vector of the parallel plane): \([-1 \ 3 \ 2]\) \(\text{ENTER}\).
2. Enter the given point: \([-1 \ 4 \ 2 \ -3]\) \(\text{ENTER}\).
3. Find the \(D\)-constant for the parallel plane: \(\text{MTH VECTR DOT} +/\-\). Result: 8

So the equation of the parallel plane is \(x - 3y + 2z + 8 = 0\).

While there is only one plane containing a given point parallel to a given plane, there are an infinite number of planes containing a given point that are perpendicular to a given plane. The cross product is the easiest method of finding one of those perpendicular planes, as the next example illustrates.

**Example:** Find the equation of a plane perpendicular to \( x - 3y + 2z - 5 = 0 \) that contains the point \([4 \ 2 \ -3]\).

1. Enter the given point and make an extra copy: \([-1 \ 4 \ 2 \ -3]\) \(\text{ENTER} \text{ENTER}\).
2. Enter the normal vector of the given plane: \([-1 \ 3 \ 2]\) \(\text{ENTER}\).
3. Compute the cross product (giving a vector perpendicular to the normal vector): \(\text{MTH VECTR CROSS}\). Result: \([-5 \ -11 \ -14]\)
4. Compute the \(D\)-constant for the perpendicular plane: \(\text{DOT} +/\-\). Result: 0. This is to be expected because the computed normal is perpendicular to the position vector of the point as well as to the given plane. (The dot product of perpendicular vectors is 0.)

So the equation of the perpendicular plane is: \(-5x - 11y - 14z = 0\)
Given: A Line and a Plane

A line and a plane are parallel if the dot product of their direction vector and normal vector is zero and a point on the line does not lie on the plane. If the dot product is zero and a point on the line does lie on the plane, the line is contained in the plane; if the dot product is not zero, then the plane and line intersect in a point.

Example: Find the number of points shared by the line \( \{ x = t + 3, y = t - 1, z = -t + 1 \} \), and the plane, \( 3x - 2y + z - 4 = 0 \).

1. Enter the normal vector for the plane and make an extra copy: \( \begin{align*}
3 \text{ SPC } 2 \text{ +/- SPC } 1 \text{ ENTER ENTER}.
\end{align*} \)

2. Enter the line and convert it to position-direction form: \( \begin{align*}
\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} t + \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}.
\end{align*} \)

3. Find the dot product of the direction vector of the line and the normal vector of the plane: \( \text{VECTR DOT} \).

   Result: \( 0 \). The line is either parallel to, or is contained in, the plane.

4. Determine whether the point on the line lies on the plane by finding the negative of the dot product of the point and the normal vector for the plane: \( \text{DOT +/-} \). Result: \( -12 \).

If the point were on the plane, this result would be equal to the \( D \)-constant in the equation of the plane. That's not the case here, so the line is parallel to the plane; they share no points.
If the dot product of the direction vector of a line and the normal vector of a plane is not zero, then they intersect at a point. To find the point, substitute the parametric equations of the line into the equation for the plane and solve for $t$. Then substitute the computed value of $t$ back into the parametric equations to find the $x$-, $y$-, and $z$-coordinates of the point of intersection. In vector terms,

$$t = \frac{-D - (N \cdot P)}{(N \cdot D)}$$

where $D$ is the $D$-constant in the equation of the plane, $N$ is the normal vector of the plane, $P$ is the position vector of the line and $D$ is the direction vector of the line. The following example illustrates how to use this equation to compute the coordinates of the intersection point.

**Example:** Find the point of intersection of the line, \{ $x = 3t + 1$, $y = -t - 1$, $z = -t + 1$ \}, and the plane, $3x - 2y + z = 4 = 0$.

1. Enter the parametric equations of the line; make an extra copy:
   $$\{ \alpha \leftarrow 3 \times \alpha \leftarrow T + 1 \}, \alpha \leftarrow Y = +/1 \\alpha \leftarrow T = 1 \\alpha \leftarrow T = 1$$

2. Enter the negative of the $D$-constant and swap it with the copy of the equation of the line:
   $$4 \text{ ENTER } \text{ SWAP}.$$

3. Convert the parametric form to point direction form:
   $$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

4. Enter the normal vector of the plane and make an extra copy:
   $$3 \text{ ENTER } 2 \text{ ENTER } 1 \text{ ENTER } \text{ ENTER}.$$

5. Compute $t$:
   $$3 \text{ ENTER } \text{ ROLL } \text{ MTH } \text{ VECTR } \text{ DOT } \text{ MTH } \text{ VECTR } \text{ DOT } \text{ SWAP} \div \text{ ENTER}. \quad \text{Result: } -0.2$$

6. Store the result in $t$ and evaluate the parametric equations:
   $$\alpha \leftarrow \text{ T ENTER } \leftarrow \leftarrow \leftarrow \leftarrow \text{ EVAL } \text{ ENTER } \text{ PRG } \text{ LIST } \text{ PROC } \text{ DOLIS}.$$
   $$\text{Result: } \{ 'x = 0.4' 'y = -0.8' 'z = 1.2' \}$$

7. **Optional.** Convert this to fractions:
   $$\text{SYM} \text{ NXT } \text{ ENTER}.$$
   $$\text{Result: } \{ 'x = 2/5' 'y = -(4/5)' 'z = 6/5' \}$$
The program $\text{LFL+F}$ (see page 288) takes a line in position-direction form and a plane in vector form and, after checking to see if they are parallel, computes the coordinates for the point of intersection. The next example illustrates its use.

**Example:** Use $\text{LFL+F}$ to find the point of intersection, if any, of the line $\{x = 2t + 1, y = -t - 1, z = 3t\}$ and the plane $3x + 2y - z - 5 = 0$.

1. Enter the set of parametric equations for the line: $\begin{align*}
\alpha &= 2 \times \alpha \leftarrow t + 1, \\
\beta &= \alpha \leftarrow \alpha T + 1, \\
\gamma &= 3 \times \alpha \leftarrow T - 1.
\end{align*}$

2. Convert the line to position-direction form: $\text{VAR P+PD}$.

3. Enter the plane in vector form: $\begin{align*}
\left[ \begin{array}{c}
3 \\
2 \\
1 \\
\end{array} \right] \text{SPC} \left[ \begin{array}{c}
0 \\
0 \\
-1 \\
\end{array} \right] \text{SPC} \left[ \begin{array}{c}
5 \\
0 \\
0 \\
\end{array} \right] \text{ENTER}.
\end{align*}$

4. Execute $\text{LFL+F}$: $\text{ENTER}$ or $\text{VAR}$ (then $\text{NXT}$ or $\text{PREV}$ as needed) $\text{LPL+P}$. Result: $\begin{bmatrix} 9 \\ -5 \\ 12 \end{bmatrix}$

If you wish, you can rationalize the results using $\text{H} \rightarrow \text{Q}$.

**Example:** Find the equation of the plane that contains the line $\{x = 2t + 1, y = -t - 1, z = 3t\}$ and is perpendicular to the plane $3x + 2y - z - 5 = 0$.

1. Enter the normal vector for the plane and make an extra copy: $\begin{align*}
\left[ \begin{array}{c}
3 \\
2 \\
1 \\
\end{array} \right] \text{SPC} \left[ \begin{array}{c}
0 \\
0 \\
-1 \\
\end{array} \right] \text{SPC} \left[ \begin{array}{c}
5 \\
0 \\
0 \\
\end{array} \right] \text{ENTER} \text{ ENTER}.
\end{align*}$

2. Enter the equation of the line: $\begin{align*}
\alpha &= 2 \times \alpha \leftarrow t + 1, \\
\beta &= \alpha \leftarrow \alpha T + 1, \\
\gamma &= 3 \times \alpha \leftarrow T - 1.
\end{align*}$

3. Convert the line to position-direction form: $\text{VAR P+PD}$.

4. Compute the vector of coefficients for the target plane: $\begin{align*}
\text{ROT} \text{ ROT} \text{ MTH VECTR CROSS} \left[ \begin{array}{c}
3 \\
2 \\
1 \\
\end{array} \right] \text{MENU} \text{ Rollo} \text{ MENU} \text{ DOT} \text{ +/-} \text{ MTH} \text{ MATH COL} \text{ COL+}.
\end{align*}$ Result: $\begin{bmatrix} -5 \\ 11 \\ 7 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$

So the equation of the perpendicular plane containing the given line is $-5x + 11y + 7z - 1 = 0$. 

*Given: A Line and a Plane*
Introduction to Transformations

So far in this chapter, you’ve seen how to deal analytically with various combinations of geometric objects. You have used the array object type—vectors and matrices—extensively in the process. In this last part of the chapter, you will learn how to efficiently transform groups of points using array methods. Such methods are the foundation of the moving graphics embedded in video games and all kinds of computer modeling.

A transformation is a kind of function that maps an input array—representing a geometric object—into a output array. If the transformation is part of a computer graphics program, the program redraws the object, based on the output array; the viewer sees the object undergoing a transformation on the screen.

There are several kinds of transformations possible:

- Translation—moving an object a given distance along a given line.
- Rotation—rotating an object through a given angle around a given axis.
- Reflection—finding the mirror image of an object with respect to a given plane.
- Scaling—changing the size of the object proportionally by a given factor.
- Shearing—changing the size of the object disproportionately.
- Combinations of any or all of the above.

Also, because most visual representations of objects occur in two dimensions (on a display screen or on paper) there are some important transformations to project three-dimensional locations into locations that can be plotted in two dimensions:

- Perspective Projection—transformation from three-dimensional space onto a hemispherical surface, where no two lines are parallel, followed by a projection from the hemisphere onto a plane.
- Dimetric Projection—projection which preserves the perpendicularity of the coordinate axes, while equally foreshortening two of the three axes.
- Isometric Projection—projection which preserves the perpendicularity of the coordinate axes, while equally foreshortening all three axes.
For the purposes of mathematical transformation, geometric objects are presented as arrays of points (i.e. arrays of the position vectors of points) with one important addition. An extra element, 1, is appended to the position vector, yielding what is known as the *homogeneous coordinate representation*.

Thus, depending on whether the object is in the xy-plane or in three-dimensional space, each position vector will have either 3 or 4 elements. For example, the line segment connecting the point (4,-1,3) to the point (3,2,-1) is represented as

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
4 & -1 & 3 & 1 \\
3 & 2 & -1 & 1 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]

; likewise, a square in the xy-plane is represented by a 4x3 matrix (four points, three elements each); and a cube is represented by an 8x4 matrix (eight points, four elements each).

The other important component in a transformation is the *transformation matrix*. It is a square matrix with the same number of columns as the object array: There is a 3x3 general transformation matrix for points limited to two dimensions and an analogous 4x4 transformation matrix for points in space:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
a & b & e & p \\
c & d & g & q \\
f & h & j & r \\
l & m & n & s \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Every general transformation matrix can be divided into four sections, each of which “controls” aspects of the transformation:

- \(a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h,\) and \(j\) control the local-scaling, shearing, and rotation aspects;
- \(l, m\) and \(n\) control the translation aspects;
- \(p, q\) and \(r\) control the projection aspects;
- \(s\) controls the overall scale of the transformation.

The remainder of this chapter illustrates how to use these “controls” to achieve a wide variety of transformations.
Scaling

To isolate the effect of each component of the transformation matrix, you must make sure that all other components have no effect on the transformation. The 3x3 and 4x4 identity matrices,

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\text{ and }
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

represent the “no effect” matrices. They show the “neutral” values of each of the “controls”—values to use if you want them to have no effect on the transformation.

The scaling controls fall along the diagonal of the matrix:

- $a$ controls the scale of the $x$-component.
- $d$ controls the scale of the $y$-component.
- $j$ controls the scale of the $z$-component (if any).
- $s$ controls the scale of all components simultaneously.

For example, to triple the scale of the horizontal component only (for an object in space), you would use the following transformation matrix:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
3 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Visually, you would see the object “stretching” horizontally.

The examples in the rest of this chapter use the program T VIEW (see page 317), which draws a simple object, given an array of its points, thus allowing you to view the results of your transformations on that object.
Example: Plot a simple unit square, then “stretch” it horizontally by a factor of three and view the results.

1. Enter the array of points for a unit square (in the xy-plane): \[
\begin{bmatrix}
0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 \\
1 & 1 & 1 \\
0 & 1 & 1 \\
1 & 1 & 1 \\
0 & 1 & 1 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]
   Result: \[
\begin{bmatrix}
0 & 0 & 1 \\
1 & 0 & 1 \\
1 & 1 & 1 \\
0 & 1 & 1 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]

2. Plot the square with \texttt{VIEW}: \texttt{ALPHA VIEW ENTER} or \texttt{VAR} (then \texttt{NXT} or \texttt{PREV} as needed) \texttt{VIEW}.

3. At the stack, enter the transformation matrix: \texttt{CANCEL MATRIX}
   \[
   \begin{bmatrix}
   3 & 0 & 0 \\
   0 & 1 & 0 \\
   0 & 0 & 1 \\
   \end{bmatrix}
   \]
   Result: \[
   \begin{bmatrix}
   3 & 0 & 0 \\
   0 & 1 & 0 \\
   0 & 0 & 1 \\
   \end{bmatrix}
   \]

4. Multiply the object array by the transformation: \texttt{X VIEW}.

\textit{Scaling}
Of course, the $y$-component can be scaled as well by changing the value of the $d$

element in the transformation matrix.

**Example:** Stretch the rectangular result of the previous example vertically by

a factor of 2 and display the results.

1. Return to the stack and enter the appropriate 3x3 transformation ma-

   trix: 

   $\begin{array}{ccc}
   1 & 0 & 0 \\
   0 & 2 & 0 \\
   0 & 0 & 1 
   \end{array}$

2. Multiply the object array by the transformation matrix, and view the

   results with TVIEW: $\times$TVIEW.

Notice that you could have performed both of the previous transformations at

once, by using a transformation matrix that is the combination of the two local-

scaling steps:

$$
\begin{bmatrix}
3 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 2 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 
\end{bmatrix}
= 
\begin{bmatrix}
3 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 2 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 
\end{bmatrix}
$$

This is a characteristic of combination transformations—they are the product of

the individual component transformations.
The lower right-hand element of the transformation matrix (the \( s \) element) controls the overall scaling of the object. It works differently than the local scaling factors. It is located in the last column, which should be all \( 1 \)'s unless a projection is intended. To restore the expected state of the last column, all elements of the matrix are divided by the \( s \)-factor, thus effectively making the lower-right-hand element a \( 1 \) again.

**Example:** Explore the effects of transforming the current object using a global-scaling factor of 2.

1. Return to the stack and enter the appropriate 3x3 transformation matrix:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 2 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Result:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 2 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]

2. Multiply the object array by the transformation matrix, and view the results with \text{TVIEW}:

\text{TEN: (LETIEHI.}

Note that, because of the division process involved, a global-scaling factor \textit{greater} than one \textit{shrinks} the object; and a global scaling factor \textit{less} than one \textit{enlarges} the object.


**Shearing**

The pure scaling you've seen already—using the diagonal elements of the transformation matrix—represent the "self-effects" of scaling of individual coordinates only: *independent* scaling.

By contrast, *shearing* is the effect that the scaling of one coordinate has on the value of other coordinates. Shearing is *dependent* scaling, using the off-diagonal elements $b$, $c$, $e$, $f$, $g$, and $h$ in the transformation matrix:

- $b$ represents the effect of $x$-scaling on the $y$-coordinate.
- $c$ represents the effect of $y$-scaling on the $x$-coordinate.
- $e$ represents the effect of $x$-scaling on the $z$-coordinate (if any).
- $f$ represents the effect of $z$-scaling (if any $z$-coordinate) on the $x$-coordinate.
- $g$ represents the effect of $y$-scaling on the $z$-coordinate (if any).
- $h$ represents the effect of $z$-scaling (if any $z$-coordinate) on the $y$-coordinate.

**Example:** Shear the $y$-coordinates of the current object by a factor of 1.2 of the $x$-coordinates.

1. At the stack, enter the transformation matrix: 

   $\begin{bmatrix}
   1 & 1.2 & 0 \\
   0 & 1 & 0 \\
   0 & 0 & 1 
  \end{bmatrix}$

   Result: 

   $\begin{bmatrix}
   1 & 1.2 & 0 \\
   0 & 1 & 0 \\
   0 & 0 & 1 
  \end{bmatrix}$

2. Multiply the object array by the transformation matrix, and view the results with TVIEW: 

   $\text{T} \cdot \text{VIEW}$. 

![Graph showing the sheared object](image-url)
Example: Shear the \( x \)-coordinates of the current object by a factor of 0.75 of the \( y \)-coordinates.

1. At the stack, enter the transformation matrix:

\[
\begin{pmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 \\
7 & 5 & 1 \\
0 & 1 & 0
\end{pmatrix}
\]

Result:

\[
\begin{pmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0.75 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{pmatrix}
\]

2. Multiply the object array by the transformation matrix, and view the results with \( \text{TVIEW} \):

\[ \times \text{TVIEW} \]

\[ \text{Shearing} \]
Translation

*Translation* is a transformation that moves a point along a line. It changes the coordinate system in which the object exists without changing any of the dimensions or relative positions of the points of the object. For example, translating an object to the point \((4,5)\) in the \(xy\)-plane means that the origin \((0,0)\) is now at the point \((4,5)\) and all points in the object that had been situated with respect to the origin are now analogously situated with respect to the point \((4,5)\).

In the transformation matrix, the \(l\)-, \(m\)-, and \(n\)-elements control the \(x\)-, \(y\)-, and \(z\)-axis translations, respectively. For the above example—a translation to the point \((4,5)\) in the \(xy\)-plane—the transformation matrix would be:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
4 & 5 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

**Example:** Translate the current object to a coordinate system centered at the point \((2,-1)\).

1. At the stack, enter the transformation matrix: \(\text{CANCEL} \rightarrow \text{MATRIX} \quad 1 \text{ ENTER} \quad 0 \text{ ENTER} \quad 0 \text{ ENTER} \quad \text{↑} \quad 0 \text{ ENTER} \quad 1 \text{ ENTER} \quad 0 \text{ ENTER} \quad 2 \text{ ENTER} \quad 1 \text{ ENTER} \quad 1 \text{ ENTER} \quad \text{ENTER}\). Result: \[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
2 & -1 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

2. Multiply the object array by the transformation matrix, and view the results with \(\text{TVIEW}\): \(\text{× TVIEW}\).
Rotation

A rotation is a combination of scaling and shearing that leaves the final dimensions of the object unchanged. Each rotation occurs around an **axis of rotation**. In two dimensions, it appears that the rotation is around a point—often the origin—but actually, it is occurring around the z-axis, which extends “upward” from the flat xy-plane. If \( \theta \) is the angle through which you wish to rotate the object counterclockwise around the origin, the appropriate 3x3 transformation matrix is

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
\cos \theta & \sin \theta & 0 \\
-\sin \theta & \cos \theta & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 
\end{bmatrix}
\]

**Example:** Rotate the current object 130° counterclockwise around the origin (z-axis).

1. At the stack, set degree mode, then enter the transformation matrix:
   
   ```
   \text{CANCEL} \rightarrow \text{RAD} \quad \text{(if needed)} \rightarrow \text{MATRIX} \rightarrow [1 \, 3 \, 0 \, \cos \theta \, \text{ENTER} \, 1 \, 3 \, 0 \\
   \sin \theta \, \text{ENTER} \, 0 \, \text{ENTER} \, \text{\downarrow} \, \text{1 \, 3 \, 0 \, \sin} \, \text{\text{+/-}} \, \text{ENTER} \, 1 \, 3 \, 0 \, \cos \theta \, \text{ENTER} \\
   0 \, \text{ENTER} \, 0 \, \text{ENTER} \, 0 \, \text{ENTER} \, 1 \, \text{ENTER} \, \text{ENTER}].
   ```

   Result:
   
   \[
   \begin{bmatrix}
   .6428 & .7660 & 0 \\
   -.7660 & .6428 & 0 \\
   0 & 0 & 1 
   \end{bmatrix}
   \]

2. Multiply the object array by the transformation matrix, and view the results with T\text{VIEW}: \( \times \text{T\text{VIEW}} \).
When performing a rotation in the $xy$-plane around an arbitrary vertical axis (which appears to be a point), the rotation is a three-step procedure:

- Translate from the given "point" of rotation back to the origin;
- Rotate the given number of degrees about the origin;
- Translate back to the coordinate system of the given point.

Thus, if the "point" of rotation is $(l, m)$ and the angle of rotation is $\theta$, the three transformation matrices, in order, are:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
-l & -m & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
cos \theta & sin \theta & 0 \\
-sin \theta & cos \theta & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
l & m & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

which, after multiplication,

simplify to

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
cos \theta & sin \theta & 0 \\
-sin \theta & cos \theta & 0 \\
-l(cos \theta - 1) + m \sin \theta & -l \sin \theta - m(cos \theta - 1) & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

A program, ROT2D (see page 299), creates the proper $3 \times 3$ transformation matrix, given the point (in vector form) on level 2 and the angle of rotation on level 1.

**Example:** Rotate the current object around the point, $(-1, -1)$ by $50^\circ$.

1. At the stack, enter the point of rotation in vector form: \text{CANCEL} \leftarrow \boldsymbol{1} \boldsymbol{1} \boldsymbol{+/-} \boldsymbol{SPC} \boldsymbol{1} \boldsymbol{+/-} \text{ENTER}.
2. In degree mode, enter the angle: \leftarrow \text{RAD} (if needed) \boldsymbol{5} \boldsymbol{0} \text{ENTER}.
3. Use ROT2D: \text{VAR} \text{ROT2D}: \begin{bmatrix}
.64279 & .76604 & 0 \\
-.76604 & .64279 & 0 \\
-1.12326 & .40883 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
4. Multiply and view the results: \boldsymbol{\times} \text{VIEW}. 

222

6. Analytic Geometry
The rotation of objects in three dimensions presents even more complications. A rotation in three dimensions implies that rotations may occur around any of the three coordinate axes—in the most general case, around any line in space.

In a rotation about any one of the coordinate axes, the coordinates of the object with respect to that axis do not change (thus, in a rotation about the z-axis in the xy-plane, where z = 0, the implied z-coordinate remains at zero before and after the rotation). Therefore, the rotation matrices for rotating about each of the coordinate axes individually are:

\[
\begin{align*}
x - axis: & \quad [1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0] \\
y - axis: & \quad \begin{bmatrix} \cos \phi & 0 & -\sin \phi & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \sin \phi & 0 & \cos \phi & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\
z - axis: & \quad \begin{bmatrix} \cos \psi & \sin \psi & 0 & 0 \\ -\sin \psi & \cos \psi & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}
\end{align*}
\]

So if you need to rotate about more than one axis—\(\theta\) about the x-axis, \(\phi\) about the y-axis, and \(\psi\) about the z-axis, for example—you simply multiply the necessary transformation matrices together. But note that the order in which you do the successive rotations definitely matters: remember that matrix multiplication is non-commutative.
For example, compare two transformations:

**Case 1.** Rotate about the x-axis, then by an equal angle about the y-axis ($\phi = \theta$):

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & \cos \theta & \sin \theta & 0 \\
0 & -\sin \theta & \cos \theta & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
\cos \phi & 0 & -\sin \phi & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & \sin \phi & \cos \theta & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

\[
= \begin{bmatrix}
\cos \theta & 0 & -\sin \theta & 0 \\
\sin^2 \theta & \cos \theta & \cos \theta \sin \theta & 0 \\
\cos \theta \sin \theta & -\sin \theta & \cos^2 \theta & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

**Case 2.** Rotate about the y-axis, then by an equal angle about the x-axis ($\theta = \phi$):

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
\cos \phi & 0 & -\sin \phi & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
\sin \phi & 0 & \cos \theta & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & \cos \theta & \sin \theta & 0 \\
0 & -\sin \theta & \cos \theta & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

\[
= \begin{bmatrix}
\cos \theta & \sin^2 \theta & -\cos \theta \sin \theta & 0 \\
0 & \cos \theta & \sin \theta & 0 \\
\sin \theta & -\cos \theta \sin \theta & \cos^2 \theta & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Note that these overall transformation matrices are *not* equivalent. Remember this when performing rotations around more than one axis.
The two-dimensional general rotation matrix is a bit complicated; the three-dimensional case is definitely so: For an axis (line) of rotation with a direction vector $[x\ y\ z]$ and a position vector $[l\ m\ n]$, and an angle of rotation $\theta$ in the counterclockwise direction, the 4x4 general rotation transformation matrix is:

$$
\begin{bmatrix}
  x^2 + (1-x^2)\cos\theta & xy(1-\cos\theta) + z\sin\theta & xz(1-\cos\theta) - y\sin\theta & 0 \\
  xy(1-\cos\theta) - z\sin\theta & y^2 + (1-y^2)\cos\theta & yz(1-\cos\theta) + x\sin\theta & 0 \\
  xz(1-\cos\theta) + y\sin\theta & yz(1-\cos\theta) - x\sin\theta & z^2 + (1-z^2)\cos\theta & 0 \\
  L & M & N & 1
\end{bmatrix}
$$

where

$$L = l - l\left[x^2 + (1-x^2)\cos\theta\right] - m\left[xy(1-\cos\theta) - z\sin\theta\right] - n\left[xz(1-\cos\theta) + y\sin\theta\right]$$

$$M = m - l\left[xy(1-\cos\theta) + z\sin\theta\right] - m\left[y^2 + (1-y^2)\cos\theta\right] - n\left[yz(1-\cos\theta) - x\sin\theta\right]$$

$$N = n - l\left[xz(1-\cos\theta) - y\sin\theta\right] - m\left[yz(1-\cos\theta) + x\sin\theta\right] - n\left[z^2 + (1-z^2)\cos\theta\right]$$

Clearly a program is called for. $\text{ROT3D}$ (see page 300) takes the position and direction vectors of the axis of rotation from levels 3 and 2, and the angle of rotation from level 1.

**Example:** Find the proper transformation matrix to rotate an object around the line given by $\{x = 2t + 1, y = -t - 1, z = 3t\}$ by 74°.

1. At the stack, enter the line in parametric form: \[\text{CANCEL} \left\langle \{ \right\rangle \left\langle 1 \right\rangle \left\langle t \right\rangle \left\langle \alpha \right\rangle \left\langle T \right\rangle \left\langle 1 \right\rangle \left\langle \alpha \right\rangle \left\langle T \right\rangle \left\langle -1 \right\rangle \left\rangle \left\langle \alpha \right\rangle \left\langle T \right\rangle \left\langle 3 \right\rangle \left\langle \alpha \right\rangle \left\langle T \right\rangle \left\rangle \left\langle T \right\rangle \left\rangle \left\langle \text{ENTER} \right\rangle.\]
2. Convert the line to position-direction form: \[\text{VAR} \left\langle \text{F-P-D} \right\rangle.\]
3. In degree mode, enter the angle: \[\left\langle \text{RAD} \right\rangle \text{if necessary} \left\langle 7 \right\rangle \left\langle 4 \right\rangle \left\langle \text{ENTER} \right\rangle.\]
4. Use $\text{ROT3D}$ to find the transformation matrix: \[\text{ROT3D} \text{.}
\]

Result:

$$\begin{bmatrix}
  3.17309 & 1.43506 & 5.30744 & 0 \\
  -4.33251 & -1.25056 & 0 \\
  3.38491 & -4.09561 & 6.79490 & 0 \\
  -6.50560 & -1.43506 & -5.55800 & 1
\end{bmatrix}$$
Reflection

A rotation moves an object with respect to a line. A reflection, on the other hand, moves an object with respect to a plane. A reflection may appear to be with respect to a line within the xy-plane, but this is because the line is the trace of the plane of reflection—the only part of the reflection plane within the xy-plane. Thus, what appears to be a reflection with respect to, say, the x-axis (i.e. the line y = 0) is actually a reflection with respect to the plane y = 0 (0x + y + 0z + 0 = 0).

The transformation matrices for reflection across each of the coordinate axes (or the planes with which they are associated) are fairly straightforward:

- Across x-axis:
  \[
  \begin{bmatrix}
  1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
  0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\
  0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
  0 & 0 & 0 & 1
  \end{bmatrix}
  \]

- Across y-axis:
  \[
  \begin{bmatrix}
  -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
  0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
  0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
  0 & 0 & 0 & 1
  \end{bmatrix}
  \]

- Across z-axis:
  \[
  \begin{bmatrix}
  1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
  0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
  0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
  0 & 0 & 0 & 1
  \end{bmatrix}
  \]

(The 3x3 transformation matrices are the same as those for the x-axis and y-axis shown above, except they have the third row and column removed.)

Example: Reflect the current object across both the x- and y-axes.

1. Enter the 3x3 transformation matrix for reflecting across the x-axis: (DROP the 3D-rotation matrix from the previous example, if necessary) ➜ MATRIX 1 ENTER 0 ENTER 0 ENTER ▼ 0 ENTER 1 +/- ENTER 0 ENTER 0 ENTER 0 ENTER 1 ENTER ENTER.

2. Enter the 3x3 transformation matrix for reflecting across the y-axis: ➜ MATRIX 1 +/- ENTER 0 ENTER 0 ENTER ▼ 0 ENTER 1 ENTER 0 ENTER 0 ENTER 0 ENTER 1 ENTER ENTER.

3. Because this is just two consecutive reflections, you can multiply the two transformation matrices together before applying it to the object matrix: ⊗. Result:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
-1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & -1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]
4. Multiply and view the results: \( \square \text{VIEW}. \)

This example was simple, but to reflect across an *arbitrary* plane (or, in two dimensions, an arbitrary line) the computation is complicated. You must rotate the given plane of reflection to match one of the coordinate planes, perform the reflection and rotate the result back. A better approach uses geometric relationships: The plane of reflection is a perpendicular bisector of a line segment from a point to its reflection. The program \( \text{RFLCT} \) (see page 299) uses this to compute the reflection directly. It takes the object array from level 2 and a vector of the general form of the plane (or, in two dimensions, the line) of reflection from level 1.

**Example:** Reflect the current object across the line, \( x - 2y + 1 = 0 \).

1. Return to the stack (where the current object array should be shown in level 1) and enter the vector form of the line of reflection: \( \text{CANCEL} \left[ 1 \right] 1 \text{SPC} \left[ 2 \right] +/ - \text{SPC} 1 \text{ENTER}. \)

2. Use the \( \text{RFLCT} \) program: \( \alpha \alpha \text{RFLCT ENTER} \) or \( \text{VAR} \) (then \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{RFLCT} \).

3. View the results with \( \text{VIEW} \): \( \text{VIEW} \).
Projection

So far, you have not seen any examples that plot points in three dimensions. Before you can do so, you be able to project them into points in two dimensions, so that they may be displayed on the HP 48’s two dimensional screen. The kinds of transformations you have seen thus far in this chapter have been affine transformations, where the $p$-, $q$-, and $r$-elements in the general 4x4 transformation matrix are zero. But when one or more of these elements is nonzero, then the transformation becomes a projection.

Projections depend on two things: the viewing plane onto which you’re projecting and the center of the projection or eyepoint. When you view the HP 48 display, you are viewing the $xy$-plane (the plane, $z = 0$). Parallel lines stay parallel on the display—they don’t meet together in a point. The eyepoint is infinitely far from the viewing plane. Projections that maintain the eyepoint at infinity are called axonometric projections, because they keep the coordinate axes at right angles to each other. There are three types of axonometric projections:

- **Orthographic.** These produce the views commonly used in mechanical drawing—Top View, Side View, Front View. They are projections onto one of the three coordinate zero planes ($x = 0$, $y = 0$, or $z = 0$).

- **Dimetric.** These foreshorten two of the three coordinate axes by the same factor, while leaving the axes at right angles (orthographic) to each other. A dimetric projection consists of two successive rotations (once around each of the axes being foreshortened) using angles computed to maintain the orthography of the axes.

- **Isometric.** These foreshorten all three axes by the same factor while maintaining their orthography. An isometric projection is similar to the dimetric projection except that the computed angles of rotation are constant no matter the degree of foreshortening.

228 6. Analytic Geometry
The transformation matrix for an orthographic projection onto the xy-plane is:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Note that column corresponding to the projection plane (z) are filled with zeroes, since, in the xy plane, \( z = 0 \). The analogous approach can be used to construct the matrices for projections onto the \( x = 0 \) and \( y = 0 \) planes—leaving the column corresponding to the projection plane filled with zeroes.

**Example:** Enter this set of points and view it in an orthographic projection onto the xy-plane:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 2 & 1 \\
2 & 0 & 2 & 1 \\
2 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
2 & 2 & 0 & 1 \\
2 & 2 & 2 & 1 \\
0 & 2 & 2 & 1 \\
0 & 2 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
2 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
2 & 2 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 2 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 2 & 2 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 2 & 1 \\
2 & 0 & 2 & 1 \\
2 & 2 & 2 & 1 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]
1. Enter the array of points: 

```
1 ENTER ▼ 0 SPC 0 SPC 2 SPC 1 ENTER 2 SPC 0 SPC 2 SPC
1 ENTER 2 SPC 0 SPC 0 SPC 1 ENTER 2 SPC 2 SPC 0 SPC
1 ENTER 2 SPC 2 SPC 2 SPC 1 ENTER 0 SPC 2 SPC 2 SPC
1 ENTER 0 SPC 2 SPC 0 SPC 1 ENTER 0 SPC 0 SPC 0 SPC
1 ENTER 0 SPC 0 SPC 0 SPC 1 ENTER 2 SPC 2 SPC 0 SPC
1 ENTER 0 SPC 2 SPC 0 SPC 1 ENTER 0 SPC 0 SPC 2 SPC
1 ENTER 2 SPC 2 SPC 2 SPC 1 ENTER ENTER.
```

2. Execute `TVIEW`. It performs an orthographic projection onto the xy-plane simply by ignoring the z-element of each point: `VAR TVIEW`.

![Orthographic projection diagram]

The object is a cube two units on a side with one of its major diagonals drawn, shown here “flattened out” into the xy-plane.

Related to the orthographic projections are those onto planes parallel to the coordinate planes, such as \( x = l \), \( y = m \), and \( z = n \). The transformation matrices for these projections are:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
l & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
\end{bmatrix} \quad \begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
m & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
\end{bmatrix} \quad \begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & n & 1 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]
The preceding projections share the disadvantage that they lose the z-coordinate information during the projection (although **VIEW** avoids this by returning the object array *before* projection while displaying the results *after* projection). A better approach is to use the z-axis information during the projection so that the results give some visual clue about the "depth" of the object.

The *dimetric* projection is of a rotation about the y-axis by an angle $\phi$, followed by a rotation about the x-axis by an angle $\theta$. The angles $\phi$ and $\theta$ are computed so that the x- and y- axes are foreshortened by an equal factor, $f$, while maintaining the orthography of the coordinate axes and projecting the results into the $xy$-plane.

Obviously, the key is choosing the correct angles. They must satisfy these two equations:

\[
\begin{align*}
\cos^2 \phi + \sin^2 \phi \sin^2 \theta &= \cos^2 \theta \\
\sin^2 \phi + \cos^2 \phi \sin^2 \theta &= f^2
\end{align*}
\]

Once you have computed these angles for a given factor $f$, you can compute the transformation matrix for the dimetric projection, which is nothing more than the combined matrix from the two rotations about the axes:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
\cos \phi & \sin \phi \sin \theta & -\sin \phi \cos \theta & 0 \\
0 & \cos \theta & \sin \theta & 0 \\
\sin \phi & -\cos \phi \sin \theta & \cos \phi \cos \theta & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]
The program DMTRC (see page 280) computes the appropriate transformation matrix, given the factor, \( f \) (\( 0 \leq f \leq 1 \)) by which you wish to foreshorten the axes.

**Example:** Project the current object using a dimetric projection with a factor of 0.5.

1. Return to the stack, make an extra copy of the object array, and store it as CUBE: \[\text{CANCEL} \text{ENTER} \alpha \alpha \text{CUBE ENTER STO}.\]

2. Enter the projection factor: \[\cdot\underline{5}\text{ENTER}].\]

3. Find the transformation matrix for the dimetric projection: \[\alpha \alpha \text{DMTR ENTER} \text{or VAR (then } \text{NXT or } \leftrightarrow \text{PREV as needed)} \text{DMTR}.\]

   Result: \[
   \begin{bmatrix}
   0.92582 & 0.13363 & -0.35355 & 0 \\
   0 & 0.93541 & 0.35355 & 0 \\
   0.37796 & -0.32733 & 0.86603 & 0 \\
   0 & 0 & 0 & 1
   \end{bmatrix}
   \]

4. Multiply the object array by the transformation matrix, and display the results using TVIEW: \[\times \text{TVIEW}.\]
The isometric projection is similar to the dimetric projection except that it needs no factor: there is only one set of angles, $\theta$ and $\phi$, that will equally foreshorten all three axes without disturbing coordinate orthogonality. The required values are $\theta = 35.26439^\circ$ and $\phi = 45^\circ$.

The program ISMTRC (see page 285) takes nothing from the stack and returns the proper transformation matrix for an isometric projection.

**Example:** Project the CUBE using an isometric projection.

1. Return to the stack, drop the previous result array, and put CUBE onto the stack as the object array: \texttt{CANCEL} \texttt{VAR} \texttt{CUBE}.

2. Compute the transformation matrix for the isometric projection: \texttt{\theta} \texttt{ISMTRC ENTER} or \texttt{VAR} (then \texttt{NXT} or \texttt{PREV} as needed) \texttt{ISMTR}.

   Result: 
   \[
   \begin{bmatrix}
   0.70711 & 0.40825 & -0.57735 & 0 \\
   0 & 0.81650 & 0.57735 & 0 \\
   0.70711 & -0.40825 & 0.57735 & 0 \\
   0 & 0 & 0 & 1
   \end{bmatrix}
   \]

3. Multiply the object array by the transformation matrix, and display the results using TVIEW: \texttt{\times TVIEW}.

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{cube_isometric_projection.png}
\end{center}
The final set of projections to illustrate are the *perspective projections*. Perspective projections are combinations of a perspective transformation with a projection into a plane. Widely used to present data in visually useful ways, perspective projections are often combined with other transformations—rotations, translations, or scaling—before the perspective transformation (and sometimes after).

The simplest perspective projection projects onto the $xy$-plane from an eyepoint at $[0, 0, -k]$ where $k$ is a finite number. (By contrast, the theoretical eyepoint for the previous axonometric projections was $[0, 0, -\infty]$.) In this projection, lines that were originally parallel to the $z$-axis will now appear to pass through the *vanishing point* $[0, 0, k]$.

This projection, known as a *single-point perspective transformation*, is accomplished using the following transformation matrix:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{k} \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Note the two differences between this matrix and the 4x4 identity matrix: the $r$-element has a nonzero value, and the third column is all $0$'s (for projection onto the $z = 0$ plane).

However, any non-zero values in the final column (except for the final row) of the transformation give an undesirable scaling effect, producing values other than $1$ in the fourth column of the transformed object array. To counteract that effect, the result of a perspective transformation must be *normalized* by dividing the $x$- $y$- and $z$-coordinates of each point by the value of the fourth element in its row.

The short program `NRMLZ` (see page 289) performs this normalizing procedure on the array in level 1. The resulting array will have its final column filled with ones.
Example: Project the current object onto the $xy$-plane using a single-point perspective projection. Let $k = 10$.

1. Return to the stack, drop the previous result array, and put `CUBE` onto the stack as the object array: `CANCEL VAR CUBE`.

2. Enter the transformation matrix: (→ MATRIX 1 ENTER 0 ENTER 0 ENTER 0 ENTER \[ 0 \] ENTER \[ 0 \] ENTER 1 ENTER 0 ENTER 0 ENTER 0 ENTER 0 ENTER 0 ENTER 0 ENTER \[ 1 \] ENTER ENTER). Result: \[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

3. Multiply; normalize: \[ \times \] Normalize. \[
\begin{bmatrix}
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
1.67 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
2 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
2.2 & 0 & 1 \\
1.67 & 1.67 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 1.67 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 2 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
2 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
2.2 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 2 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
1.67 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
1.67 & 1.67 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

4. Display the results using `VIEW`: `VIEW`.
The single-point perspective projection is the one most commonly used by artists, but they effectively translate the object so that the eye-point and the vanishing point are centered on the object. Without such a centering translation, the vanishing point is along the z-axis (i.e. at the origin), no matter where the object is.

**Example:** Repeat the previous example, but "center" the eyepoint on the object before performing the projection. That is, move the object so that the origin is at its center in the xy-plane—a (-1,-1,0) translation.

1. Return to the stack, drop the previous result array, and put CUBE onto the stack as the object array: \(\text{CANCEL} \rightarrow \text{VAR} \rightarrow \text{CUBE}\).

2. Prepare the single-point projection, including the translation elements in the last row: \(\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{vmatrix}\). Enter \(\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{vmatrix}\) Result: \(\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix}\).

3. Multiply by the object array and normalize: \(\times \text{MATRX}\). Result:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
-1 & -1 & 0 & 1 \\
-0.83 & -0.83 & 0 & 1 \\
-0.83 & -0.83 & 0 & 1 \\
1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\
0.83 & 0.83 & 0 & 1 \\
-1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\
1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\
-1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\
-0.83 & 0.83 & 0 & 1 \\
-0.83 & 0.83 & 0 & 1 \\
0.83 & 0.83 & 0 & 1 \\
0.83 & 0.83 & 0 & 1 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]
The single-point perspective is equivalent to viewing an object with only one eye. But with both eyes open, you gain the depth perception of a two-point perspective—the difference between the two perspectives being the result of a slight rotation around the vertical axis (the y-axis on the HP 48). Or, if you combine the rotation around the y-axis with the rotation around the x-axis, you can get a three-point, or oblique, perspective.

In terms of transformation matrices, the two-point and three-point perspectives are nothing more than the combination (multiplication) of one or two rotation matrices with the single-point perspective transformation matrix. The resulting combined transformation matrices (with $\theta$ the angle of rotation around the y-axis and $\phi$ the angle of rotation around the x-axis) are:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
\cos \theta & 0 & 0 & -\frac{\sin \theta}{k} \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
\sin \theta & 0 & 0 & \frac{\cos \theta}{k} \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
\cos \theta & \sin \theta \sin \phi & 0 & -\frac{\sin \theta \cos \phi}{k} \\
0 & \cos \phi & 0 & \frac{\sin \phi}{k} \\
\sin \theta & -\cos \theta \sin \phi & 0 & \frac{\cos \theta \cos \phi}{k} \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\]
Of course, a program makes perspective projections much easier: \textsc{PERSP} (see page 292) takes an object array from level 3, the desired translation vector from level 2, and the desired eyepoint from level 1. It returns the object array ready for \textsc{TVIEW}.

The translation vector allows you to move the entire object with respect to the origin. This lets you treat the eyepoint value as relative to the object (as well as to the origin), which makes it much easier to anticipate the perspective you obtain.

Whether you get a one-, two-, or three-point perspective depends on your choice of eyepoint. If only the $z$-coordinate is non-zero, the perspective is single-point; if the $y$-coordinate is also non-zero, the perspective is two-point; if all three coordinates are non-zero, the perspective is three-point. Be sure to use a negative number for the eyepoint's $z$-coordinate so as not to view the object from inside it.

Try the next few examples to get a feel for perspective projections.

\textbf{Example:} Project the \textsc{Cube} using no translation ([0 0 0]) and an eyepoint of [2 0 -10]. This produces a two-point perspective.

1. Return to the stack, drop the previous result array, and put \textsc{Cube} onto the stack as the object array: \texttt{CANCEL} \texttt{VAR} \texttt{Cube}.
2. Enter the translation vector: \texttt{[1 0 SPC 0 SPC 0 ENTER]}.
3. Enter the eyepoint vector: \texttt{[1 2 SPC 0 SPC 1 0 +/- ENTER]}.
4. Find the perspective projection (with the normalization: \texttt{\alpha \alpha \text{P} \text{E} \text{R} \text{S} \text{P} ENTER} or \texttt{VAR} (then \texttt{NXT} or \texttt{\text{PREV}} as needed) \texttt{\textsc{PERSP}}.
5. Display the results using \textsc{TVIEW}: \texttt{\textsc{TVIEW}}.

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}
**Example:** Project the CUBE using the same eyepoint as the previous example, but this time translate the cube to $[4 \ 5 \ 4]$.

1. Return to the stack, drop the previous result array, and put CUBE onto the stack as the object array: `CANCEL ← VAR CUBE`.

2. Enter the translation vector: `←[ ] 4 SPC 5 SPC 4 ENTER`.

3. Enter the eyepoint vector: `←[ ] 2 SPC 0 SPC 10 +/- ENTER`.

4. Find the perspective projection (with the normalization): `@αPÆ RSPE ENTER` or `VAR` (then `NXT` or `PREV` as needed) `PERSP`.

5. Display the results using `TVIEW`: `TVIEW`.

Note that the perspective in this case looks at the cube from below it and to the left, visually skewing it accordingly. This is the effect of the relationship of the eyepoint to the center of the object.
Example: Project \textbf{CUBE} using a \([ -1 -1 0 ]\) translation vector and a \([ 6 6 -5 ]\) eye-point. This produces a three-point perspective.

1. Return to the stack, drop the previous result array, and put \textbf{CUBE} onto the stack as the object array: \texttt{CANCEL} \texttt{VAR CUBE}.

2. The translation vector: \texttt{[ ] 1 +/- SPC 1 +/- SPC 0 ENTER}.

3. Enter the eyepoint vector: \texttt{[ ] 6 SPC 6 SPC 5 +/- ENTER}.

4. Find the perspective projection (with the normalization): \texttt{APE RSP ENTER} or \texttt{VAR} (then \texttt{NXT} or \texttt{PREV} as needed) \texttt{PERSP}.

5. Display the results using \texttt{TVIEW}: \texttt{TVIEW}.

![Diagram of a three-point perspective projection of a cube.](attachment:image.png)
As a curiosity and illustration of how deceptive a view it can be, try one final example where the eyepoint is located *inside the object*.

**Example:** Project the **CUBE** using a [-1 -1 0] translation vector and [0 0 1] as the eyepoint. This gives an insider's perspective!

1. Return to the stack, drop the previous result array, and put **CUBE** onto the stack as the object array: `CANCEL ← VAR CUBE`.
2. The translation vector: `[,] 1 +/- SPC 1 +/- SPC 0 ENTER`.
3. Enter the eyepoint vector: `[,] 0 SPC 0 SPC 1 ENTER`.
4. Find the perspective projection (with the normalization): `α α P E R S P ENTER` or `VAR` (then `NXT` or `← PREV` as needed) `PERSP`.
5. Display the results using `TVIEW`: `TVIEW`.

![Diagram of the perspective projection of a cube with an inside eyepoint]
7. **Conic Sections**
Introduction to Conic Sections

A conic section is a widely used form of plane curve that is defined in any of three equivalent (and interchangeable) ways:

- It is formed by the set of all points in a plane whose distances from a fixed point (focus) divided by their distances from a fixed line (or directrix) is a constant ratio, \( e \) (or eccentricity).

- It is the result of the general second-degree algebraic curve:

\[
Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0
\]

- It is formed from the intersection of a plane and a right circular double cone—a “cross-section of a cone” (hence the name). There are four general shapes of conic sections, depending on: the angle (\( \alpha \)) made by the intersecting plane with respect to the bases of the cones; and the angle (\( \beta \)) made by the cone itself with respect to its base.

- If the intersecting plane is parallel to the bases (that is, \( \alpha = 0 \)), the cross section is a circle (unless the intersection is at the cone’s vertex only, in which case the cross section reduces to a single point).

- If \( 0 < \alpha < \beta \), the cross section is an ellipse (unless the intersection is at the cone’s vertex only, in which case it reduces to a single point).

- If \( \alpha = \beta \), the cross section is a parabola (unless the plane contains the cone’s vertex, in which case the cross section is a straight line).

- If \( \alpha > \beta \), the cross section is a hyperbola (unless the plane contains the cone’s vertex, in which case the cross section is a pair of intersecting lines).
Plotting Conics

This chapter illustrates how the three different descriptions fit together for each kind of conic section. You will see how to rotate and translate the conics, how to compute various analytical quantities, and how to convert between descriptions. But before looking at each of the four conic types, look at the HP 48’s specialized plot type, Conic. This plot type will plot any implicit function of two real variables which is of no more than second order in either variable. So, in fact, it will plot many implicit functions that don’t produce conic sections. Some examples:

\[
\sin x^2 - \cos y - 1 = 0:
\]

\[
x - y \log x^2 - xy = 0:
\]

\[
4xy^2 - y^3 - x = 0:
\]
There are good uses for such generality,* but nevertheless you will use the Conic plot type primarily to plot conic sections—and hence the name.

Technically, most conic sections are not functions (because each input can yield more than exactly one output). So, essentially, the Conic plot type breaks the second-degree equation into two equivalent true functions and plots each with the Function plot type—showing you both plots simultaneously.

Example: Use Conic to plot this circle: \((x - 1)^2 + y^2 = 4\)

1. Open the PLOT application, highlight the TYPE: field and change the plot type to Conic.
2. Reset the plot parameters: DEL ▼ ENTER.
3. In the \(E\): field, enter the circle’s equation: ▼ \(\text{EQUATION}\) \(\text{ }\) \(\alpha \leftarrow x - 1 \beta y^2 \alpha \leftarrow y y^2 \alpha \leftarrow \beta = 4\) ENTER.
4. Change the INDEP: variable to \(x\) (lower-case) and the DEPND: variable to \(y\) (lower-case). You will find the DEPND: setting in the PLOT OPTIONS screen (press OPTS from the main PLOT screen).
5. Leave all other plot options at their default settings and draw the plot, returning first to the main plot screen (OK, if needed): ERASE DRAW. Note how the plot is drawn in two pieces simultaneously, just as if you were plotting two functions simultaneously.

*Actually, Conic will plot any implicit function of two real variables, regardless of order, as long as it can compute a second-order Taylor’s approximation of the function. So Conic plots of two-variable polynomials with an order higher than two in either variable will be approximations but are often adequate for plotting purposes.
Sometimes you will need to adjust the step size to see the entire conic clearly.

**Example:** Plot the following conic, using default settings: \( x^2 + 3y^2 = 6 \)
1. Return to the **PLOT** screen: [CANCEL].
2. Highlight the **EQ:** field and enter the conic: \( \text{\arrowvert EQUATION} \alpha \leftarrow x y^2 \leftarrow 3 \alpha \\ y^2 \leftarrow x y^2 \leftarrow 6 \text{ ENTER} \).)
3. Draw the plot: **ERASE DRAW**.

![Conic Plot](image)

Parts of the ellipse are not fully drawn. Correct this by decreasing the step size.

**Example:** Repeat the above example with a step size of 0.02.
1. Return to the **PLOT OPTIONS** screen: [CANCEL] [OPTS].
2. Highlight the **STEP:** field and enter .02: \( \downarrow \downarrow \cdot 02 \text{ ENTER} \).
3. Redraw the plot: **OK** **ERASE DRAW**.

![Conic Plot](image)
The other concern about plotting conic sections involves the display range: If you allow the scale of the two axes to vary from one another, the image may be distorted in a misleading way.

**Example:** Plot the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 4$, using a square viewing area.

1. Return to the **PLOT** screen and highlight the **EQ:** field.
2. Enter the equation for the circle: $x^2 + y^2 = 4$.
3. Make sure that the **INDEP:** variable is $x$ (lower-case) and that the **DEPND:** variable is $y$ (lower-case).
4. Make the display ranges for **H-VIEW** and **V-VIEW** identical. Set both to $-3$ to $3$.
5. Plot the circle: **ERASE** then **DRAW**.

The plot looks more like an ellipse than a circle, because the display range doesn’t match the shape of the display itself—the circle has been stretched to accommodate the square coordinates you requested. That is, the horizontal and vertical ranges are identical and yet there are roughly twice the number of pixels horizontally as vertically, so each pixel on the horizontal axis represents about 0.05 units, while each pixel on the vertical axis represents about 0.1 units.

**Moral of the Story:** With a display width roughly twice that of its height, when plotting conic sections—particularly circles and ellipses—you should set the horizontal display range to roughly twice that of the vertical range in order to get a plot that isn’t visually distorted.
The program **CONPLT** (see page 278) streamlines the plotting of conic sections so that they appear well-centered and undistorted. **CONPLT** takes a list of the six coefficients of the conic section in general form from level 1 and plots the conic, returning nothing to the stack. Thus, given the general form of a conic,

\[ Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0 \]

**CONPLT** takes as its only input a list of the coefficients in the order shown above: \( \{ A \ B \ C \ D \ E \ F \} \). Note that you must enter a zero as the coefficient for any missing term—that is, the input list must have exactly six entries.

The following two examples illustrate the use of **CONPLT**.

**Example:** Use **CONPLT** to plot the conic \( 4x^2 + 3xy - 5y^2 - 2x + y - 25 = 0 \)

1. Enter the list of coefficients for the conic onto the stack: \( \text{CANCEL} \{ \} \)
   \( 4 \) \( \text{SPC} \) \( 3 \) \( \text{SPC} \) \( 5 +/\text{-} \) \( \text{SPC} \) \( 2 +/\text{-} \) \( \text{SPC} \) \( 1 \) \( \text{SPC} \) \( 5 +/\text{-} \) \( \text{ENTER} \).

2. Plot the conic using **CONPLT**: \( \alpha \alpha \text{CONPLT} \) \( \text{ENTER} \) or \( \text{VAR} \) (then \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \leftarrow \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{CONP} \).

![Graph of the conic section]

This conic is a hyperbola that is somewhat rotated with respect to the coordinate axes.
Example: Use \texttt{CONPLT} to plot the conic \((x - 4)^2 + (y + 2)^2 = 25\).

1. Because the conic isn’t in general form, you must first expand the left-hand side, collect terms and move all terms to the left-hand side.
   \textbf{Result:} \(x^2 + y^2 - 8x + 4y - 5 = 0\)

2. Enter the list of coefficients for the conic onto the stack: \(\langle 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 8 \ 4 \ 5 \rangle \text{ENTER} \).

3. Plot the conic using \texttt{CONPLT}: \(\alpha \alpha \texttt{CONPLT} \text{ENTER} \) or \texttt{VAR} (then \texttt{NXT} or \texttt{PREV} as needed).
The general conic equation becomes that of a circle when \( A = C \) and \( B = 0 \):

\[
Ax^2 + Ay^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0
\]

Defined geometrically, a circle is the set of coplanar points equidistant from a given fixed point (the center). Viewed as such, the circle has two defining parameters: its center, \((h,k)\); and its radius, \(r\), related by \((x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = r^2\).

The two programs \( \text{CIR} \to G \) and \( G \to \text{CIR} \) (see pages 277 and 282, respectively) convert between the center-radius form of the equation and the general form of the equation of a circle. The center-radius form is given by a complex number on level 2 (representing the coordinates of the center) and a real number on level 1 (representing the radius). The general form is given as a list of the six coefficients of the general conic equation, which, for a circle will be \( \{ A \ 0 \ A \ D \ E \ F \} \).

**Example:** The general equation of a circle centered at \((2, -3)\), with radius 7, is?

1. Enter the center of the circle as a complex number: \( \text{enter} \( \text{2} \ \text{SPC} \ \text{3}^{+/-} \ \text{ENTER} \).
2. Enter the radius: \( \text{7} \ \text{ENTER} \).
3. Find the general equation via \( \text{CIR} \to G \): \( \alpha \alpha \text{CIR} \to G \) \( \text{ENTER} \) or \( \text{VAR} \) (then \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \leftarrow \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{CIR} \to G \).

Result: \( \{ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ '-'4' \ 6 '636' \} \)

So the general equation is \( x^2 + y^2 - 4x + 6y - 36 = 0 \).

**Example:** Find the center and radius of the circle \( 4x^2 + 4y^2 - x + 5y - 3 = 0 \)

1. Enter the general equation as a list of coefficients: \( \leftarrow \{ 1 \ 4 \ \text{SPC} \ 0 \ \text{SPC} \ 4 \ \text{SPC} \ 1^{+/-} \ \text{SPC} \ 5 \ \text{SPC} \ 3^{+/-} \ \text{ENTER} \).
2. Compute the center and radius using \( G \to \text{CIR} \): \( \alpha \alpha \text{G} \to \text{CIR} \) \( \text{ENTER} \) or \( \text{VAR} \) (then \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \leftarrow \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( G \to \text{CIR} \).

Result: \( 2: \ (0.125, -0.625) \)

\( 1: \ 1.07529065838 \)

So the center of the circle is \( \left( \frac{1}{8}, -\frac{5}{8} \right) \), and the radius is \( \approx 1.075 \).
There are several important relationships involving circles that you may remember from a geometry class. Here’s a brief review:

- Three noncollinear points in plane determine a unique circle.
- The measure of an inscribed angle is one-half the measure of its intercepted arc. For example, in the above diagram: \( m \angle BGD = \frac{1}{2} \text{arc}(BD) \).
- If two chords intersect in the interior of a circle, the measure of the angle formed is the average of the measures of the arcs intercepted by the angle and its opposite or vertical angle. For example, in the above diagram: \( m \angle BOC = m \angle AOG = \frac{1}{2}(\text{arc}(BC) + \text{arc}(AG)) \)
- If two secants intersect in the exterior of a circle, the measure of the angle formed is one half the difference of the measures of the intercepted arcs. For example, in the above diagram: \( m \angle APF = \frac{1}{2}(\text{arc}(AF) - \text{arc}(CE)) \)
- If two chords intersect inside a circle, then the products of the lengths of the segments of each chord are equal. For example, in the above diagram: \( (BO)(OG) = (AO)(OC) \)
- If two secant segments are drawn to a circle from the same exterior point, the product of the lengths of one secant segment and its external segment equals the product of the lengths of the other secant segment and its external segment. For example, in the above diagram: \( (AP)(CP) = (FP)(EP) \)
Using the first of these relationships suggests that you should be able to compute the equation of a circle, given three noncollinear points. You can.

- **Method 1:** Find the center of the circle by finding the intersection of the perpendicular bisectors of the segments connecting the points; compute the radius by finding the distance from the center to any one of the points.

- **Method 2:** Replace the \( x \) and \( y \) variables in the general form of the circle equation with each of the three points (and let \( A = 1 \)), to get a linear system.

The following two examples illustrate each of these methods:

**Example:** Find the equation of the circle through the three points \( R(1,0) \), \( S(0,1) \) and \( T(2,2) \) using the perpendicular bisector method.

1. Enter points \( R \) and \( S \) onto the stack in vector form: \( \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \) \( \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \) \( \text{ENTER} \) \( \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \) \( \text{ENTER} \).
2. Compute the perpendicular bisector of the segment \( RS \) using the program \( \text{PB2PB} \) (introduced on page 184 in Chapter 6): \( \text{VAR} \) (then \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{PB2PB} \).
3. Convert the perpendicular bisector to array form (via the programs \( \text{Igien} \) and \( \text{GgA} \) from Chapter 6): Press \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{I\text{GE}} \) \( \text{SWAP} \) \( \text{G\text{G}A} \).
4. Using points \( S \) and \( T \), repeat steps 1 - 3: \( \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} \) \( \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \) \( \text{ENTER} \) \( \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} \) \( \text{ENTER} \) \( \text{PB2PB} \) \( \text{I\text{GE}} \) \( \text{SWAP} \) \( \text{G\text{G}A} \).
5. Find the intersection point of the two perpendicular bisectors, using \( \text{LINE2?} \) (see page 200): Press \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{LINE2} \). Result: \( [ 1.16667 \ 1.16667 ] \) (to 5 decimal places).
6. Copy the result, enter one point and find the radius: \( \text{ENTER} \) \( \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \) \( \text{SPC} \) \( \text{SPC} \) \( \text{SPC} \) \( \text{SPC} \) \( \text{MTH} \) \( \text{VECTR} \) \( \text{ABS} \). Result: \( 1.17851 \)
7. Swap the center point into level 1 and convert it to a complex number: \( \text{SWAP} \) \( \text{PRG} \) \( \text{LIST} \) \( \text{OBJ} \) \( \text{SPC} \) \( \text{MTH} \) \( \text{NXT} \) \( \text{CMPL} \) \( \text{RSC} \).
8. Swap and find the equation: \( \text{SWAP} \) \( \text{VAR} \) \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \text{PREV} \) \( \text{CIRG} \). Result: \( \{ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ -(7/3)\ -(7/3)\ -(4/3) \} \)

Thus the equation of the circle is \( \frac{3}{7} x^2 + \frac{7}{3} y^2 + \frac{7}{3} x - \frac{4}{3} = 0 \).
Example: Find the equation of the circle through the three points, \( A(2,3) \), \( B(3,-1) \), and \( C(-2,1) \) using the linear systems method.

1. Create the system of three equations in three unknowns by substituting each of the given points into the general equation for a circle:

\[
\begin{align*}
2D + 3E + F &= -13 \\
3D - E + F &= -10 \\
-2D + E + F &= -5
\end{align*}
\]

2. Open the Solve, lin Sys... application; enter the matrix of coefficients:

```
> SOLVE ▲▲ ENTER ▶ MATRIX 2 ENTER 3 ENTER
1 ENTER ▼ 3 ENTER 1 +/- ENTER 1 ENTER 2 +/- ENTER 1
ENTER 1 ENTER ENTER.
```

3. Highlight the \( E: \) field and enter the vector of constants:

```
1 3 +/- SPC 1 0 +/- SPC 5 +/- ENTER.
```

4. Solve the linear system: \texttt{SOLVE}.

Result: \([-1.44444 -1.11111 -6.77778\]

5. \textit{Optional}. Although you have already computed the three missing coefficients, you can put them into proper general form by converting the resulting vector to rational values using \( \Rightarrow Q \) and prepending the first three coefficients, \( \{ 1 \quad 0 \quad 1 \} \): \texttt{CANCEL EVAL VAR} (then \texttt{NXT} or \texttt{PREV} as needed) \( \Rightarrow Q \)

\texttt{A} \(\texttt{B}\) \(\texttt{C}\) \(\leftarrow\) \(\texttt{i}\) \(\texttt{l}\) \(\texttt{SPC}\) \(\texttt{0}\) \(\texttt{SPC}\) \(\texttt{1}\) \(\texttt{ENTER}\)

\texttt{SWAP} \(\texttt{+}\).

Result: \(\{ 1 \quad 0 \quad 1\quad -(13/9)\quad -(10/9)\quad -(61/9)\}\]

6. \textit{Optional}. Make the coefficients integral by multiplying through by 9 and collecting: \(\leftarrow\) \texttt{SYMB} \(\leftrightarrow\) \texttt{COLE}.

Result: \[9 \quad 0 \quad 9 \quad -13 \quad -9.99999999999 \quad -61 \]

As in this case, you may see a round-off error when creating integral coefficients. So the circle is \(9x^2 + 9y^2 - 13x - 10y - 61 = 0\).
**Points and Circles**

Given a circle with center at \((h, k)\) and a radius \(r\), and a point \((x, y)\), there is an easy way to determine whether or not the point lies on the interior of the circle, exterior of the circle, or on the circle itself:

- If \((x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 < r^2\), then the point lies on the interior of the circle.
- If \((x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = r^2\), then the point lies on the circle itself.
- If \((x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 > r^2\), then the point lies on the exterior of the circle.

**Example:** Does the point \((-1, 2)\) lie in the exterior of, in the interior of, or on the circle \(3x^2 + 3y^2 - 4x + 6y - 10 = 0\)?

1. Enter the circle in general form (as a list of coefficients): \[\{3\} \{0\} \{3\} \{4\} \{6\} \{0\} \{10\}\] \(\text{ENTER}\).
2. Convert it to center-radius form: \(\text{VAR} \times \text{CIR}\).
3. Square the radius: \(\times \).
4. Swap the center into level 1, enter the point as a complex number, and subtract from the center. Note that this is essentially the same as finding the vector between the center and the point: \(\text{SWAP} \{1\} \{1\} \{2\} \text{ENTER}\).
5. Find the square of the absolute value of the previous result: \(\times \).
6. Compare this result with the previous one (on level 2). Level 1 is larger, indicating that the point lies outside of the circle.
Ellipses

An ellipse is the set of points in a plane whose distances from two fixed points in the plane have a constant sum. An ellipse is a more general version of a circle in that it has two axes of different lengths—the major and minor axes, the major axis being the longer of the two—rather than a single radius.

The ellipse has four parameters:

- The center \((h,k)\) located at the midpoint joining the two fixed points, or foci, defining the ellipse.
- The semimajor \((a)\)—half of the length of the major axis.
- Either the semiminor \((b)\)—half of the length of the minor axis—or the eccentricity \((e)\), a ratio of the distance from the center to either foci compared with the semimajor. Either of these parameters will do, because they are related to each other by the following: \(b^2 = a^2 (1 - e^2)\)
- The angle of orientation \((\theta)\) between the major axis and the \(x\)-axis.

The standard equation for an ellipse assumes that the angle of orientation is zero:

\[
\frac{(x-h)^2}{a^2} + \frac{(y-k)^2}{b^2} = 1
\]

However, the general equation for an ellipse makes no assumption about the angle of orientation and is used whenever there is some rotation of the ellipse:

\[
Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0
\]

where neither \(A\) nor \(C\) is zero, \(A \neq C\), and \(AC > 0\). The angle of orientation is:

\[
\theta = \frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{B}{A - C} \right)
\]

Note that whenever the \(B\)-coefficient is zero, the angle of orientation is zero, and so the standard equation can be used as well.

The programs \(G \rightarrow ELP\) and \(ELP \rightarrow G\) (see pages 283 and 281, respectively) convert between the general equation of an ellipse and the set of four parameters: center, semimajor, semiminor, and angle of orientation. Here are some examples....
**Example:** Find and plot the general equation of an ellipse centered at (-2,3), with semiaxes of 5 and 3 and an angle of orientation is 30°.

1. Make sure that you’re in degree mode (RAD, if necessary), and enter the center of the ellipse: \((-2,3)\) (ENTER).
2. Enter the list of parameters: \(5,3,3,0\) (ENTER).
3. Find the coefficients of the equation: \(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \epsilon\) or \(\text{VAR}\) (then \(\text{NXT}\) or \(\leftarrow\text{PREV}\) as needed) \(\text{ELP}\). Result:
   \[
   \{0.6190, -0.6598, 1, 5.0560, -5.3288, 1.7143\}
   \]
4. Plot the ellipse: \(\text{Comp}\).

![Graph of an ellipse](image)

**Example:** Find the center, semimajor, and eccentricity of the following ellipse:

\[25x^2 + 9y^2 - 100x + 54y - 44 = 0\]

1. Enter the ellipse as a list of coefficients: \(\text{CANCEL} (1) 2 5 \text{SPC} 0 \text{SPC} 9 \text{SPC} 1 0 0 +/- \text{SPC} 5 4 \text{SPC} 4 4 +/- \text{ENTER}\).
2. Find the ellipse parameters: \(\text{VAR} \rightarrow \text{ELP} \text{ENTER}\) or \(\text{VAR}\) (\(\text{NXT}\) or \(\leftarrow\text{PREV}\) as needed) \(\text{ELP}\). Result:
   \[
   2: (2, -3)
   1: \{3 5 0\}
   \]
   The center of the ellipse is (2,-3) and the semimajor is 5—the larger of the first two elements in the level 1 list.
3. Compute the eccentricity. It is the square root of 1 minus the square of the ratio of semiminor to semimajor: \(\text{PRG} \rightarrow \text{LIST} \rightarrow \text{OBJ} \rightarrow \right
In the introduction to this chapter (page 243), the first definition of conic sections given was that of a planar curve formed by the set of all points such that, for each point, its distance from a fixed point (the focus) divided by its distance from a fixed line (the directrix) is a constant $\varepsilon$ (the eccentricity).

The ellipse actually has two foci and two directrixes, as the diagram shows below:

![Diagram of an ellipse with foci and directrixes](image)

The foci, $F_1$ and $F_2$, are each a distance equal to the product of the semimajor, $a$, and the eccentricity, $\varepsilon$. The directrixes, $D_1$ and $D_2$, are parallel to the minor axis and are a distance equal to the quotient of the semimajor and the eccentricity.

**Example:** Find the coordinates of the vertices and foci of the ellipse in the previous example: $25x^2 + 9y^2 - 100x + 54y - 44 = 0$

1. Find the basic parameters for the ellipse. From the previous example, you know that the center is located at $(2, -3)$, the semimajor is 5, the eccentricity is 0.8, and the major axis runs vertically (i.e. parallel to the $y$-axis).

2. The vertices are located along the major axis at a distance of 5 on either side of the center. Thus, vary the $y$-coordinate by $\pm 5$: The vertices are $(2, 2)$ and $(2, -8)$.

3. The foci are also on the major axis at a distance equal to the product of the semimajor and the eccentricity. Thus the $y$-coordinate must be adjusted by $(5)(0.8)$ or $\pm 4$: The foci are $(2, 1)$ and $(2, -7)$.
Example: Find the equation of an ellipse with an eccentricity of $2/3$ and the line $x = 9$ is one directrix with its corresponding focus at (4,0).

1. Analyze the given information. The directrix is a vertical line, so the major axis is horizontal. The focus is located on the x-axis, so the major axis is the x-axis. If the vertex is a distance $a$ from the center $(h,0)$, then the distance from the directrix to the center is $a/e$ or $1.5a$ and the distance from the focus to the center is $ae$ or $.67a$.

2. This leads to two equations in two variables: 
   \[ 1.5a = 9 - h \]
   \[ (2/3)a = 4 - h \]

   Set both equations equal to $h$ and solve for $a$, then backsolve for $h$.
   Result: $a = 6; h = 0$

3. Enter the coordinates of the center: $6 \text{ ENTER} 0 \text{ ENTER} 0 \text{ ENTER} 0$

4. Enter $a$, make a copy, and enter the eccentricity: $6 \text{ ENTER} 2 \text{ ENTER} 3 \div$

5. Compute the semiminor, $b$: $\leftarrow x^2 1 - +/- \text{ SWAP} \leftarrow x^2 x \sqrt{2}$
   Result: 4.472135955

6. Enter 0 as the angle of orientation and assemble the parameters into a list: $0 \text{ ENTER} 3 \text{ PRG LIST LIST}$

7. Find the coefficients of the ellipse: $[\text{VAR}] ([\text{NXT}] or \leftarrow \text{PREV} \text{ as needed}) \text{ ENTER} \text{ LELF}$. Result: 
   \{ .5555555556 0 1 0 0 -20 \}

   Multiplying through by 9 to make the coefficients all integers gives the ellipse $5x^2 + 9y^2 - 180 = 0$

Example: Find the eccentricity and directrixes of the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{7} + \frac{y^2}{16} = 1$

1. Analyze the ellipse. The center is the origin and the major axis is the y-axis (because $b^2$, 16, is greater than $a^2$, 7).

2. Enter the eccentricity: $1 \text{ ENTER} 7 \text{ ENTER} 1 6 \text{ ENTER} \div - \sqrt{2}$
   Result: .75

3. The directrixes are $y = \pm \frac{b}{e}$. So, compute $b/e$: $1 6 \sqrt{2} \text{ SWAP} \div$
   Result: 5.333. Thus the directrixes are $y = \pm \frac{16}{3}$. 

258 7. Conic Sections
A parabola is the set of points in a plane that are equidistant from a given fixed point (focus) and fixed line (directrix) in the plane. The eccentricity of a parabola is always 1. The vertex is the point of the parabola closest to the directrix.

Parabolas are controlled by three parameters:

- The location of the vertex \((h,k)\);
- The signed distance between the focus and the vertex \((p)\);
- The angle of orientation \((\theta)\)—the angle between the axis of symmetry and the appropriate reference axis (either the y- or x-axis).

The standard form of the equation of a parabola with an axis of symmetry parallel to the y-axis and with its vertex at \((h,k)\) is \((x-h)^2 = 4p(y-k)\). If the parabola has an axis of symmetry parallel to the x-axis, the equation is \((y-k)^2 = 4p(x-h)\). The absence of the second-degree term in either \(x\) or \(y\) (but not both) is a characteristic of the parabola. Indeed, any second-degree polynomial of one variable defines a parabola.

A conic given in general form, \(Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0\), is a parabola if \(B^2 - 4AC = 0\). The general form is used whenever the angle of orientation is nonzero.
The programs \( G \rightarrow PBL \) and \( PBL \rightarrow G \) (see pages 283 and 290, respectively) convert between the general equation and the set of three parameters. \( G \rightarrow PBL \) takes the list of coefficients representing a general conic from level 1 and returns the coordinates of the vertex to level 2 and a list containing the \( p \) parameter and the angle of orientation to level 1. The \( PBL \rightarrow G \) takes a complex number representing the vertex from level 2 and a two-element list containing the \( p \) parameter and the angle of orientation (in degrees) from level 1 and returns the list of general conic coefficients to level 1.

**Example:** Find the focus of the parabola \( 2x^2 - 3x + 5y + 4 = 0 \)

1. Enter the parabola in general form: \( \begin{bmatrix} 2 \text{SPC} & 0 \text{SPC} & 0 \text{SPC} \\ 3 \text{SPC} & +/\text{SPC} & 5 \text{SPC} & 4 \text{ENTER} \end{bmatrix} \)

2. Find the parameters: \( \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \text{SPC} & \alpha \text{SPC} \text{ENTER} \end{bmatrix} \) or \( \text{VAR} \text{ (NXT) \ or \ (PREV) as needed} \) \( G \rightarrow PBL \). Result: 2: \( (.75, -.575) \)
   1: \( (-.625, 0) \)

3. The parabola has an axis parallel to the \( y \)-axis, and because the \( p \) parameter is negative, it opens downward. Thus the \( y \)-coordinate of the focus differs by \( p \) (it will be more negative) from that of the vertex. Thus the focus is \((.75,-1.2)\).

**Example:** Find the general equation of the parabola with the vertex at \((-2,-2)\) and the line \( y = -3 \) as its directrix.

1. Enter the vertex: \( \begin{bmatrix} 1 \text{SPC} & 2 \text{SPC} & 2 \text{SPC} & +/\text{ENTER} \end{bmatrix} \)

2. The directrix is horizontal and below the vertex: the parabola opens upwards; \( p = -2 - (-3) = 1 \). The parameter list: \( \begin{bmatrix} 1 \text{SPC} & 0 \text{SPC} \text{ENTER} \end{bmatrix} \).

3. For the general equation: \( \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \alpha \text{SPC} \text{ENTER} \end{bmatrix} \) or \( \text{VAR} \text{ (NXT) \ or \ (PREV) as needed} \) \( PBL \rightarrow G \). Result: \( \{0 \ 0 \ 1 \ -4 \ 4 \ -4\} \)

Note that, by default, the \( PBL \rightarrow G \) program assumes that the parabolic axis is parallel to the \( x \)-axis (i.e. that it's second-degree in \( y \)). To convert it to the parabola with the axis parallel to the \( y \)-axis, swap the \( A \) and \( C \)-coefficients with each other and the \( D \) and \( E \)-coefficients with each other, making it \( \{1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 4 \ -4 \ -4\} \). Thus the equation for the parabola is \( x^2 + 4x - 4y - 4 = 0 \)
Hyperbolas

A hyperbola is the set of points in a plane whose distances from two fixed points in the plane have a constant difference. A hyperbola has two foci, located a distance \( c \) on either side of the center, along the main axis of the hyperbola. Associated with each focus is a vertex, located at a distance \( a \) on either side of the center.

The hyperbola has four parameters:

- The **center** \((h, k)\) located at the midpoint joining the two fixed points, or foci, defining the hyperbola.
- The **distance between center and each vertex** \((a)\).
- Any one of the following:
  - The **distance between center and each focus** \((c)\).
  - The **parameter** \((b)\), computed as \( b = \sqrt{c^2 - a^2} \).
  - The **eccentricity** \((e)\), equal to the ratio \( \frac{c}{a} \) and to \( \sqrt{1 + \frac{b^2}{a^2}} \).
- The **angle of orientation** \((\theta)\) between the main axis and the \(x\)-axis.

The standard hyperbola equation assumes that the angle of orientation is zero:

\[
\frac{(x-h)^2}{a^2} - \frac{(y-k)^2}{b^2} = 1
\]

However, the general equation for a hyperbola makes no assumption about the angle of orientation and is used whenever there is some rotation of the hyperbola:

\[
Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0
\]

where \( B^2 - 4AC > 0 \). The angle of orientation is \( \theta = \frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1}\left( \frac{B}{A-C} \right) \).

Note that whenever the \( B \)-coefficient is zero, the angle of orientation is zero and then the standard equation can be used as well.

The programs \( \text{G} \to \text{HYP} \) and \( \text{HYP} \to \text{G} \) (see pages 283 and 284, respectively) convert between the general equation of a hyperbola and the set of 4 parameters: center, the \( a \) parameter, \( b \) parameter, and orientation angle. Here are some examples.
**Example:** Find and plot the general equation of a hyperbola centered at (-2,3), with an a of 5, a b of 3, and angle of orientation of 30°.

1. Enter the center: \((-2, 3)\) \(\text{ENTER}\).
2. Enter the list of parameters: \([5, 3, 30°]\) \(\text{ENTER}\).
3. The general equation: \(a \times y^2 - b \times x^2 - 2 \times a \times b \times x \times y - c = 0\) \(\text{ENTER}\). Result (to 3 places): \(\{0.030, 1.785, -1, -2.656, 8.964, -25.091\}\).

The hyperbola: \(0.03x^2 + 1.78xy - y^2 - 2.66x + 8.96y - 25.09 = 0\)

4. Plot the conic: \(\text{VAR} \) (use \(\text{NXT}\) or \(\text{PREV}\) as needed) \(\text{COMP}\).

---

**Example:** Find the center and eccentricity of the following hyperbola:

\[25x^2 - 9y^2 - 100x + 54y - 44 = 0\]

1. Enter the coefficients: \([1, 25, 0, 9, 100, -54, 44]\) \(\text{ENTER}\).
2. Find the parameters: \(2: (2, 3)\) \(\text{ENTER}\). Result: \(1: \{1.587, 2.646, 0\}\).
3. Find the eccentricity: \(\text{EVAL} \) \(\text{DROP} \) \(\text{STACK}\) \(\text{INV}\) \(\times^2 \) \(\text{SWAP}\) \(\times\) \(\text{SWAP}\) \(\div\). Result: 1.944.
In the introduction to this chapter (page 243), the first definition of conic sections given was that of a planar curve formed by the set of all points such that, for each point, its distance from a fixed point (the focus) divided by its distance from a fixed line (the directrix) is a constant $\varepsilon$ (the eccentricity).

Like the ellipse, the hyperbola has two foci and two directrices. Unlike the ellipse, the hyperbola has two discontinuous branches constrained by two asymptotes. For a hyperbola in standard orientation (i.e. $\theta = 0$),* the directrix equations are $x = h \pm \frac{a}{e}$, and the equations of the asymptotes are $bx \pm ay - (bh \pm ak) = 0$.

**Example:** Find the asymptotes and foci of the hyperbola

$$25x^2 - 9y^2 - 100x + 54y - 44 = 0$$

1. Enter the hyperbola as a list of coefficients and compute its parameters:

   \[
   \begin{array}{c}
   \text{Result: } \{ \begin{array}{c} 2: \{1.587, 2.646, 0\} \\
   1: \{100, 54, 44\} \end{array} \}
   \end{array}
   \]

2. Find the eccentricity:

   \[
   \text{Result: } 1.944
   \]

3. Find the directrixes:

   \[
   \text{Result: } \begin{array}{c} 2: \{1.183, 2.817\} \\
   1: \{1.183, 2.817\} \end{array}
   \]

   Thus the directrixes are $x = 1.183$ and $x = 2.817$.

4. Since $a \approx 1.587$, $b \approx 2.646$, $h = 2$, and $k = 3$, the asymptotes (to three places) are:

   \[
   \begin{align*}
   2.646x + 1.587y + 10.054 &= 0 \\
   2.646x - 1.587y + 0.529 &= 0
   \end{align*}
   \]

*It is conventional to denote $\theta$ with respect to the $x$-axis, but note that the programs HYP $\rightarrow$ G and G $\rightarrow$ HYP can handle orientation with respect to the $y$-axis. Specifically, for the purposes of these programs: The values for $a$ and $b$ will be negative if the $y$-axis is being used as the reference axis for a rotation (or if the foci are on the $y$-axis). A hyperbola oriented with reference to the $y$-axis would be of the form

\[
\frac{(y-k)^2}{a^2} - \frac{(x-h)^2}{b^2} = 1
\]

Hyperbolas 263
Example: Find the equation of a hyperbola with an eccentricity of 1.3, the line \( x = 9 \) as one directrix, and the corresponding focus at \((4,0)\).

1. Analyze the given information. Because the directrix is a vertical line, you know that the major axis is horizontal. Because the focus is located on the \( x \)-axis, you know that the major axis is the \( x \)-axis. If the vertex is a distance \( a \) from the center \((h,0)\), then the distance from the directrix to the center is \( a/e \) or \(.769a \) and the distance from the focus to the center is \( ae \) or \( 1.3a \). The directrix \((x = 9)\) is between the center \((h,0)\) and focus \((4,0)\) in a hyperbola, so \( 4 < 9 < h \).

2. These facts lead to two equations in two variables:

\[
.769a = h - 9 \quad \text{or} \quad h - .769a = 9 \\
1.3a = h - 4 \quad \text{or} \quad h - 1.3a = 4
\]

Solve the set of equations simultaneously:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
.769a = h - 9 \\
1.3a = h - 4
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Result: \[
\begin{bmatrix}
16.24638 \\
9.42029
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Thus \( h \approx 16.25 \) and \( a \approx 9.42 \).

3. Enter the coordinates of center \((h,0)\):

\[
\text{MTH} \rightarrow \text{VECTR} \rightarrow \text{VECT} \Rightarrow \text{SWAP} \Rightarrow \text{0}
\]

\[
\text{MTH} \rightarrow \text{NXT} \rightarrow \text{CAL} \rightarrow \text{R\rightarrow C}
\]

4. Swap \( a \) into level one, make two copies and enter the eccentricity:

\[
\text{SWAP} \Rightarrow \text{ENTER} \Rightarrow \text{ENTER} \Rightarrow 1 \cdot 3 \Rightarrow \text{ENTER}
\]

5. Compute the parameter \( b \):

\[
\left( \frac{x^2}{a^2} \right) \text{SWAP} \Rightarrow \left( \frac{x^2}{b^2} \right) \text{SWAP} \Rightarrow \left( \frac{x^2}{b^2} \right) \Rightarrow \text{ENTER}
\]

Result: \( 7.82508 \)

6. Enter \( \theta \) as the angle of rotation, and assemble the parameters into a list:

\[
\text{0 ENTER} \Rightarrow \text{ENTER} \Rightarrow 3 \Rightarrow \text{PRG} \Rightarrow \text{LIST} \Rightarrow \text{LIST}
\]

7. Compute the coefficients of the hyperbola:

\[
\text{VAR} \Rightarrow \text{then} \Rightarrow \text{NXT} \Rightarrow \text{or} \Rightarrow \text{PREV} \Rightarrow \text{as needed} \Rightarrow \text{HYPER}
\]

Result: \[
\{ .69 \ 0 \ -1 \ -22.42 \ 0 \ 120.89 \}
\]

Then multiplying through by 100 to make the coefficients all integers gives the hyperbola \( 69x^2 - 100y^2 - 2242x + 12089 = 0 \).
Points of Intersection

A line and a conic that share the same plane have one of three possible relationships:

- The line intersects the conic in two points.
- The line is tangent to the conic—intersecting it in one point.
- The line doesn’t intersect the conic at all.

The program \( \text{LCON} \) (see page 285) determines the point(s) of intersection, if any, of a conic and a line. It takes the conic as a list of its general-form coefficients from level 2 and the line in slope-intercept form from level 1 and returns a list to level 1. The result list will have two, one, or zero points (expressed as complex numbers), depending upon the relationship of line and conic.

The following examples illustrate the use of \( \text{LCON} \) with a variety of conics:

**Example:** Find the points, if any, where the line \( y = 4x - 2 \) intersects the circle \( x^2 + y^2 - 25 = 0 \).

1. Enter the circle in general form (as a list of coefficients): \[ \\
\end{array} \]

2. Enter the line: \[ \\
\end{array} \]

3. Find the points of intersection, if they exist, by using \( \text{LCON} \): \[ \\
\end{array} \]

Result: \[ \\
\end{array} \]

The line is a secant—intersecting the circle at the two points whose coordinates are listed on level 1.
Example: Find the points of intersection, if any, of the line \( y = x - 4 \) and the ellipse \( 16x^2 - 4xy + 9y^2 - 64x + 54y - 26 = 0 \).

1. Enter the conic as a list of coefficients: \( \{1, 6, SPC, 4, +/- \} \) \( \{9, SPC, 6, 4, +/- \} \) \( \{5, SPC, 2, 6, +/- \} \) \( \{ENTER\} \).
2. Enter the line: \( \{0, \alpha \} \) \( \{Y \} \) \( \{=\} \) \( \{\alpha \} \) \( \{X \} \) \( \{-\} \) \( \{4\} \) \( \{ENTER\} \).
3. Execute LCON?: \( \text{VAR} \) (then \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{LCON} \).

Result: \( \{ (-1.0999109, -5.099910) \)
\( (4.242768, .242768) \} \)

Example: Find the points of intersection, if any, of the line \( y = x - 4 \) and the parabola \( 9y^2 - 64x + 54y - 26 = 0 \).

1. Enter the conic as a list of coefficients: \( \{0, 0, SPC, 9, SPC \} \) \( \{6, 4, +/- \} \) \( \{5, 4, SPC, 2, 6, +/- \} \) \( \{ENTER\} \).
2. Enter the line: \( \{0, \alpha \} \) \( \{Y \} \) \( \{=\} \) \( \{\alpha \} \) \( \{X \} \) \( \{-\} \) \( \{4\} \) \( \{ENTER\} \).
3. Execute LCON?: \( \text{VAR} \) (then \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{LCON} \).

Result: \( \{ (-1.06956, -5.06956) \)
\( (10.18068, 6.18068) \} \)

Example: Find the points of intersection, if any, of the line \( y = x - 4 \) and the hyperbola \( 16x^2 - 4xy - 9y^2 - 64x + 54y - 26 = 0 \).

1. Enter the conic as a list of coefficients: \( \{1, 6, SPC, 4, +/- \} \) \( \{9, +/- \} \) \( \{6, 4, +/- \} \) \( \{5, 4, SPC, 2, 6, +/- \} \) \( \{ENTER\} \).
2. Enter the line: \( \{0, \alpha \} \) \( \{Y \} \) \( \{=\} \) \( \{\alpha \} \) \( \{X \} \) \( \{-\} \) \( \{4\} \) \( \{ENTER\} \).
3. Execute LCON?: \( \text{VAR} \) (then \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{LCON} \).

Result: \( \{ (-30.253019, -34.253019) \)
\( (4.253019, .253019) \} \)
**Tangents and Normals**

Often it is useful to compute the equation of the line that is tangent to a given conic at a given point. Or perhaps it is the equation of the normal—the line perpendicular to the tangent—at the given point that you require. The relationship between tangent and normal is illustrated here with a circle:

![Diagram showing tangent and normal to a circle](image)

The program, **TNCON** (see page 314) computes the equations of the normal and tangent lines at a given point on a given conic. **TNCON** accepts any conic in coordinate list form from level 2 and a point on the conic (as a complex number) from level 1 and returns labelled equations for the tangent and normal. Note that **TNCON** does not check to be sure that the given point actually lies on the conic and will give unreliable results if it doesn’t.

The following examples involve tangents and normals of conics. Many, but not all, illustrate the use of **TNCON**.

**Example:** On the circle $4x^2 + 4y^2 - 3x - 6y - 17 = 0$, find equation of the tangent line through the point (-1,-1).

1. Enter the circle as a list of coefficients: \[ \{3\} \{4\} SP C \{0\} SP C \{4\} SP C \{3\} + / - SP C \{6\} + / - SP C \{1\} 7 + / - \text{ENTER} \).
2. Enter the point on the circle: \[ \{1\} \{1\} + / - \text{SPC} \{1\} + / - \text{SPC} \{1\} - / - \text{SPC} \{1\} \text{ENTER} \).
3. Execute **TNCON**: \[ \{\text{VAR}\} \text{then } \{\text{NXT}\} \text{ or } \{\text{PREV}\} \text{ as needed}\].

Result: 2: Normal: \[ 'y = 0.27273 + 1.27273 x' \]
1: Tangent: \[ 'y = -1.78571 - 0.78571 x' \]

Applying \( \times Q \) to the tangent equation gives \( y = \frac{-25}{14} - \frac{11}{14} x \).
Conversely, you may also find the equation of a circle if you know the location of its center and a tangent. The only missing piece of information is the radius—which is nothing more than the distance from the center point to the tangent line.

**Example:** Find equation of circle centered at (-1, 1) that is tangent to the line, \(x + 2y - 4 = 0\).

1. Enter the center, make a copy, and convert it to a vector: \([-1, 1]\) \(\rightarrow\) \(\text{CMPLX} \rightarrow \text{R} \rightarrow \text{MTH} \rightarrow \text{VECTR} \rightarrow \sqrt{2}\). (Caution: If flag -19 is set, \(\sqrt{2}\) gives a complex number.)

2. Enter the line; convert to array form: \(\{1, 2, -4\}\) \(\rightarrow\) \(\text{VAR}\) \((\text{NXT} \text{ or } \text{PREV} \text{ as needed})\) \(\text{GTOL}\). Result: \(1.341640786\)

3. Find the distance to the line, using \(d = \frac{|ax_0 + by_0 + c|}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}\) \((\text{see page 189 in Chapter 6})\). \((\text{NXT} \text{ or } \text{PREV} \text{ as needed})\) \(\text{MTOL}\). Result: \(1.24164\)

4. Convert to a general equation for the circle—and clear any fractional coefficients—via multiplication (use \(\text{NXT} \text{ or } \text{PREV} \text{ as needed})\): \(\text{CIRG} \rightarrow \text{NUM} \rightarrow \text{PRG} \rightarrow \text{LIST}\). Result: \(\{5, 0, 5, 10, -10, 1\}\)

**Example:** Find equation of the normal to the circle with a center at (2,-1) at the point (-1,3). Then find the equation of the circle itself.

1. For a circle, note that the normal of any point is a line containing both the point and the center of the circle. This fact allows you to compute the slope of the normal, which is the slope of the line containing the points given: \(\{2, -1, -1, 3\}\) \(\rightarrow\) \(\text{MTOL}\) \(\rightarrow\) \(\text{VECTR}\) \(\rightarrow\) \(\text{SWAP}\). Result: \(-1.333333333\)

2. Compute the intercept of the normal: \(1\) \(\rightarrow\) \(\text{SWAP}\) \(2\) \(\rightarrow\) \(\text{X}\). Result: \(1.666666666\). Thus the normal is \(y = -\frac{4}{3}x + \frac{5}{3}\).  

3. Compute the radius of the circle by finding the absolute value of the difference between the position vectors of the center of the circle and the given point. Swap the copy of the difference vector into level 1 and find its length: \(\text{SWAP} \rightarrow \text{MTH} \rightarrow \text{VECTR} \rightarrow \text{ABS}\). Result: 5
4. Via the circle center, find its equation: \( (x - 1)^2 + (y + 2)^2 = 1^2 + 2^2 = 5 \).

Thus, the equation of the circle is \( x^2 + y^2 - 4x + 2y - 20 = 0 \).

**Example:** Compute the equations of the lines normal and tangent to the ellipse \( 16x^2 - 4xy + 9y^2 - 64x + 54y - 26 = 0 \), at the point where \( x = 1 \) and \( y \) is positive.

1. Enter the symbolic ellipse:

\[
\begin{align*}
16x^2 - 4xy + 9y^2 - 64x + 54y - 26 &= 0 \\
\text{Result: } x &= 1 \\
\text{Y} &= \text{positive} \\
\end{align*}
\]

2. Store 1 into \( 'x' \) and solve for \( 'y' \):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Result: } y &= 1.21449871627 \\
\end{align*}
\]

3. Convert the previous result into a complex number representing the point of tangency:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Result: } (1, 1.21449871627) \\
\end{align*}
\]

4. Enter the ellipse as a list of coefficients:

\[
\begin{align*}
16 \quad -4 \quad 9 \quad 64 \quad 54 \quad -26 \\
\text{Result: } \text{Tangent: } \quad y &= 0.7016 + 0.5129 \times x \\
\text{Normal: } \quad y &= 3.1642 - 1.9497 \times x \\
\end{align*}
\]

**Example:** Find the equations of the lines normal and tangent to the parabola \( 9y^2 - 64x + 54y - 26 = 0 \), at the point where \( x = 1 \) and \( y \) is positive.

1. Compute the y-coordinate of the point of tangency:

\[
\begin{align*}
y &= \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a} \\
\text{Result: } y &= 1.35889894354 \\
\end{align*}
\]

2. Convert the previous result into a complex number representing the point of tangency:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Result: } (1, 1.35889894354) \\
\end{align*}
\]

3. Enter the parabola as a list of coefficients:

\[
\begin{align*}
0 \quad 0 \quad 9 \quad 64 \quad 54 \quad -26 \\
\text{Result: } \text{Tangent: } \quad y &= 0.7016 + 0.5129 \times x \\
\text{Normal: } \quad y &= 3.1642 - 1.9497 \times x \\
\end{align*}
\]

*Lines and Conics* 269
4. Compute the tangent and normal to the parabola at the given point: \( \text{SWAP VAR} \) (then \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \leftarrow \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{TNCD} \).

Result (4 places): 
1: Tangent: \( 'y=0.5432+0.8157*x' \)
2: Normal: \( 'y=2.5848-1.2259*x' \)

Example: Find the equations of the lines normal and tangent to the hyperbola \( 16x^2 - 9y^2 - 64x + 54y - 26 = 0 \), at the point where \( x = 2 \) and \( y \) is positive.

1. Compute the \( y \)-coordinate of the point of tangency:

\[
\begin{align*}
& \leftarrow X \ Y^2 \ 2 \ -9 \ X \ \alpha \ \leftarrow Y \ Y^2 \ 2 \ -64 \ X \ \alpha \ \leftarrow X \ + \ 54 \ X \\
& \alpha \ \leftarrow Y \ -26 \ \text{ENTER} \ 2 \ \alpha \ \leftarrow X \ \text{STO} \ \alpha \ \leftarrow Y \ \text{ENTER} \ 10 \\
& \leftarrow \text{SOLVE} \ \text{ROOT} \ \text{ROOT}.
\end{align*}
\]
Result: \( 3.00000000001 \)

2. Convert the previous result into a complex number representing the point of tangency: \( 2 \ \text{ENTER} \ \text{SWAP} \ \text{MTH} \ \text{NXT} \ \text{CMPL} \ \text{R+C} \).

3. Enter the hyperbola as a list of coefficients:

\[ \langle 16 \ \text{SPC} \ 0 \ \text{SPC} \ 9 \ \text{SPC} \ 16 \ \text{SPC} \ 54 \ \text{SPC} \ 26 \ \text{ENTER} \].

4. Compute the tangent and normal to the hyperbola at the given point: \( \text{SWAP VAR} \) (then \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \leftarrow \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{TNCD} \).

Result (to 3 places):

2: Normal: \( 'y=1.000E500-1.000E500*x' \)
1: Tangent: \( 'y=3.000' \)

Note that the tangent is a horizontal line, so the normal is a vertical line (i.e. with an equation such as \( x = \text{constant} \)). The line reported by the \( \text{TNCON} \) program here is one method the HP 48 uses to report a vertical line as the result of a computation.
Translating and Rotating Conics

There are occasions where you may wish to rotate or translate a conic. The three programs, ROTCON, C-STD and TRNCON, make it easy to do this.

**ROTCON** (see page 299) takes a conic as a list of general-form coefficients from level 2 and an angle of rotation from level 1. Be sure to match the angle on level 1 with the current angle mode. **ROTCON** returns a list of coefficients for the transformed conic.

**Example:** Rotate the conic \(9x^2 + 4y^2 + 36x - 8y + 4 = 0\) through an angle of 50°, and plot the result.

1. Enter the conic as a list of coefficients: \(\begin{array}{c}9 \\ 0 \\ 4 \\ 3 \\ 6 \\ 8 \\ 4 \end{array}\) \(\text{ENTER}\).

2. Make sure that you’re in degree mode (press \(\text{RAD}\), if necessary) and then enter the angle: \(50\) \(\text{ENTER}\).

3. Execute **ROTCON**: \(\text{VAR}\) (then \(\text{NXT}\) or \(\text{PREV}\) as needed) \(\text{ROTCO}\).

   **Result** (to 6 places): \(\begin{array}{c} \approx 0.874787 \\ 0.710117 \\ 1 \\ 4.220969 \\ 3.235493 \\ 0.576858 \end{array}\)

4. Plot the rotated conic: \(\text{VAR}\) (\(\text{NXT}\) or \(\text{PREV}\) as needed) \(\text{COMPL}\).
**Example:** Using the program \( C \rightarrow STD \) (see page 280 for the listing), rotate the conic \( 9x^2 - 6xy - 4y^2 + 36x - 8y + 4 = 0 \) to standard orientation, and plot the result.

1. Enter the conic as a list of coefficients: \( \text{CANCEL} \leftarrow \{ 1 \} 9 \text{ SP} \{ 8 \} +/\text{ SP} \{ 4 \} +/\text{ SP} \{ 3 \} 6 \text{ SP} \{ 8 \} +/\text{ SP} \{ 4 \} \text{ ENTER} \).
2. Convert the conic to standard orientation: \( \text{VAR} \) (\( \text{NXT} \) or \( \leftarrow \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{C} \rightarrow \text{ST} \).

   Result: \( \{ 9.6589 \ 0 \ -4.6589 \ 36.8781 \ -0.0909 \ 4 \} \)
3. Plot the rotated conic: \( \text{VAR} \) (\( \text{NXT} \) or \( \leftarrow \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{CONP} \).

**TRNCON** (see page 316) takes a conic as a list of general-form coefficients from level 2 and a two-dimensional translation vector from level 1, returning a list of coefficients for the translated conic.

**Example:** Translate the conic \( x^2 - 2y + 8x + 10 = 0 \) along the vector \( [3 \ -4] \).

1. Enter the conic as a list of coefficients: \( \text{CANCEL} \leftarrow \{ 1 \} 1 \text{ SP} \{ 0 \} \text{ SP} \{ 8 \} \text{ SP} \{ 2 \} +/- \text{ SP} \{ 1 \} 0 \text{ ENTER} \).
2. Enter the translation vector: \( \leftarrow \{ 1 \} 3 \text{ SP} \{ 4 \} +/- \text{ ENTER} \).
3. Translate the conic: \( \text{VAR} \) (then \( \text{NXT} \) or \( \leftarrow \text{PREV} \) as needed) \( \text{TRNC} \).

   Result: \( \{ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 2 \ -2 \ -13 \} \)
4. Plot the translated conic: \( \text{VAR} \) (\( \text{NXT} \) or \( \leftarrow \text{PREV} \) if needed) \( \text{CONP} \).
Example: Translate the conic \(3x^2 + 3y^2 + 6x - 1 = 0\) so that it is centered on the origin.

1. Enter the conic as a list of coefficients and then make an extra copy:
   \[
   \text{CANCEL} \quad \begin{array}{c}
   1 \\
   3 \\
   0 \\
   3 \\
   6 \\
   0 \\
   1
   \end{array} \quad \text{SPC} \quad \begin{array}{c}
   1 \\
   0
   \end{array} \quad \text{SPC} \quad \begin{array}{c}
   6
   \end{array} \quad \text{SPC} \quad \begin{array}{c}
   0
   \end{array} \quad \text{SPC} \quad \text{ENTER} \quad \text{ENTER}.
   \]

2. Note that the conic is a circle \((A = C)\). Find the center: \(\text{VAR} (\text{NXT})\) or \(\leftarrow \text{PREV}\) as needed) \(\text{GDCDF} \leftarrow\). Result: \((-1, 0)\)

3. Take the negative of the center and make it a translation vector:
   \[
   \text{MTH} \quad \text{NXT} \quad \text{CMPL} \quad \text{CMPL} \quad \text{MTH} \quad \text{VECTR} \quad \text{VECTR} \quad \text{V2}
   \]
   Result: \(\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}\)
   (Caution: If flag -19 is set, \(\pm \sqrt{2}\) gives a complex number.)

4. Translate the conic: \(\text{VAR}\) (then \(\text{NXT}\) or \(\leftarrow \text{PREV}\) as needed) \(\text{TRNC}\).
   Result: \(\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 0 \\ 3 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}\)

4. Plot the translated conic: \(\text{VAR}\) (\(\text{NXT}\) or \(\leftarrow \text{PREV}\) if needed) \(\text{COMP}\).
Before You Key In or Use These Programs

This Appendix contains a listing of all of the programs referred to throughout this book, sorted alphabetically by name (numerals after letters and special symbols ignored), with text page references noted opposite the name. To use a program by invoking its name, you must have it properly stored—in that name—within the current directory path. (*Note:* If you have an HP 48G, you won’t be able to fit all of these programs into the 32K storage at once; you’ll need to pick and choose.)

As with all HP 48 variables, you must be careful to avoid name conflicts with other variables in the current directory path. One suggestion: Put the programs into a subdirectory, then create a work space below that, with custom menus to help you organize and access the programs (for more about custom menus, see your user’s manual or Grapevine Publications’ *Easy Course in Using and Programming the HP 48G/GX*). This lets you work efficiently without corrupting your programs:

\[
\begin{align*}
\{ \text{HOME} \} & \quad \text{ALG} \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\
\{ \text{HOME ALG} \} & \quad \text{WRK} \quad \text{APOLY} \quad \text{A>Q} \quad \text{CIR>Q} \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\
\{ \text{HOME ALG WRK} \} & \quad \text{CST} \quad \text{MEN1} \quad \text{MEN2} \quad \text{x} \quad \text{y} \quad \ldots
\end{align*}
\]

If you have a bit of programming aptitude, the programs can be modified to suit your tastes and/or needs. Most of them have not been rigorously groomed for error-trapping, speed, or memory efficiency; they are designed simply to work
well with the examples in this course and with related work. Also, you may wish to modify the input or output of the programs. For example, geometric points may be expressed as either complex numbers or as two-element vectors, depending on the context in which you’re working.

Whether you use these programs as is or otherwise, above all you should practice using them before needing them in an important situation. You must understand how they work, how fast are they, how to interpret their outputs, and the nature of their limitations (special cases of functions or flag settings).

Of course, each program is designed to work flawlessly, but bugs (and typos) are, unfortunately, facts of life with software and other creative works. If you have a problem with a program, you may contact the publisher, but first, check again:

- **Have you correctly entered the program(s)?** Some items to check:

  The program size (bytes) and checksum must match those shown. For example, the program `APOLY`, shown on the next page, must have exactly 500 bytes, with a checksum of `#7AE3h`. To calculate these test numbers, enter and name (i.e. store) the program. Then put its name (within ‘ ‘ marks) onto the stack and press `MEMORY BITES`.

  If your byte-count/checksum results are different than those prescribed, you have a typo somewhere in your program. Common errors include:

  - Using uppercase vs. lowercase letters (yes, this is significant);
  - Miskeying special characters (use the `CHARS` tool);
  - `STD` vs. `STO`, `1` vs. `0`, `;` vs. `,`, `{}` vs. `()`. Be careful!
  - Using `''` vs. `"`. Quotes (`"`) are on the `=)` key—don’t use `(').
  - Putting spaces (or carriage returns) where they should not be. Space characters within `" "` are significant—count ’em if necessary (the uniform spacing of the program font makes this easy); all other indents, line breaks, etc., represent *single spaces*. These program listings are shown with indents and line breaks for your eyes only; the calculator does not use them. To it, a program is simply a series of objects, separated by single spaces, all on one long line; even the indents and line breaks in the HP 48 display when you edit are just

*All checksums are binary integers. Those given in this book are all in HEX notation with a 64-bit wordsize. It is very convenient, therefore, to adjust your machine to that setting: Press `MTH BASE HEX NXT 64 STWS`. 

275
for your benefit. So ignore indents, and where you see line breaks, just treat those as single spaces.

- Some programs use ("call") other programs; the called programs must also be properly keyed in and named. Such instances appear here in **Boldface Italic**. For example, the program APOLY, shown below, calls the program RROOTS, so you must also key in RROOTS before APOLY will run.

- **Are you correctly using the program?** Double-check the types and order of your inputs and the types and ranges of your graph settings. Note that each program listing shows the required order and types of inputs (if any)

---

**APOLY**

Analyze a Polynomial

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>500 bytes</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:</td>
<td>3: number of sign changes for p and -p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:</td>
<td>2: endpoints of range of real roots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1: polynomial</td>
<td>1: polynomial</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```
« D U P S I Z E 1 G E T 0 R O T D U P
    1 n s p q
    1 n f o r j q D U P j G E T - 1 n j ^ * j S W A P P U T ' q ' S T O
    N E X T p q 2 » L I S T 1
    » O B J 1 G E T » L I S T S I G N
    » a b
    » I F a b + 0 == a 0 # A N D
    » T H E N s 1 + ' s ' S T O
    » E N D
    » I F b
    » T H E N b
    » E L S E a
    » E N D
    » S T R E A M D R O P s 0 ' s ' S T O
    » D O L I S T " S i g n s " » T A G p R R O O T S 1
    » I F D U P T Y P E
    » T H E N D R O P
    » E N D
    » D O L I S T
    » I F D U P S I Z E 2 <
    » T H E N D U P 1 G E T +
    » E N D
    » D U P » M I N » S T R E A M F L O O R 1 - S W A P » M A X »
    » S T R E A M C E I L 1 + 2 » L I S T " R a n g e " » T A G p
```
Rationalize an Array

```
211 bytes #5DE2h

1: array ===> 1: symbolic array with rational elements

« RCLF -3 CF SWAP OBJ→ OBJ→ IF 1 == THEN 1 SWAP END 9 FIX + row col « 1 row FOR k 1 col START 8 FIX →Q STD col ROLLD NEXT col →LIST col row k - * k + ROLLD NEXT IF row 1 > THEN row →LIST END SWAP STOF »
```

Convert Circle Parameters to General Form

```
97 bytes #4B7Eh

2: (h,k) ===> 2: {A B C D E F}
1: radius ===> 1: {h k}

« C r « 1 0 1 c -2 * C→R c C→R SQ SWAP SQ + r SQ - 6 →LIST 5 FIX →Q STD »
```

Composite of Two Functions

```
71 bytes #FADDh

3: f ===> 3: f o g
2: g ===> 2: g
1: variable name ===> 1: f o g

« f g v « -3 CF g v STD f EVAL v PURGE »
```

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
### COFACTR

**Find Cofactor Matrix**

1: square matrix \(\Rightarrow\) 1: cofactor matrix

\[
\langle \text{DUP} \ \text{DUP} \ \text{SIZE} \ \text{OBJ}+ \ \text{DROP} \ \\
\quad \to \text{cof} \ m \ r \ c \\
\quad \times 1 \ r \\
\quad \text{FOR} \ i \ 1 \ c \\
\quad \text{FOR} \ j \ m \ i \ j \ 3 \ \text{ROLLD} \ \text{ROW}+ \ \text{DROP} \ \text{SWAP} \ \text{COL}+ \ \text{DROP} \ \text{DET} \\
\quad \text{-1} \ i \ j \ + \ ^{\wedge} \ * \ 1 \ \to\text{ARRY} \ \text{cof} \ i \ j \ 2 \ \to\text{LIST} \ \text{ROT} \ \text{REPL} \\
\quad \text{} \text{'cof'} \ \text{STO} \\
\quad \text{NEXT} \\
\quad \text{NEXT} \ \text{cof} \\
\quad \text{»}
\]

### COLIN?

**Test for Collinearity of Point and Line**

1: point (in vector form) \(\Rightarrow\) 2: 1 if collinear; 0 if not

\[
\langle 3 \ \text{ROW}+ \\
\quad \text{IF} \ \text{DUP} \ \text{SIZE} \ 2 \ \text{GET} \ 2 = \\
\quad \text{THEN} \ [ \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 ] \ 3 \ \text{COL}+ \\
\quad \text{END} \ \to\text{ROW} \ \text{DROP} \\
\quad \text{\textbf{-P1 P2 P3}} \\
\quad \text{\textbf{-P1 P2 - DUP ABS}} \\
\quad \text{\textbf{-P1 P3 - DUP ABS ROT *}} \\
\quad \text{3} \ \text{ROLLD} \ \text{DOT} \ \text{ABS} \\
\quad \text{==} \\
\quad \text{»}
\]

### COMPLT

**Plot Conic From General Form**

1: \(\{A B C D E F\}\) \(\Rightarrow\) 1:

\[
\langle -3 \ \text{CF} \ \{ \ \text{PICT} \ \text{PPAR} \ \} \ \text{PURGE} \ \text{DUP} \ \text{OBJ}+ \ \text{DROP} \\
\quad \text{\textbf{-con a b c d e f}} \\
\quad \times \ \text{IF} \ b \\
\quad \text{THEN} \ b \ a \ c - / \ \text{ATAN} \ 2 / \\
\quad \text{ELSE} \ 0 \\
\quad \text{END} \\
\quad \times \ \alpha \\
\quad \times \ \alpha \ \text{COS SQ a} * \ \alpha \ \text{COS SQ b} + \ * \ + \ \alpha \ \text{SIN SQ c} + \ + \\
\quad \ \alpha \ \text{SIN SQ a} * \ \alpha \ \text{SIN SQ b} * \ + \ - \ \alpha \ \text{COS SQ c} + \ + \\
\quad \ \alpha \ \text{COS d} * \ \alpha \ \text{SIN e} * \ + \ \alpha \ \text{COS e} * \ \alpha \ \text{SIN d} * - \\
\]

P. Program Listings
\[ \text{Apply Cramer's Rule (152)} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>249 bytes</th>
<th>#6D08h</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2: augmented matrix</td>
<td>2: list of Cramer determinants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1: list of variables</td>
<td>( \Rightarrow ) 1: list of solutions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[ \begin{pmatrix}
  a & c & b & d \\
  v & w & x & y \\
  \end{pmatrix} \]

**Cramer**

\[ \text{Then} \quad \text{"Ill-conditioned Matrix" DOERR} \]

\[ \text{ELSE } 1 \text{ c 1 -} \]

\[ \text{FOR k a k COL- DROP b k COL+ DET} \]

\[ \text{NEXT c 1 - \rightarrow LIST DUP d / v \rightarrow TAG d ROT + SWAP} \]

\[ \text{END} \]

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
C>STD

Rotate Conic to Standard Orientation

371 bytes #E8A5h

« OBJ DROP
  " a b c d e f
  " b a c -
  IF DUP
  THEN / ATAN 2 /
  ELSE DROP2 0
  END
  " a 0 COS SQ * b 0 COS 0 SIN * * + c 0 SIN SQ * +
  0 a 0 SIN SQ * b 0 SIN 0 COS * * - c 0 COS SQ * +
  " d 0 COS * e 0 SIN * * e 0 COS * d 0 SIN * - f
  " + LIST
  1 « IF DUP 8 RND 0 == THEN DROP 0 END » DOLIST
»
»

DMTRC

Create Dimetric Projection

326.5 bytes # EE5h

« f
  " DEG 'TAN(θ)^2+sin(θ)^2-TAN(θ)^2*SIN(θ)^2=f^2' 'θ' 20
  ROOT
  " th SIN SQ DUP 1 SWAP - / ∫ ASIN
  " ph COS th SIN ph SIN * ph SIN th COS * NEG 0
  0 th COS th SIN 0 ph SIN ph COS th SIN * NEG
  " ph COS th COS * 0 0 0 1 { 4 4 } »ARRY
»
»

DptoL

Find Distance from Point to a Line

83 bytes #C733h

« →ROW DROP OVER -
  " q p d
  « q p - d CROSS ABS d ABS /
  »
»
**ELP→G**  
Convert Ellipse Parameters to General Form  
(255)

195 bytes  
#9141h

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2: ((h, k))</th>
<th>2:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1: ({a, b, \theta})</td>
<td>1: ({A, B, C, D, E, F})</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{SWAP} & \rightarrow \text{ROT} \rightarrow \text{OBJ} \rightarrow \text{DROP} \\
& \rightarrow h \ k \ a \ b \ \theta \\
& \left< b \ \text{SQ} \ 0 \ a \ \text{SQ} \ h \ b \ \text{SQ} \ * \ 2 \ * \ \text{NEG} \ a \ \text{SQ} \ * \ 2 \ * \ \text{NEG} \ h \ \text{SQ} \\
& \quad b \ \text{SQ} \ * \ k \ \text{SQ} \ a \ \text{SQ} \ * \ + \ a \ \text{SQ} \ b \ \text{SQ} \ * \ - \ 6 \ \text{⇒} \ \text{LIST} \ \emptyset \ \text{ROTCON} \\
\end{align*}
\]

**FINV**  
Function Inverse  
(23)

168.5 bytes  
#FC6Eh

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2: function</th>
<th>2:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1: variable name</td>
<td>1: modified array</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{RCLF} & \rightarrow f \ v \ \text{flags} \\
& \left< -3 \ \text{CF} \ v \ \text{PGALL} \ \text{↑} \ \text{PGALL} \ f \ \text{↑↓} = v \ \text{ISOL} \ v \ \text{↑↓} \ \\
& \quad \text{STO} \ \text{EVAL} \ \text{OBJ} \rightarrow \ \text{DROP2} \ \text{SWAP} \ \text{DROP} \ \text{v} \ \text{PURGE} \ \text{↑↓} \ \text{PURGE} \\
& \quad \text{flags} \ \text{STOF} \\
\end{align*}
\]

**FMPLT**  
Family Plot  
(10)

1185.5 bytes  
#9D0Fh

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1:</th>
<th>1:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{RCLF} & \rightarrow \text{flags} \\
& \left< \{-3 \ -55 \} \ \text{CF} \ \text{FUNCTION} \ .1 \ \text{RES} \ \text{RAD} \\
& \quad \text{IFERR} \ \text{RCEQ} \\
& \quad \text{THEN} \ \{ \ \text{NOVAL} \ \} \\
& \quad \text{END} \ \text{PPAR} \ \text{DUP} \ 3 \ \text{GET} \\
& \quad \text{IF} \ \text{DUP} \ \text{TYPE} \ 5 \ \text{==} \\
& \quad \text{THEN} \ 1 \ \text{GET} \\
& \quad \text{END} \ \{ \ \text{NOVAL} \ \text{NOVAL} \ \} \ \text{+} \ \text{ROT} \ \text{SWAP} \ \text{+} \ \text{SWAP} \ \text{DUP} \ 1 \ \text{GET} \ \text{RE} \\
& \quad \text{SWAP} \ 2 \ \text{GET} \ \text{RE} \ 2 \ \text{⇒} \ \text{LIST} \ + \\
& \quad \text{flags} \\
& \quad \text{WHILE} \ "\text{FAMILY PLOT}" \ \{ \ \{ \ \text{EQ} \: \ "\text{ENTER THE FUNCTION}" \\
& \quad 8 \ 9 \ \} \ \} \ \{ \ \"\text{INDEP} \: \ "\text{SPECIFY INDEPENDENT} \\
& \quad \text{VARIABLE}" \ 6 \ \} \ \{ \ \"\text{VARY} \: \ "\text{SPECIFY THE VARIABLE TO} \\
& \quad \text{CHANGE}" \ 6 \ \} \ \{ \ \"\text{VALS} \: \ "\text{SPECIFY THE VALUES TO} \\
& \quad \text{USE}" \ 5 \ \} \ \} \ \{ \ \"\text{XMIN} \: \ "\text{ENTER MINIMUM HORIZONTAL} \\
& \quad \text{VALUE}" \ 0 \ \} \ \{ \ \"\text{XMAX} \: \ "\text{ENTER MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL} \\
& \quad \text{VALUE}" \ 0 \ \} \ \{ \ 2 \ 4 \ \} \ \text{flags} \ \text{DUP} \\
& \quad \text{INFORM} \\
& \quad \text{REPEAT} \ \text{DUP} \ '\text{flags}' \ \text{STO} \ \text{REVLIST} \ \text{OBJ} \rightarrow \ \text{DROP} \ \text{DUP} \ \text{STEQ} \\
& \quad 6 \ \text{ROLLD} \ \text{INDEP} \ \text{OVER} \ \text{SIZE} \ \text{MAXR} \ \text{⇒} \ \text{NUM} \ \text{DUP} \ \text{NEG} \ \} \\
\end{align*}
\]

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***  

281
G\(\rightarrow\text{A}\)  
**Convert Line from General to Array Form** (193)

184 bytes \#D264h

| 1: line (general form) | ====> | 1: line (array form) |

\[
\begin{align*}
\{ & -3 -19 \} \ CF \\
\{ & x y \} & 1 \text{ PGALL } \text{ DOLIST} \\
\{ & 1 2 \} & \text{ DUP 1 } \text{ 'x' STO } 'y' & 0 \text{ ROOT } \text{ DOLIST} \\
& +V2 \text{ OBJ } \rightarrow \text{ ROW } \{ & x y \} \text{ PURGE} \\
\end{align*}
\]

**G\(\rightarrow\text{CIR}\)**  
**Find Circle Parameters from General Form** (250)

215 bytes \#9E69h

| 2: \{ ABCDEF \} | ====> | 2: \(h,k\) |

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{OBJ} & \rightarrow \text{ DROP} \\
& a b c d e f \\
& \text{ IF } a \text{ c } \text{ == } b \text{ } 0 \text{ } \text{ == } \text{ AND} \\
& \text{ THEN } d \text{ NEG } a \text{ 2 } \text{ * } \text{ / } e \text{ NEG } a \text{ 2 } \text{ * } \text{ / } \text{ R->C } d \text{ SQ } e \text{ SQ } + \text{ 4 } a \text{ f } \text{ * } \text{ * } - \text{ 4 } a \text{ } \text{ SQ } \text{ * } \text{ / } \sqrt{ } \\
& \text{ ELSE } \text{ "Not a circle" DOERR} \\
& \text{ END} \\
\end{align*}
\]

282  
*P. Program Listings*
Find Ellipse Parameters from General Form

217 bytes

2: 2: (h, k)
1: {ABCDEF} ===> 1: {abθ}

« DUP C>STD OBJ> DROP
  → a b c d e f
  « d a 2 * / NEG e c 2 * / NEG R►C d SQ a 4 * / e SQ c 
    4 * + f - DUP a / ∫ SWAP c / ∫ 4 ROLL OBJ> 4 DROPN
  ROT SWAP - / ATAN 2 / 3 » LIST
»

Find Hyperbola Parameters from General Form

386 bytes

2: 2: (h, k)
1: {ABCDEF} ===> 1: {abθ}

« DUP C>STD OBJ> DROP
  → con a b c d e f
  « d 2 a * / NEG e 2 c * / NEG R►C d SQ * a e SQ * + 
    4 a c f * * * - 4 a c * * / DUP DUP a / ABS ∫ SWAP 
    c / ABS ∫
    IF ROT 0 <
    THEN NEG SWAP NEG END
    DEG_con 2 GET con 1 GET con 3 GET - / ATAN 2 / 3 » LIST
»

Find Parabola Parameters from General Form

433 bytes

2: 2: (h, k)
1: {ABCDEF} ===> 1: {pθ}

« DUP C>STD OBJ> DROP
  → con a b c d e f
  « IF a
    THEN "Not a parabola"
    ELSE d 2 a * / NEG d SQ 4 a f * * * - 4 a e * * /
        R►C e 4 a * / NEG con 2 GET con 1 GET con 3
        GET - / ATAN 2 / 2 » LIST
    END
  ELSE
    IF c
      THEN e SQ 4 c f * * * - 4 c d * * / e 2 c * / NEG
      ELSE
        "Not a parabola"
      END
    END
»

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
HYP→G  Convert Hyperbola Parameters from General Equation  (261)

341 bytes  #1234h

2:  (h,k)  2:
1:  {a b θ}  =====>  1:  {A B C D E F}

« SWAP C→R ROT OBJ→ DROP DEG
  → h k a b θ
  « IF a 0 <
  THEN a SQ 0 b SQ NEG -2 h a SQ * * 2 k b SQ * * b
  SQ k SQ * a SQ h SQ * - a SQ b SQ * - NEG
  ELSE b SQ 0 a SQ NEG 2 h b SQ * * NEG 2 k a SQ * *
  h SQ b SQ * a SQ k SQ * - a SQ b SQ * - END
  6 →LIST θ ROT CON
  »

I→GEN  Convert Line from Slope-Intercept to General Form  (189)

201 bytes  #4BA9h

2:  vector of coefficients  2:
1:  line (slope-intercept form)  =====>  1:  line (general form)

« { -2 -3 } CF
  → i
  « { 0 2 1 } 1 « 'x' STO i 'y' 0 ROOT » DOLIST OBJ→
  DROP - -1 ROT 3 →LIST DUP { x y 1 } OBJ→ DROP + +
  COLCT 0 = SWAP OBJ→ +ARRY SWAP 8 FIX →Q STD { x y }
  PURGE
  »

INPLOT  Plot System of Inequalities  (161)

758 bytes  #D331h

1:  =====>  1:

« -3 CF RCEQ DUP SIZE
  IF DUP 2 <
  THEN DROP2 513 DOERR
  END { } { } PPAR 1 GET C→R PPAR 2 GET C→R OVER 5 PICK -
  PICT SIZE DROP B→R /
→ oldeqns numeqns neweqns pts xmin ymin xmax ymax step
→ oldeqns 1 « OBJ+ DROP2 = » DOLIST DUP 'neweqns' STO
STEO ERASE { # 0h # 0h } PVIEW DRAX DRAW oldeqns DUP
STEO 1 « OBJ+ DROP2 SWAP DROP » DOLIST 'neweqns' STO
xmin xmax
FOR x xmax R+C DUP PIX? DUP2 « PIXOFF » « PIXON »
IFTE x 'X' STO ymin xmax 2 →LIST neweqns 1 « →NUM
→ DOLIST + SORT 'pts' STO 1 numeqns 1 +
FOR n pts n n 1 + SUB OBJ+ DROP DUP2 + 2 / 'Y'
STO
IF 1 1 numeqns
FOR m oldeqns m GET →NUM AND
NEXT
THEN × SWAP R+C × ROT R+C LINE
ELSE DROP2
END
NEXT « PIXOFF » « PIXON » IFTE step
STEO PICTURE

ISMTRC
Create Isometric Projection
207.5 bytes

LCON?
Find Intersection of Line and Conic
887 bytes

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
GET 'MARKER' STO DEPTH 'depth' STO RCLF 'flags' STO -3 CF
"LINEAR PROGRAMMING" { { "OBJECTIVE:" "ENTER OBJECTIVE
FUNCTION" 9 } { "CONSTRAINTS:" "ENTER LIST OF ALG.
CONSTRAINTS" 5 } { "VARS:" "ENTER LIST OF INDEP.
VARIABLES" 5 } { "MAX OR MIN?" "COMPUTE MAX OR MIN OF
OBJECTIVE?" 2 } } { 1 2 } { NOVAL NOVAL NOVAL "MAX" }
INFORM
IF
THEN CLLCD "Solving . . ." 3 DISP 5 CF OBJ¬ DROP
IF "MIN" SAME
THEN 5 SF
END DUP SIZE ROT DUP SIZE { } DUP DUP DUP 'last' STO
'nvars' STO 'bvars' STO
+ of vars n constr m eqns
* 1 n
FOR i nvars i + 'nvars' STO
NEXT 1 m
FOR k bvars k n + + 'bvars' STO constr k GET OBJ¬
{ < ≤ = ≥ > } SWAP POS
IF DUP { 4 5 } SWAP POS

LINPRG  Linear Programming  (164)

286 P. Program Listings
THEN DROP2 = -1 * eqns SWAP + 'eqns' STO
ELSE
    IF { 1 2 } SWAP POS
    THEN DROP
    ELSE DROP bvars k 0 PUT 'bvars' STO
    END = eqns SWAP + 'eqns' STO
END
NEXT eqns of
IF 5 FS?
THEN -1 *
END + 'eqns' STO 1 n
FOR k 0 vars k GET STO
NEXT eqns OBJ+ 1 SWAP
START m 1 + ROLL ->NUM
NEXT m 1 + ->ARRY NEG
m b
< 1 n
FOR j m 1 + ROLL ->NUM b j GET +
NEXT 0 vars k GET STO
NEXT n m 1 + 2 ->LIST ->ARRY TRN b n 1 + COL+ 'a' STO
DO m n bvars nvars a PHASE\ m n bvars nvars a 1
SIMPLEX
UNTIL a DUP SIZE 2 GET COL- SWAP DROP OBJ+ 1
GET ->LIST 1 bvars SIZE SUB SIGN -1 POS 0 ==
1 FS? OR
END
IF 1 FS?C
THEN 5 DROPN bvars a "No feasible solution exists" DUP MSGBOX
ELSE
    IF a m 1 + ROW- SWAP DROP OBJ+ 1 GET ->LIST 1
    nvars SIZE SUB 0 POS
    THEN 5 ROLLD 4 DROPN bvars SWAP "Solution is
    unbounded" DUP MSGBOX
    ELSE 5 DROPN a nvars SIZE 1 + COL- SWAP DROP
    'solns' STO 1 vars SIZE
    FOR k
        IF nvars k GET DUPS vars SIZE ≤ SWAP 0
        THEN 0 vars nvars k GET GET STO
        END
    NEXT 1 bvars SIZE
    FOR k
        IF bvars k GET DUPS vars SIZE ≤ SWAP 0
        THEN solns k GET vars bvars k GET GET STO
        END
    NEXT DEPTH depth - DROPN bvars a vars DUP
    EVAL n ->LIST SWAP ->TAG "Solution found"
    MSGBOX
    END
    END
END flags STOF VARS DUP 'MARKER' POS 1 SWAP SUB PURGE

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
Determine Relationship of 2 Lines (200)

LPL+P  Find Intersection Point of Line and Plane (211)

P. Program Listings
LTRIM  Trim Zeroes from Left of Array  (289)

135.5 bytes  #200Ah

1: array ===> 1: trimmed array

```
« DUPS RNRM
IF .00001 <
THEN DROP 0 1 →ARRY
ELSE OBJ> 1 GET 1 +
WHILE DUPS ROLL DUPS ABS .00001 <
REPEAT DROP 1 -
END OVER ROLLD 1 - →ARRY
END
»
```

NRMLZ  Normalize Object Array after Transformation  (234)

119.5 bytes  #4D6Dh

1: object array ===> 1: normalized object array

```
« [UP SIZE OBJ> DROP
→ a m n
« 1 m
FOR i a DUP { i n } GET INV i RCI 'a' STO
NEXT a
»

»
```

PADD  Polynomial Addition  (109)

172.5 bytes  #64CBh

2: polynomial 1 2: polynomial 2
1: polynomial 2 ===> 1: P1 + P2

```
« RCLF 3 ROLLD -55 CF
IFERR +
THEN OVER SIZE 1 GET OVER SIZE 1 GET -
IF DUP 0 <
THEN ABS ROT SWAP
END
→ a d
« 1 d
START 0
NEXT a OBJ> 1 GET d + →ARRY +
»
END
LTRIM SWAP STOF
»

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
**PAR→I** Convert Line (2D) from Parametric to Slope-Intercept Form (193)

167 bytes #35F5h

1: list of parametric eqns of line (2D) ===> 1: line (slope-intercept form)

```plaintext
« RCLF -3 CF SWAP
IF DUP SIZE 2 ≠
THEN DROP 515 DOERR ELSE 9 FIX 1
' t ' ISOL COLCT OBJ→ DROP2 SWAP DROP EXPAN EXPAN COLCT
DOLIST OBJ→ DROP = ' y ' ISOL EXPAN EXPAN COLCT →Q
END SWAP STOF
»
```

**PBL→G** Convert Parabola Parameters to General Form (260)

134 bytes #07B9h

2: (h,k) 2: 1: {pΘ} ===> 1: {ABCDEF}

```plaintext
« SWAP C→R ROT OBJ→ DROP
h k p Θ
0 0 1 p 4 * NEG k 2 * NEG k SQ 4 p h * * + 6 →LIST
Θ ROTCON
»
```

**PCONV** Convert to Polynomial Form (133)

682.5 bytes #27D6h

2: array 2: 1: program ===> 1: modified array

```plaintext
« -3 CF { [ 0 ] [ 1 ] } { N D } STO COLCT →RPN DUP SIZE
⇒ n d
N d PMULT D n PMULT 'OP' EVAL 'N' STO D d PMULT 'O' STO
⇒ p n + pdiv
⇒ 1 n
FOR k ' p ' k GET
IF DUP TYPE THEN
IF DUP TYPE { 6 ? } SWAP POS
THEN DROP [ 1 0 ] 1 →LIST
ELSE { + - * ^ NEG DEC } SWAP POS
IF DUP THEN { PADD PSUB PMULT PPPOWER PSUB
⇒ EVAL DUP DROP » ) SWAP GET 1 →LIST
ELSE DROP p k 1 + GET { + - } SWAP POS

```

290  

P. Program Listings
{ PADD PSUB } SWAP GET 'OP' STO
{ +pdiv DEC }

END
END
ELSE 1  ARRY 1  LIST
END p k ROT REPL 'p' STO
NEXT p EVAL D PMULT N PADD D { OP N D } PURGE

PDIVIDE

Polynomial Division

351 bytes

4: quotient array
3: numerator of remainder
2: denominator of remainder
1: symbolic result

< LTRIM DUP OBJ> OBJ> DROP >LIST ROT LTRIM OBJ> OBJ> DROP
>LIST SWAP DUP2 SIZE SWAP SIZE
IF OVER - DUP 0 <
THEN
  3 DROPN [ ] 3 ROLLD OBJ> ARRY SWAP OBJ> ARRY SWAP
ELSE SWAP ROT DUP 1 GET
  n p2 t
  < { } 3 ROLLD 0 SWAP
  START DUP 1 GET t / ROT OVER + 3 ROLLD 1 n
  FOR d
  OVER d GET p2 d GET 3 PICK * - ROT d
  ROT PUT SWAP
  NEXT DROP 2 OVER SIZE MIN 1E499 SUB
  NEXT
  SWAP OBJ> ARRY SWAP OBJ> ARRY ROT
END REMNOR

PD→P

Convert Line from Position-Direction to Parametric Form

184.5 bytes

2: position vector of line
1: direction vector of line
2: list of parametric eqns of line

< -3 CF DUP SIZE 1 GET
  p v n
  < IF n 2 >
  THEN { x y z }
  ELSE { x y }
  END OBJ> 1 GET >LIST 1 n
  START 't'
  NEXT n >LIST * p OBJ> 1 GET >LIST ADD = 9 FIX →Q STD

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
Create Perspective Projection

153 bytes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:</td>
<td>object array</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:</td>
<td>translation vector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:</td>
<td>eyepoint vector</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translated Code:

```plaintext
\[ \begin{align*}
&\quad \text{\texttt{DUP ABS}} \\
&\quad \text{\texttt{a t c d}} \\
&\quad \text{\texttt{c 1 GET d / ASIN c 2 GET NEG d / ASIN c 3 GET NEG t}} \\
&\quad \text{\texttt{OBJ\texttt{\_DROP}}}
\end{align*} \]
```

Purge Variable in Path

92 bytes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:</td>
<td>variable name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translated Code:

```plaintext
\[ \begin{align*}
&\quad \text{\texttt{PATH}} \\
&\quad \text{\texttt{name path}} \\
&\quad \text{\texttt{\_DO name name PURGE EVAL UPDIR}} \\
&\quad \text{\texttt{\_UNTIL TYPE 6 ==}} \\
&\quad \text{\texttt{\_END path EVAL}}
\end{align*} \]
```

Perform Phase 1 Adjustments on LP Tableau

1315 bytes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5:</td>
<td>number of constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:</td>
<td>number of decision variables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:</td>
<td>list of indexes of basic variables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:</td>
<td>list of indexes of non-basic variables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:</td>
<td>tableau</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translated Code:

```plaintext
\[ \begin{align*}
&\quad \text{\texttt{\_a STO \_nvars STO \_bvars STO}} \\
&\quad \text{\texttt{\_m n}} \\
&\quad \text{\texttt{\_WHILE bvars \_POS DUP}} \\
&\quad \text{\texttt{\_REPEAT DUP \_r STO a SWAP ROW\_ SWAP DROP OBJ\_1 GET}} \\
&\quad \text{\texttt{\_LIST 1 nvars SIZE SUB DUP}} \\
&\quad \text{\texttt{\_IF \_\_MAX \_\_STREAM DUP ABS .0001 >}} \\
&\quad \text{\texttt{\_THEN POS \_s STO}}
\end{align*} \]
```
ELSE DROP
    IF DUP « MIN » STREAM DUP ABS .0001 >
    THEN POS 's' STO
    ELSE DROP
END

END m n bvars nvars a r s PIVOT 5 DROPN
END DROP a DUP SIZE 2 GET COL- SWAP DROP OBJ+ 1 GET
+LIST DUP SIGN
+ bI signs
< IF signs 1 bvars SIZE SUB -1 POS
THEN 1 m
FOR k signs k GET
    IF 0 ≥
    THEN signs k 0 PUT 'signs' STO
END
NEXT a signs nvars SIZE 1 + 's' STO bvars SIZE 1 + bvars SIZE 2 +
FOR k k { 0 } REPL
NEXT OBJ+ DUP a SIZE 1 GET
IF ≠
THEN SWAP DROP 1 -
END »ARRY s COL+ 'a' STO nvars 0 + 'nvars' STO
bI OBJ+
IF DUP m - 1 -
THEN ROT DROP SWAP DROP 2 -
ELSE SWAP DROP 1 -
END »LIST DUP « MIN » STREAM POS 'r' STO m n
bvars nvars a r s PIVOT 5 DROPN 1 a SIZE 2 GET
FOR j 0
NEXT a SIZE 2 GET »ARRY
+ z
< a
    IF DUP SIZE 1 GET m 2 + ==
    THEN m 2 + 1 2 »LIST z REPL
    ELSE z m 2 + ROW+
    END 'a' STO 1 m
FOR i
    IF a i nvars SIZE 2 »LIST GET SIGN -1 ==
    THEN a i ROW- z + SWAP DROP 'z' STO a m 2 + 1 2 »LIST z REPL 'a' STO
    END
NEXT m n bvars nvars a 2 SIMPLEX
IF 1 FC? a DUP SIZE GET 0 ≤ AND
THEN PHASE1
ELSE 1 SF 5 DROPN
END

END

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
Pivot LP Tableau on Given Element

7: number of constraints
6: number of decision variables
5: list of indexes of basic variables
4: list of indexes of non-basic variables
3: tableau
2: pivot row
1: pivot column

<< 5 ROLL 5 ROLL 'a' STO 'nvars' STO 'bvars' STO
  + m n r s
  2 LIST DUP 3 ROLL GET INV DUP 4 ROLL PUT
  s COL- SWAP ROT r RCI r ROW- ROT r ROW-
  + ap rp sp ars
  1 ap SIZE 1 GET
  FOR k ap k ROW- rp sp k GET * - k ROW- 'ap' STO
  NEXT sp ars NEG 'sp' STO ap rp r ROW+ sp ars r
  ROW+ s COL+ OBJ+ DUP OBJ+ DROP * SWAP OVER 2 +
  ROLL +LIST 9 RND OBJ+ 1 + ROLL +ARRY 'a' STO bvars
  nvars s GET nvars bvars r GET s SWAP PUT 'nvars'
  STO r SWAP PUT 'bvars' STO
  WHILE nvars DUP 0 POS DUP
  REPEAT DUP a SWAP COL- DROP 'a' STO SWAP OBJ+ DUP 2
  + ROLL OVER 2 + SWAP - ROLL DROP 1 - +LIST
  'nvars' STO
  END DROP2 m n bvars nvars a
>>

Find Intersection of Two Planes

2: plane 1 (vector form)
1: plane 2 (vector form)

<< DUP2 2 ROW>
  + p q a
  4 COL- NEG SWAP DUP +ROW DROP CROSS SWAP 3 COL-
  DROP ROT SWAP / OBJ+ DROP 0 3 +LIST 10 RND OBJ+ +ARRY
  SWAP PD+P
>>
Polynomial Multiplication

202.5 bytes

2: polynomial 1
1: polynomial 2

\[ \Rightarrow P_1 \times P_2 \]

```
« DUP SIZE 1 GET
  'a' na
  « DUP DUP 0 CON DUP SIZE 1 GET DUP na + 1 - 1 \->LIST
    'b' c nb nab
    \{ 1 \} nb + RDM 1 nb
    START a OBJ\+ DROP c OBJ\+ DROP
    NEXT
    nb DROPN nb nab + \->ARRY * nab RDM
  »
»
```

Convert Line from Parametric to Position-Direction Form

378.5 bytes

2: position vector for line
1: list of parametric eqns of line

\[ \Rightarrow \] direction vector for line

```
\{ -3 -19 \} CF 1
\{ \}
\{ c SIZE 'n' STO c c 2 \} c 't' POS DUP
  IF DUP 1 + c SWAP GET \{ NEG \} 1 GET ==
  THEN 1 + -1
  ELSE 1
  END 't' STO 's' STO SUB
  IF DUP SIZE 2 <
  THEN 1 GET
  ELSE DLIST
  END EVAL \{ 0 \} ROT s 1 + n 1 - SUB
  IF DUP 1 GET TYPE 18 ==
  THEN TAIL
  END + EVAL 2 \->LIST
»
```

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
PPower

Raise a Polynomial to a Power

175 bytes

2: polynomial
1: power (array) ====> 1: modified power

« 1 GET
+ P n
« 1 DUP » ARRY
WHILE n 0 >
REPEAT
IF n 2 MOD
THEN p PMULT
END n 2 FLOOR 'n' STO
IF n
THEN p DUP PMULT 'p' STO
END
END
»

PSub

Polynomial Subtraction

28.5 bytes

2: polynomial 1
1: polynomial 2 ====> 1: P1−P2

« NEG »

P→Sym

Polynomial to Symbolic

115 bytes

2: polynomial (array)
1: polynomial variable ====> 1: polynomial (symbolic)

« -3 CF
' v 
« OBJ DROP 0 SWAP 1
FOR n
n 1 ROLL v n 1 - ^ * + -1
STEP 10 FIX » STO
»
Find Line Containing Two Points

130 bytes #B45Ch

2: point 1 (2D-vector) 2:
1: point 2 (2D-vector) ===> 1: slope-intercept equation of line

\[-3 \ CF\]
\[\rightarrow p_1 \ p_2\]
\[\rightarrow 'y' \ p_2 \ p_1 - OBJ \ DROP \ SWAP / DUP 'x' * SWAP p_1 OBJ \ DROP \ SWAP ROT * NEG + + = 8 \ FIX \ \rightarrow Q \ STD\]

Find Perpendicular Bisector from Two Points

287 bytes #AAE4h

2: point 1 (2D-vector) 2:
1: point 2 (2D-vector) ===> 1: equation of perp. bisector

\[-3 \ CF\]
\[\rightarrow p_1 \ p_2\]
\[\rightarrow 'y' \ p_2 \ p_1 - OBJ \ DROP \ SWAP / \Neg \ IF \ \ DUP \ THEN \ INV \ DUP \ 'x' \ * \ SWAP \ p_1 \ p_2 + 2 \ OBJ \ DROP \ SWAP \ ROT \ * \NEG \ + \ ELSE \ DROP2 \ 'x' \ p_1 \ p_2 + 2 \ / \ 1 \ GET \ END \ = \ 8 \ FIX \ \rightarrow Q \ STD\]

Solve Quadratic

398 bytes #9150h

1: quadratic (array) ===> 1: list of solutions

\[\{ -1 -3 \} \ CF \ OBJ \ DROP\]
\[\rightarrow a \ b \ c\]
\[\rightarrow b \ SQ \ 4 \ a \ c * * - a 2 * \rightarrow d \ e\]
\[\rightarrow \ IF \ d \ 0 \leq \ THEN\]
\[\rightarrow \ IF \ d \ DUP \ IP \ == \ THEN \ d \ ABS\]
\[\rightarrow \ IF \ \ D \ DUP \ IP \ \neq \ THEN \ d \ ABS \ 1 \ \rightarrow \ LIST 'sqrt' \ APPLY \ i \ * \ ELSE \ d \ ABS \ \downarrow \ i \ * \ END\]
\[\rightarrow \ ELSE \ d \ ABS \ \downarrow \ i \ * \ END\]
\[\rightarrow \ ELSE \ \ IF \ d \ \ D \ DUP \ IP \ \neq \]

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
THEN d 1 »LIST 'sqrt' APPLY ELSE d ↓ END
END e / DUP b NEG e / DUP ROT + 3 ROLLD SWAP - 2 »LIST -27 SF COLCT

RCOEF

Compute Symbolic Polynomial from Roots

239.5 bytes  #9E93h

1: list of roots ===> 1: symbolic polynomial

« -3 CF 1 « EVAL » DOLIST OBJ+ » ARRY PCOEF DUP OBJ+ 1 GET » LIST 1
* IF DUP TYPE
THEN DROP
ELSE FP ABS
IF DUP
THEN 2 FIX »Q STD OBJ+ DROP2 SWAP DROP
ELSE DROP 1
END
» DOLIS
» DUPZ
WHILE DUP
REPEAT SWAP OVER MOD
END DROP / * EVAL
» STREAM * 'x' P=SYM

REMNDR

Compute Symbolic Remainder

276 bytes  #EE73h

3: quotient array
2: numerator array
1: denominator array ===> 1: symbolic remainder

« -3 CF 1 n t 
* IF n [ 0 ] ≠
THEN q OBJ+ 1 GET
+ k
» 0 k » ARRY t 1 » ARRY d PMULT n PADD 'x' P=SYM
d 'x' P=SYM / SWAP 'x' P=SYM SWAP +
ELSE q 'x' P=SYM
END q n d 4 ROLL
»
Create Reflection Transformation

273.5 bytes

2: object array
1: plane of reflection (vector form) ====> 1: reflected object array

```plaintext
« → a v
  « IF v SIZE 1 GET 3 ==
    THEN v DUP 3 GET SWAP 3 0 PUT
    ELSE v DUP 4 GET SWAP 4 COL- DROP
    END
  »
  d n
  « 1 a SIZE 1 GET
    FOR i d NEG n a i ROW- SWAP 4 ROLLD DOT - n n DOT
    / n 2 * a i ROW- SWAP DROP + i ROW+ 'a' STO
    NEXT a
  »

Create 2D-Rotation Transformation Matrix

174.5 bytes

2: point at center of rotation (vector)
1: angle of rotation ====> 1: transformation matrix

```plaintext
« SWAP OBJ→ DROP
  »
  x 1 m
  « x COS x SIN 0 x SIN NEG x COS 0 1 NEG x COS 1 - * m
  x SIN + 1 NEG x SIN * m x COS 1 - * - 1 { 3 3 }
  »ARRAY
```

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
Create 3D-Rotation Transformation Matrix

367.5 bytes

3: position vector for axis of rotation
2: direction vector for axis of rotation
1: angle of rotation

--> 1: transformation matrix

\[
\begin{align*}
&4 \text{ IDN} \\
&\to p \ d \times i \\
&\to d \ 0 \ 4 \ \text{COL}+ \ d \ \text{OBJ} \to \text{DROP} \\
&\to n \ a \ b \ c \\
&\to 1 \ 3 \\
&\text{FOR k n n k GET} * \\
&\text{NEXT} \ [ \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ ] \ \text{4 \ ROW} \rightarrow \ 1 \times \ \text{COS} - * \ i \times \ \text{COS} * + \\
&0 \ c \ b \ \text{NEG} \ 0 \ c \ \text{NEG} \ 0 \ a \ b \ a \ \text{NEG} \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ \{ \ 4 \\
&4 \ \} \to \text{ARRY} \times \ \text{SIN} * + \\
&\rightarrow \ r \\
&\rightarrow \ i \ \{ \ 4 \ 1 \ \} \ \text{p \ NEG \ REPL} \ \rightarrow \ i \ \{ \ 4 \ 1 \ \} \ \text{p \ REPL} * \\
&\rightarrow \\
&\rightarrow
\end{align*}
\]

→RPN

Convert Algebraic to RPN List

189.5 bytes

1: algebraic

--> 1: list

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{OBJ} \to \\
&\text{IF \ OVER} \\
&\text{THEN} \to n \ f \\
&\text{\rightarrow 1} n \\
&\text{\FOR i} \\
&\text{\IF DUP \ TYPE \ 9 \ SAME} \\
&\text{\THEN} \rightarrow \text{RPN} \\
&\text{\END} n \ \text{ROLLOD} \\
&\text{NEXT} \\
&\text{IF DUP \ TYPE \ 5} \\
&\text{THEN} \ 1 \ \rightarrow \text{LIST} \\
&\text{\END} \\
&\text{IF n 1} \\
&\text{THEN} \ 2 \ n \\
&\text{\START +} \\
&\text{\NEXT} \\
&\text{\END} f + \\
&\text{ELSE} \ 1 \ \rightarrow \text{LIST} \ \text{SWAP} \ \text{DROP} \\
&\text{\END}
\end{align*}
\]
RROOTS

Find Real Roots of Polynomial

141 bytes #54ECh

1: polynomial (array) ===> 1: list of real roots

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{PROOT} \ \text{DUP} \ \text{SIZE} \ 1 \ \text{GET} \\
\text{FOR} \ k \\
\text{r} \ k \ \text{GET} \ \text{IM} \\
\text{IF} \\
\text{THEN} \ r \ k \ \text{GET} + \\
\text{ELSE} \ r \ k \ \text{GET} \ \text{RE} \ \text{SWAP} + \\
\text{END} \\
\text{NEXT}
\end{array}
\]

SCFACTR

Find Symbolic Cofactor Matrix

234.5 bytes #5DFCh

1: square symbolic matrix ===> 1: symbolic cofactor matrix

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\(-3\) CF \ DUP \ DUP \ 1 \ \text{GET} \ \text{SIZE} \ \text{SWAP} \ \text{DUP} \ \text{SIZE}} \\
\text{\text{FOR i 1 \ c} \\
\text{\text{FOR i m i j 3 ROLLD \ SXROW \ DROP \ SWAP \ SXCOL \ DROP}} \\
\text{\text{SDET \ -1 \ i j + } \ * \ \text{cof} \ \text{DUP} \ i \ \text{GET} \ j \ 4 \ \text{ROLL} \ \text{PUT} \ i} \\
\text{\text{SWAP} \ \text{PUT} \ '\text{cof'} \ \text{STO}} \\
\text{\text{NEXT} \\
\text{\text{NEXT cof}}
\end{array}
\]

SCOF

Find Symbolic Cofactor

254.5 bytes #EAE0h

1: symbolic matrix
2: row
1: column ===> 1: cofactor

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\(-3\) CF \ 3 \ \text{PIECk} \ \text{DUP} \ \text{SIZE} \ \text{SWAP} \ 1 \ \text{GET} \ \text{SIZE} \ \text{DROP}} \\
\text{IF 1 ==} \\
\text{THEN} \ 3 \ \text{DROPn} \ 1 \\
\text{ELSE} \ \rightarrow \ r \ c \\
\text{OBJ} \ \text{OVER} \ \text{SIZE} \ \text{OVER} \ 1 - \\
\text{\rightarrow m n} \\
\text{\rightarrow r - 1 + \text{ROLL} \ \text{DROP} \ 1 \ \text{n}} \\
\text{START \ n \ \text{ROLL}} \\
\text{IF c 1 -}
\end{array}
\]

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
THEN DUP 1 c 1 - SUB SWAP c 1 + m SUB + 
ELSE 2 m SUB END 
NEX T n →LIST 

" SDET "
END

SCRAMER

Apply Cramer's Rule to Symbolic Matrix
(159)

214.5 bytes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2: symbolic matrix</th>
<th>2: list of Cramer determinants</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1: list of variables</td>
<td>1: list of solutions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

« -3 CF SWAP DUP 1 GET SIZE DUP ROT SWAP SXCOL SWAP DUP SDET v c b a d »
1: c 1 -
FOR k a k SXCOL DROP b k SNCOL SDET NEXT c 1 - →LIST DUP d / COLCT →Q ∨ TAG d ROT + COLCT →Q SWAP »

SCSWP

Swap Columns in Symbolic Array
(159)

77.5 bytes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3: symbolic array</th>
<th>2: column 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2: column 1</td>
<td>1: column 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1: modified array</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

« s i j s STRN i j SRSWP STRN »

SDET

Symbolic Determinant
(158)

136.5 bytes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1: symbolic matrix</th>
<th>1: determinant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

« -3 CF DUP DUP SIZE SWAP 1 GET SIZE DROP a n »
FOR i a i GET 1 GET a i 1 SCO F * -1 i 1 + ^ * + NEXT »
**Synthetic Division (stack version)**

174.5 bytes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2:</th>
<th>2:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>array</td>
<td>modified array</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```
« +p f 
« p p SIZE 1 GET 0 
> n s 
« 1 n 
FOR k 
   p k GET s + DUP f * 's' STO 
NEXT 
> r 
« n 1 - »ARRY f SWAP r 
» 
' s' PURGE 
``` 

**SIMPLEX**

Apply Simplex Algorithm to LP Tableau

1166 bytes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>6:</th>
<th>6:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>number of constraints</td>
<td>number of constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:</td>
<td>5:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number of decision variables</td>
<td>number of decision variables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:</td>
<td>4:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>list of indexes of basic variables</td>
<td>list of indexes of basic variables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:</td>
<td>3:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>list of indexes of non-basic variables</td>
<td>list of indexes of non-basic variables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:</td>
<td>2:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tableau</td>
<td>tableau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:</td>
<td>1:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 if Phase 2, or 2 if Phase 1</td>
<td>tableau</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```
« 4 ROLLD 'a' STO 'nvars' STO 'bvars' STO 
> m n t 
« { 3 4 6 } CF 
WHILE a m t + ROW- SWAP DROP OBJ+ 1 GET +LIST 1 nvars 
SIZE SUB DUP 'c' STO SIGN 1 POS 4 FS?C OR 
REPEAT a DUP SIZE 2 GET COL- SWAP DROP OBJ+ 1 GET 
+LIST 1 bvars SIZE SUB DUP 'b' STO 
IF 0 POS 
THEN 6 SF 
END 
IF 6 FS? 
THEN { } 1 nvars SIZE 
FOR k 
   IF c k GET .0001 > 
   THEN nvars k GET 
   IF DUP 
   THEN + 
   ELSE DROP 
   END 
END 
NEXT 
IF DUP { } SAME 
THEN DROP { 1 4 } SF 
``` 

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
ELSE
    IF DUP SIZE 1 ==
        THEN 1 GET
    ELSE « MIN » STREAM
        END
        nvars SWAP POS 's' STO
    END
ELSE c DUP « MAX » STREAM POS 's' STO
END { } 1 m
FOR i
    IF a i s 2 »LIST GET .0001 >
        THEN bvars i GET +
    END
NEXT 'scol' STO
IF scol { } SAME
THEN { 1 4 } SF
ELSE
    IF 6 FS?C
        THEN scol
        IF DUP SIZE 1 ==
            THEN 1 GET
        ELSE « MIN » STREAM
            END
            bvars SWAP POS 'r' STO
        ELSE 1 scol SIZE
            FOR j
                IF a bvars scol j GET POS s 2 »LIST GET
                    DUP .0001 >
                    THEN b bvars scol j GET POS GET SWAP /
                END
            NEXT scol SIZE »LIST DUP
            IF DUP SIZE 1 ==
                THEN 1 GET
            ELSE « MIN » STREAM
                END
                bvars SWAP POS scol SWAP POS 'v' STO
            END
    END
END m n bvars nvars a r s PIVOT 5 DROPN
END m n bvars nvars a

Disassemble Symbolic Array

124 bytes #46AAh

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>mn + 2:</th>
<th>mn + 2:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:</td>
<td>3:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:</td>
<td>2:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1: symbolic array</td>
<td>1: # of columns</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

< OBJ> OVER SIZE
 row col
< 1 row
 FOR i i 1 - col * row + i - 1 + ROLL OBJ> DROP
 NEXT row col

"
Assemble Symbolic Array

106.5 bytes  

\[ \text{mn} + 2: \quad \text{mn} + 2: \]

\[ \ldots \text{elements} \quad \ldots \]

\[ \text{3:} \quad \text{3:} \]

\[ \text{2:} \quad \# \text{ of rows} \quad \text{2:} \quad \# \text{ of rows} \]

\[ \text{1:} \quad \# \text{ of columns} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \text{1:} \quad \# \text{ of columns} \]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{\texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}} & \text{ \texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}} \text{ row col} \\
\text{\texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}} & \text{ 1 row} \\
& \text{FOR i col \texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}} \text{\texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}} \text{row i - \ast i + ROLLD} \\
& \text{NEXT row \texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}} \text{\texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}} \text{LIST} \\
& \text{\texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}}
\end{align*}
\]

Symbolic Matrix Addition

163 bytes  

\[ \text{2:} \quad \text{symbolic matrix 1} \quad \text{2:} \]

\[ \text{1:} \quad \text{symbolic matrix 2} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \text{1:} \quad \text{SM1 + SM2} \]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{\texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}} & \text{ 3 CF SWAP DUP DUP SIZE SWAP 1 GET SIZE} \\
& \rightarrow a2 a1 n m \\
\text{\texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}} & \text{ 1 n} \\
& \text{FOR i 1 m} \\
& \quad \text{FOR j a1 i GET j GET a2 i GET j GET + COLCT} \\
& \quad \text{NEXT m \texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}} \text{\texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}} \text{LIST} \\
& \quad \text{NEXT n \texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}} \text{\texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}} \text{LIST} \\
& \text{\texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}}
\end{align*}
\]

Invert Symbolic Square Matrix

63 bytes  

\[ \text{1:} \quad \text{square symbolic matrix} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \text{1:} \quad \text{inverse of matrix} \]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{\texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}} & \text{ DUP SCFACTR STRN SWAP SDET INV SMSMULT } \\
& \text{\texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}}
\end{align*}
\]

Symbolic Matrix Multiplication

216 bytes  

\[ \text{2:} \quad \text{symbolic matrix 1} \quad \text{2:} \]

\[ \text{1:} \quad \text{symbolic matrix 2} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \text{1:} \quad \text{SM1*SM2} \]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{\texttt{\char`\textasciitilde \textasciitilde}} & \text{ 3 CF DUP2 DUP SIZE SWAP 1 GET SIZE ROT} \\
& \text{DUP SIZE SWAP 1 GET SIZE} \\
& \rightarrow a1 a2 n2 m2 n1 m1
\end{align*}
\]

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{SMSMULT} & \quad \text{Symbolic Scalar Multiplication} \\
\text{167 bytes} & \quad \#\text{C44Eh} \\
2: & \quad \text{symbolic array or scalar} \\
1: & \quad \text{scalar or symbolic array} \quad \Rightarrow 1: \quad s*SM
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{SMSSOLV} & \quad \text{Symbolic System Solution} \\
\text{75.5 bytes} & \quad \#\text{795Ah} \\
3: & \quad \text{symbolic coefficients array} \\
2: & \quad \text{symbolic constants array} \quad \Rightarrow 2: \quad 1: \quad \text{list of solutions}
\end{align*}
\]
Symbolic Matrix Subtraction (158)

163 bytes  #AE23h

2: symbolic array 1  2:
1: symbolic array 2  ====>  1:

\[ \text{⟨ -3 CF SWAP DUP DUP SIZE SWAP 1 GET SIZE} \]
\[ \text{a2 a1 n m} \]
\[ \text{⟨ 1 n} \]
\[ \text{FOR i 1 m} \]
\[ \text{FOR j a1 i GET j GET a2 i GET j GET - COLCT} \]
\[ \text{NEXT m } \text{⇒LIST} \]
\[ \text{NEXT n } \text{⇒LIST} \]

Insert Column in Symbolic Array (159)

77.5 bytes  #BC65h

3: symbolic array  3:
2: symbolic column (list)  2:
1: column number  ====>  1: modified array

\[ \text{⟨ s v n} \]
\[ \text{⟨ s STRN v n SNROW STRN} \]

Insert Row in Symbolic Array (159)

76.5 bytes  #C674h

3: symbolic array  3:
2: symbolic row (list)  2:
1: row number  ====>  1: modified array

\[ \text{⟨ s v n} \]
\[ \text{⟨ s OBJ> v OVER 3 + n - ROLLD 1 + } \text{⇒LIST} \]

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
« \( r \) \( s \) \( R \) 
« \( \text{IF} \ r \ \text{DUP} \ \text{SIN} \ \text{ASIN} \neq \ r \ \text{SIN} \ 1 \ \text{== OR} \) 
THEN 
\( \text{IF} \ r \ \text{>} \) 
THEN \( r \ r \ \text{R } \text{SIN} \ 2 \ \text{NUM} \) 
ELSE 1 SF 
END 
ELSE 
\( \text{IF} \ r \ \text{<} \) 
THEN \( r \ r \ \text{R } \text{SIN} \ 2 \ \text{NUM} \) 
ELSE 
\( \text{IF} \ R \ \text{SIN} \ s \ \ast \ r \ \text{- DUP} \ \text{ABS} \ 1E-6 \ < \) 
THEN DROp \( r \ r \ \text{R } \text{SIN} \ 2 \ \text{NUM} \) 
ELSE 
\( \text{IF} \ 0 \ \text{>} \) 
THEN 1 SF 0 
ELSE \( r \ r \ \text{R } \text{SIN} \ 2 \ \text{NUM} \ 3 \ \text{SF} \) 
END 
END 
END 
END 

» 

« \( r \ r \ \text{R } \text{SIN} \ s \ \ast \ r \ \text{/ ASIN } \) 
« \( R \ S \ \text{S } \text{SIN} \ r \ \text{* R SIN /} \) 
« \( r \ r \ \text{T } \text{SQ } \text{SQ } \text{+} \ 2 \ r \ r \ \ast \ \ast \ T \ \text{COS * -} \) 
« \( r \ r \ \text{t } \text{SQ } \text{SQ } \text{- t SQ } \text{-} \ 2 \ r \ r \ \ast \ t \ \text{NEG / ACOS } \) 
» 
« \( R \ S \ \text{180 R S } \text{+ -} \) 
« \( r \ r \ \text{a4 } \text{2 } \text{* r } \text{r } \text{* / ASIN } \) 
« \( R \ S \ \text{a4 } \text{2 } \text{r } \text{s } \text{SIN /} \) 
« \( R \ S \ \text{180 R S } \text{-+ SIN } \text{2 } \text{a4 } \text{R SIN S SIN * /} \) 
» 
« \( s \ t \ r \ \text{s } \text{t } \text{R SIN } \text{2 } \text{/ a} \text{4' STO } \) 
{ 14 21 29 30 35 39 43 46 51 53 59 61 62 85 93 94 99 107 110 111 115 117 123 125 126 } { 25 26 27 41 44 45 50 52 54 57 58 60 89 90 105 108 109 114 116 118 121 124 } { 28 42 49 92 106 113 } { 11 13 19 22 37 38 } { 7 15 23 31 47 55 63 71 79 87 95 103 119 127 } { 67 69 76 75 77 78 83 86 91 101 102 } { 74 76 81 84 97 98 } { 88 104 112 120 } 
» 
« 1 "a" \text{SWAP + OBJ} » \text{DOLIST SWAP 1 "d" \text{SWAP + OBJ} » \text{DOLIST SWAP + DUP fields STO } \text{<new SWAP STO »} 
» 
« \text{IF DEPTH DUP ROT } \text{NUM DEPTH 1 - ROT ==} 
THEN \{ \text{NOVAL } 1 \ \text{GET} \) 
END \text{SWAP DROP »} 
» 
« 1 3 
\text{FOR j}
IF \( \text{angles} \_\text{j} \) GET \( 0 \) == \( \text{sides} \_\text{j} \) GET \( 0 \) \# AND
THEN \( \text{angles} \_\text{j} \) 3 PUT \( \text{sides} \_\text{j} \) 3 PUT \( '\text{sides}' \) STO
\( '\text{angles}' \) STO
END

NEXT
IF \( \text{angles} \_\text{3} \) POS \( 0 \) ==
THEN \( \text{angles} \) DUP \( 0 \) POS DUP 3 ROLLD 3 PUT \( \text{sides} \) ROT
3 PUT \( '\text{sides}' \) STO \( '\text{angles}' \) STO
END 1 3
FOR \( j \)
IF \( \text{angles} \_\text{j} \) GET \( 3 \) \# THEN \( j \) END
NEXT DUP \( \text{angles} \) SWAP 2 PUT \( \text{sides} \) ROT 2 PUT 3 PICK 1
PUT 3 ROLLD SWAP 1 PUT 4 4 PUT \( \text{prep} \) EVAL \( d1 \) \( d2 \) \( a3 \)
\( a2 \) \( a6 \) \( \text{NUM} \) DUP \'d3' STO \( d1 \) \( a3 \) \( a6 \) \( \text{NUM} \) DUP \'d2'
STO \( d1 \) \( \text{ROT} \) \( a4 \) \( \text{NUM} \) DUP \'d3' STO \( d2 \) \( a1 \) \( \text{NUM} \) 'a2'
\( \text{STO} \) \( d1 \) \( d2 \) \( a3 \) \( \text{NUM} \) 'a1'
END

NEXT DUP \( \text{angles} \) SWAP 2 PUT \( \text{sides} \) ROT 2 PUT 3 PICK 1
PUT 3 ROLLD SWAP 1 PUT SWAP 4 4 PUT \( \text{prep} \) EVAL \( d3 \) \( a1 \)
\( a2 \) \( a6 \) \( \text{NUM} \) DUP \'a3' STO \( a1 \) \( a3 \) \( a6 \) \( \text{NUM} \) DUP \'d1'
STO \( d1 \) \( d2 \) \( a3 \) \( \text{NUM} \) 'd2'
\( \text{STO} \) \( d2 \) \( \text{ROT} \) \( a4 \) \( \text{NUM} \) DUP \'d3' STO \( d1 \) \( d2 \) \( a3 \) \( \text{NUM} \) 'a3'
\( \text{STO} \) \( d1 \) \( d2 \) \( a3 \) \( \text{NUM} \) 'a1'
END

\( \text{angles} \) REVLIST TAIL REVLIST \( 0 \) POS \( \text{angles} \) SWAP DUP 3
ROLLOD 1 PUT \( \text{angles} \) ROT 1 PUT DUP \( 0 \) POS DUP 3 ROLLOD 2
PUT 3 ROLLOD 2 PUT DUP 14 POS DUP 3 ROLLOD 3 PUT 3
ROLLOD 3 PUT SWAP 4 4 PUT \( \text{prep} \) EVAL \( d1 \) \( d2 \) \( a1 \) \( \text{NUM} \) 'p1'
EVAL
IF DUP
THEN DUP \'a2' STO \( a1 \) \( a6 \) \( \text{NUM} \) DUP \'a3' STO \( d1 \) \( d2 \) \( \text{ROT} \)
\( a6 \) \( \text{NUM} \) DUP \'d3' STO \( d1 \) \( a2 \) \( \text{NUM} \) 'a2'
\( \text{STO} \) \( d1 \) \( d2 \)
END

\( \text{sides} \_1 \{ 1 2 3 \} \) REPL \( \text{angles} \_1 \{ 1 2 3 4 \} \) REPL
\( \text{prep} \) EVAL \( d1 \) \( d2 \) \( d3 \) \( \text{NUM} \) DUP \'a1'
\( \text{STO} \) \( d1 \) \( d2 \) \( \text{ROT} \)
\( a5 \) \( \text{NUM} \) IF \( 3 \) \( \text{FS?C} \) THEN \( \text{NEG} \) \( 180 \) \( \text{END} \) \( \text{DUP} \) \'a2'
\( \text{STO} \) \( a1 \)
\( a6 \) \( \text{NUM} \) DUP \'a3'
\( \text{STO} \) \( d1 \) \( d2 \)

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***

309
\( \text{ROT} \leftarrow p10 \text{ EVAL} \)

\( \text{1 2} \)
\( \text{FOR } j \leftarrow \text{sides} \text{ DUP } 0 \text{ POS DUP } 3 \text{ ROLLLD } j \text{ PUT } \text{+ang} \text{les} \text{ ROT} \)
\( j \text{ PUT } '\text{+angles' STO } '\text{sides' STO} \)
\( \text{NEXT } '\text{sides' DUP } 14 \text{ POS DUP } 3 \text{ ROLLLD } 3 \text{ PUT } '\text{+angles' ROT} \)
\( 3 \text{ PUT } 4 \text{ 4 PUT } \text{+prep EVAL } d1 \text{ d2 } p7 \text{ NUM DUP 'a3' STO} \)
\( d1 \text{ d2 } \text{ ROT } p4 \text{ NUM DUP 'd3' STO } d1 \text{ d2 } \text{ ROT } p5 \text{ NUM} \)
\( \text{DUP 'a1' STO a3 } p6 \text{ NUM 'a2' STO} \)

\( \text{1 2} \)
\( \text{FOR } j \leftarrow \text{+angles} \text{ DUP } 0 \text{ POS DUP } 3 \text{ ROLLLD } j \text{ PUT } \text{+sides} \text{ ROT} \)
\( j \text{ PUT } '\text{+sides' STO } '\text{+angles' STO} \)
\( \text{NEXT } '\text{+sides' DUP } 14 \text{ POS DUP } 3 \text{ ROLLLD } 2 \text{ PUT } 3 \text{ ROLLLD } 2 \text{ PUT DUP } 14 \text{ POS} \)
\( 3 \text{ ROLLLD } 3 \text{ PUT } 4 \text{ 4 PUT } \text{+prep EVAL } a1 \text{ a2 } p8 \text{ NUM DUP 'd3' STO} \)
\( a1 \text{ a2 } p9 \text{ NUM DUP 'd3' STO SWAP } a2 \text{ +p3 } \text{ NUM DUP 'd2' STO} \)
\( d3 \text{ a1 } p4 \text{ NUM 'd1' STO} \)

"SOLVE TRIANGLE" \{ \{ "a": "ENTER SIDE A" 0 9 \} \{ "b": "ENTER SIDE B" 0 9 \} \{ "c": "ENTER SIDE C" 0 9 \} \{ "A": "ENTER ANGLE A IN DEGREES" 0 9 \} \{ "B": "ENTER ANGLE B IN DEGREES" 0 9 \} \{ "C": "ENTER ANGLE C IN DEGREES" 0 9 \} \{ "AREA": "ENTER AREA OF TRIANGLE" 0 9 \} } \{ \} \{ 2 2 \} \{ \} fields 1 \text{+nv DOLIST INFORM} \)

\( \text{RCLF} \)
\( \triangleleft p1 \triangleleft p2 \triangleleft p3 \triangleleft p4 \triangleleft p5 \triangleleft p6 \triangleleft p7 \triangleleft p8 \triangleleft p9 \triangleleft p10 \text{ cases} \)
\( \text{+prep +nv +sas +aas +asa +ssa +sss +kss +kss +kss +kss +kss} \)
\( \text{+infm flags} \)
\( \text{DEG STD} \{ 1 2 3 \} \text{ CF} \{ a \text{ b } c \text{ A' B' C' K } \} \text{ DUP 1} \)
\( \triangleleft \text{ PGALL} \triangleleft \text{ DOLIST 'fields' STO} \{ \text{ NOVAL } \} \text{ DUP DUP } + \text{ DUP} \)
\( + + \text{ fields STO} \)
\( \text{WHILE } \text{+infm EVAL} \)
\( \text{REPEAT } \text{ CLLCD"Solving triangle ..." 1 DISP 1} \)
\( \triangleleft \text{ IF DUP TYPE 9 } \triangleleft =\)
\( \text{ THEN } \text{+NUM} \)
\( \text{ END} \)
\( \text{ DOLIST DUP 1 } \triangleleft \text{ TYPE } \triangleleft \text{ DOLIST DUP 1 3 SUB SWAP 4} \)
\( 7 \text{ SUB} \)
\( \triangleleft \text{ new } \text{+sides } \text{+angles} \)
\( \triangleleft 0 1 7 \)
\( \text{FOR } j \)
\( \quad \text{ IF } \text{+new } j \text{ GET TYPE } 0 \triangleleft =\)
\( \quad \text{ THEN } j 1 - 2 \text{ SWAP } ^ + \)
\( \quad \text{ END} \)
\( \text{NEXT } \text{+case' STO } \text{+cases 1} \)
\( \triangleleft \text{ IF case POS} \)
\( \text{ THEN } 1 \text{ ELSE 0} \)
\( \text{ END} \)
\( \triangleleft \text{ DOLIST 1 POS} \)
\( \text{ IF DUP} \)
\( \text{ THEN } \{ d1 d2 d3 a1 a2 a3 a4 \} \text{ PURGE } \{ +\text{sas} \)
SPIRO

Spirograph™ Simulation

441 bytes

3: number of teeth in fixed wheel
2: number of teeth in rolling wheel
1: -1 if inside roll; 1 if outside roll

< { -2 -3 } CF DUP2 * 4 PICK +
/ 'B' PURGE n 0 COS * b 1.5 * n b / 0 * COS * s * - n
0 SIN * b 1.5 * n b / 0 * SIN * - i * + STEQ
PARAMETRIC RAD 'B' @ @ @ b / ->Q STD
IF DUP DUP IP # THEN OBJ-> DROP2 SWAP DROP
END
'2*π' * ->NUM 3 ->LIST INDEP .05 RES
IF s 1 ==
THEN a ABS b ABS 3 * +
ELSE a ABS b ABS 1.5 * +
END
DUP NEG SWAP DUP2 YRNG 2 * SWAP 2 * SWAP XRNG
ERASE DRAW PICTURE

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
**sqrt**

**Square Root UDF**

37.5 bytes  #9732h

| 1: real number | ==>> | 1: square root |

```
< × √ √ >
```

**RCI**

**RCI for Symbolic Matrix**

75 bytes  #6066h

| 3: symbolic array | 3: |
| 2: multiplicative factor | 2: |
| 1: row | ==>> | 1: modified array |

```
< -3 CF
→ s f n
< s DUP n GET f * n SWAP PUT
>
```

**SRIJ**

**RCIJ for Symbolic Matrix**

98.5 bytes  #5A32h

| 4: symbolic array | 4: |
| 3: multiplicative factor | 3: |
| 2: row i | 2: |
| 1: row j | ==>> | 1: modified array |

```
< -3 CF
→ s f i j
< s i GET f * s j GET ADD s j ROT PUT
>
```

**SRSWP**

**Swap Rows in Symbolic Matrix**

87.5 bytes  #7BFEh

| 3: symbolic array | 3: |
| 2: row 1 | 2: |
| 1: row 2 | ==>> | 1: modified array |

```
< → s i j
< s DUP i GET SWAP j GET s i ROT PUT j ROT PUT
>
```

P. Program Listings
EITF: H Transpose Symbolic Matrix (158)

124 bytes #8A0Sh

1: symbolic matrix ===> 1: transposed symbolic matrix

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{FOR } i \text{ from } 1 \text{ to } n \\
&\text{FOR } j \text{ from } 1 \text{ to } n \\
&\text{GET } i \text{ of } a \text{ of } j \text{ of } n \\
&\text{NEXT} \\
&\text{NEXT} \\
&\text{+SM}
\end{align*}
\]

SXCOL Extract Column from Symbolic Matrix (159)

73.5 bytes #4786h

2: symbolic array 2: reduced array
1: column number ===> 1: extracted column (list)

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{\texttt{\textbackslash{}s n}} \\
&\text{\texttt{\textbackslash{}s STRN n SXROW SWAP STRN SWAP}}
\end{align*}
\]

SXROW Extract Row from Symbolic Matrix (159)

80 bytes #92F7h

2: symbolic array 2: reduced array
1: row number ===> 1: extracted row (list)

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{\texttt{\textbackslash{}s n}} \\
&\text{\texttt{\textbackslash{}s OBJ}} \texttt{\textbackslash{} Dup 2 } \texttt{\textbackslash{} n } \texttt{\textbackslash{} Roll } \texttt{\textbackslash{} Over 1 } \texttt{\textbackslash{} Rolld 1 } \texttt{\textbackslash{} } \texttt{\textbackslash{}List} \\
&\text{\texttt{SWAP}}
\end{align*}
\]

SYND Synthetic Division (input form) (117)

555.5 bytes #F0D0h

2: array 2: program
1: program ===> 1: modified array

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{\texttt{\textbackslash{}IF Depth Dup Rot \textbackslash{}Num Depth 1 } \texttt{\textbackslash{} Rot } \texttt{\textbackslash{}Then } \texttt{\textbackslash{}Noval } \texttt{\textbackslash{}1 Get} \\
&\texttt{\textbackslash{}End Swap Drop}}
\end{align*}
\]

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
"SYNTHETIC DIVISION"
{ { "POLYNOMIAL:" "ENTER POLYNOMIAL AS VECTOR" 3 4 }
{ "FACTOR:" "ENTER FACTOR TO BE TESTED" 0 1 }
{ "QUOTIENT:" "DISPLAYS COMPUTED QUOTIENT" }
{ "REMAINDER:" "DISPLAYS COMPUTED REMAINDER" }

1 { } fields 1 + nv DOLIST INFORM
IF
THEN OBJ+ 3 DROPN
+ P f
" p f SDIV 4 )LIST 'fields' STO 'synr EVAL »
END
» { NOVAL NOVAL NOVAL NOVAL } 'fields' STO
+ n v 'synr
« 'synr EVAL » 'fields' PURGE

TRIGX
Trigonometry Explorer

"TRIGONOMETRY EXPLORER" { { "Δ(DMS):" "ANGLE IN
DD.MMSS" 0 } { "Δ:" "ANGLE IN RADIANS" 0 9 } { "RADIUS:" "RADIUS OF CIRCLE" 0 9 } { "SINE:" "SINE OF
ANGLE" 0 9 } { "ARCC:" "LENGTH OF ARC INSCRIBED BY
ANGLE" 0 9 } { "COS:" "COSINE OF ANGLE" 0 9 } { "AREA:" "AREA OF CIRCULAR SECTOR" 0 9 } { "TAN:" "TANGENT OF ANGLE" 0 9 } } { 2 2 } { } angd ang
radi sine arc cosine area tang 8 + LIST INFORM
<< RCLF {-2 -3} CF { 45 'π/4' 1 'j2/2' 'π/4' 'j2/2' 'π/8' 1} DUP 'old' STO { angd angr radi sine arc cosine area tang } DUP 'fields' STO STO WHILE +infm EVAL REPEAT DUP fields STO + new << { } 'inputs' STO 1 8 FOR n IF new n GET DUP ( NOVAL ) 1 GET ≠ SWAP old n GET ≠ AND THEN fields n GET 'inputs' STO+ END NEXT IF inputs ( ) SAME THEN new OBJ DROP ELSE 1 1 2 FOR i IF inputs ( angd angr ) DUP i GET DUP 4 ROLL SWAP POS THEN POS + ELSE DROP2 END NEXT { << 1 1 4 FOR j IF inputs ( sine cosine 0 tang ) DUP j GET DUP 4 ROLL SWAP POS THEN POS + ELSE DROP2 END NEXT RAD old 2 GET << sine ASIN >> << cosine ACOS >> << 'angr' DUP DUP SIN sine - SWAP COS cosine - = SWAP 'π/4' 'π/4' » << tang ATAN >> << 'angr' DUP DUP SIN sine - SWAP TAN tang - = SWAP 'π/4' << tang - SIGN tang SIGN ≠ THEN 'π' + END »NUM ROOT » << 'angr' DUP DUP COS cosine - SWAP TAN tang - = SWAP 'π/4' << tang - SIGN tang SIGN ≠ THEN 'π' + END »NUM ROOT » DUP 8 »LIST SWAP GET EVAL DUP 'angr' STO »NUM R+D »HMS 'angd' STO » < angd »NUM HMS R+D 'angr' STO » << angr »NUM R+D »HMS 'angd' STO » << IF -17 FS? THEN angr »NUM R+D »HMS 'angd' STO ELSE angd »NUM HMS R+D 'angr' STO END >> }}

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
SWAP GET EVAL
1 1 4
FOR j
  IF inputs { radi arc 0 area } DUP j
    GET DUP 4 ROLL SWAP POS
    THEN POS +
    ELSE DROP2
    END
  NEXT
  { radi " arc angr / " radi " area 2 * angr
    / ABS \ " radi " arc angr / " radi
  } old 3 GET SWAP + SWAP GET EVAL RAD angr
  angr ROT OVER SIN 3 PICK 3 PICK * 4 PICK COS
  5 PICK 5 PICK SQ * 2 / ABS 6 PICK TAN
END
8 \LIST 1
\->NUM 10 FIX \->ON
IF DUP TYPE THEN \->RPN
  IF DUP { / } 1 GET POS 0 \->
  THEN IF DUP 2 GET 100 \->
    THEN EVAL \->ON
    ELSE EVAL \->NUM
    END
  ELSE EVAL
  END
END STD
\-> DOLIST \->fields STO 'old' STO
END STOF { angr angr radi sine arc cosine area tang
  fields inputs old } PURGE

TRNCON

Translate Conic

249.5 bytes # 8FBh

2: { A B C D E F} 2:
1: [xy] ===> 1: { A'B'C'D'E'F'}

< OBJ \ DROP ROT OBJ \ DROP
  \ h k a b c d e f
  < a b c b d + 2 \ h a * * * - \ e b h * - 2 \ k c * * - a h
  SQ * b h k * * + c k SQ * + d h * - e k * - f + 6
  \->LIST
  >
**TVIEW**  
View Transformed Array of Points (214)

370 bytes  #184Ah

1: object array of points  ====>  1: object array of points

```plaintext
<< { PICT PPAR } PURGE ERASE DUP SIZE OBJ+ DROP (0,0)
   
   a m n s
   
   m DUP { m n } GET / 'a' STO 1 m
   FOR k a k ROW- 1 2 SUB V→ R+O DUP s + 's' STO SWAP DROP
   NEXT m +LIST 'p' STO s m / DUP (6,3) - SWAP (6,3) +
   PDIM 1 m
   FOR j p j GET p j m MOD 1 + GET LINE
   NEXT 'p' PURGE { } 1 ATICK DRAK PVIEW a
```

**UDFUI**  
Apply User Interface to a UDF (27)

359 bytes  #9C2Ah

1: name of UDF  ====>  1:

```plaintext
<< { }
   
   name infdat
   
   name RCL →STR 4 OVER SIZE SUB "'" + 1 OVER "" POS 3
   PICK "" POS MIN 2 - SUB "" SWAP + OBJ+ "" name +
   SWAP name + 1 « "":" + » DOLIST DUP SIZE 4 / CEIL OVER
   1 « DROP { NOVAL } HEAD » DOLIST DUP 5 ROLLD 4 +LIST
   'infdat' STO
   WHILE infdat OBJ+ DROP 5 ROLL INFORM
   REPEAT DUP OBJ+ DROP2 name EVAL DUP 3 PICK SWAP name
   « TAG 4 ROLLD SIZE SWAP PUT
   END
```

**VDIR**  
Find Vector Direction Angles (177)

101.5 bytes  #14F8h

1: vector  ====>  1: list of direction angles

```plaintext
<< DUP SIZE 1 GET SWAP DUP ABS
   
   n u m
   
   1 n
   FOR i v i GET m / ACOS
   NEXT n →LIST
```

*** Be sure to read the instructions on pages 274-275 before keying in these programs. ***
I. INDEXES
Examples Index

1. Exploring Functions

- Adding a special user-interface to UDF 27
- Finding composition of two functions 22
- Finding range of a function 11
- Finding the inverse of a function 23
- Modifying UDF so that it can be plotted 26
- Plotting a linear function 9
- Plotting a rational function 18-19
- Plotting family of lines, varying intercept 10
- Plotting family of lines, varying slope 10
- Plotting family of quadratics 12
- Solving a quadratic graphically 15
- Solving a quadratic numerically 17
- Solving a quadratic symbolically 17
- Symbolically isolating a variable 14
- Using UDF to compute distance between points in space 25
- Using UDF to compute volume of a cone 24
- Varying base in logarithmic function 21
- Varying exponent in exponential function 20

2. Trigonometry

- Arithmetic using HMS degrees format 30
- Computing trigonometric ratios 33
- Converting degrees to radians 30
- Converting radians to HMS format 30
- Plotting using different angle modes 31
- Solving a triangle (KAA) using SOL\(\Delta\) 47
- Solving a triangle (SAS) 45
- Solving a triangle (SSA) using SOL\(\Delta\) 46
- Solving trigonometric equations from the keyboard 50
- Solving trigonometric equations graphically 49
- Solving trigonometric equations using SOLVE 48
- Triangulating on UFO 53
- Triangulating to a distress call 52
- Triangulating to compute distance to sun 54
- Using trigonometric identities to solve equations 40
- Using trigonometry to appraise a plot of land 51
- Verifying a trigonometric identity 36
- Verifying a trigonometric identity graphically 38
3. Polar and Parametric Equations

Astroid plot 90
Cardioid plot 87
Changing coordinate display mode 59
Cissoid of Diocles plot 79
Computing a complex function 72
Conchoid of Nicomedes—\(a<b\) 81
Conchoid of Nicomedes—\(a>b\) 81
Curtate epitrochoid plot 88
Curtate hypotrochoid plot—integral ratio of radii 91
Curtate hypotrochoid plot—non-integral ratio of radii 92
Curtate trochoid plot 85
Deltoid plot 90
Effect of coordinate mode on entry 59
Entering polar coordinates 59
Epicycloid plot—integral ratio of radii 86
Epicycloid plot—non-integral ratio of radii 86
Finding intersection points of two polar functions 65
Finding the period of a polar function 61
Folium of Descartes plot 80
Hyperbolic spiral plot 94
Hypocycloid plot 89
Lemniscate of Bernoulli plot 78
Limaçon plot—\(a<b<2a\) 83
Limaçon plot—\(a=b\) 83
Limaçon plot—\(a>b\) 83
Limaçon plot—\(b>2a\) 83
Lissajous plot 98
Lituus spiral plot 96
Logarithmic spiral plot 95
Modeling circular-to-linear transfer parametrically 70
Nephroid plot 87
Ordinary cycloid plot 84
Oval of Cassini plot—\(a<e\) 77
Oval of Cassini plot—\(a>e\sqrt{2}\) 77
Ovals of Cassini plot—\(e<a<e\sqrt{2}\) 77
Parabolic spiral plot 96
Plotting the Folium of Descartes parametrically 66
Plotting a complex function using Parametric plot type 73
Plotting a complex mapping using Gridmap plot type 75
Plotting a function described parametrically 69
Plotting a polar equation 64
Plotting a polar function 61
Plotting the complex plane using Gridmap plot type 74
Plotting two parametric equations simultaneously 71
Prolate epitrochoid plot 88
Prolate epitrochoid plot—non-integer ratio of radii 89
Prolate hypotrochoid plot—integral ratio of radii 91
Prolate hypotrochoid plot—non-integral ratio of radii 92
Prolate trochoid plot 85
Rose plot—\(a>2b\) 93
Rose plot—\(b<a<2b\) 93
Sinusoidal spiral plot—\(n=3/4\) 97
Sinusoidal spiral plot—\(n=-1/3\) 97
Sinusoidal spiral plot—\(n=-7/5\) 97
Spiral of Archimedes plot 94
Strofoid plot 82
Tractrix plot 98
Witch of Agnesi plot 99

4. Polynomials

Adding two matrices 139
Adding two polynomials from the stack 109
Adding two polynomials using PADD 110
Converting polynomials from vector to symbolic for 101
Converting roots to polynomials using PCOEF 131
Converting roots to polynomials using RCOEF 132
Dividing one polynomial by another 112
Find the product of two polynomials 111
Finding real roots of a polynomial graphically 127
Finding real roots of a polynomial using RRROOTS 130
Finding roots of a polynomial using SOLVR application 124
Finding roots of a polynomial using Solve Equation... application 126
Finding roots of polynomial with SDSIV 120
Finding roots of single-variable function via PCONV 133
Finding the positive integral power of a polynomial 114
Finding the roots of a polynomial using SYND 122
Graphically determining degree of a polynomial 106
Graphically finding an extremum 105
Plotting a polynomial 102
Plotting polynomial and first derivative 104
Polynomial division with a remainder 113
Straightening a polynomial by plotting successive derivatives 107
Subtracting one polynomial from another 110
Synthetic division using SDSIV 116
Synthetic division using SYND 117
Using the Solve Poly... application 129
5. Systems of Linear Equations

Finding the condition number for a square matrix  137
Finding the determinant of a matrix  142
Finding the rank of a matrix  138
Graphically characterizing a linear system  136
Inverting a matrix using Gaussian elimination  149
Inverting a matrix with 1/x  143
Multiplying matrices  141
Plotting a system of inequalities  161
Solve a linear system using COFACTR  155
Solving a linear system using CRAMER  152
Solving a linear system using Solve Lin Sys... application  156
Solving a linear system using the stack  156
Solving a linear system with Cramer’s Rule  151
Solving a linear system with Gaussian elimination  146
Solving a linear system with RREF  148
Solving a maximum linear program  165
Solving a MaxMin linear program  170
Solving a minimum linear program  168
Solving an over-determined linear system  160
Solving an under-determined linear system  160
Transposing matrices  141

6. Analytic Geometry

Adding two vectors  174
Centering a projection using a translation  236
Compute the transformation matrix needed to rotate an object around a line in space  225
Converting a line from array to general form  195
Converting a line from general to parametric form  194
Converting a line from parametric to array form  194
Converting a line from parametric to general form  195
Converting a line from parametric to slope-intercept form  194
Converting a line from slope-intercept to array form  195
Creating a “3D-object” and viewing it with an orthographic projection  229
Determine the number of points in common between a line and a plane  209
Determining collinearity of a point and a line  196
Determining collinearity of three points  186
Determining collinearity of three points using COLIN?  186
Determining the relationship of two lines in space  201
Finding the angle of intersection of two lines  202
Finding the angle of intersection of two planes  206
Finding the area of a triangle using the cross product  190

322  I. INDEXES
Finding the centroid of a triangle 191
Finding the cross product of two vectors 175
Finding the direction angles of a vector 176
Finding the direction angles of a vector using VDIR 177
Finding the distance between parallel lines 201
Finding the distance between two points 180
Finding the distance from a point to a line 189
Finding the distance from a point to a line in space 198
Finding the distance from a point to a line in space using Dt o L 199
Finding the distance from a point to a line using Dt o L 189
Finding the distance from a point to a plane 207
Finding the distance from the origin to line 199
Finding the dot product of two vectors 174
Finding the length of a median of a triangle 191
Finding the length of a vector 176
Finding the line containing two points 182
Finding the line containing two points in space 183
Finding the line containing two points using PZ→L 182
Finding the line given its slope and a point on the line 192
Finding the line in space with a given direction vector 192
Finding the line of intersection of two planes 205
Finding the line of intersection of two planes using PL2→L 206
Finding the line parallel to a given line through a given point 197
Finding the line perpendicular to a given line containing a given point 197
Finding the line perpendicular to the line determined by two given points that contains a third point 188
Finding the lines determined by three noncollinear points 187
Finding the midpoint of a line segment 181
Finding the perimeter of a triangle determined by three noncollinear points 190
Finding the perpendicular bisector for a line in space 185
Finding the perpendicular bisector of a line segment 184
Finding the perpendicular bisector of a line segment using P2/PB 184
Finding the plane given a line and a point not on the line 196
Finding the plane given a line in the plane and a perpendicular plane 211
Finding the plane given a point on the plane and a parallel plane 208
Finding the plane given a point on the plane and a perpendicular plane 208
Finding the plane given its three traces 204
Finding the plane given three noncollinear points in the plane 188
Finding the plane given two lines in the plane 203
Finding the point of intersection of a line and a plane 210
Finding the point of intersection of a line and a plane 211
Finding the point of intersection of two lines 200
Finding the point that divides a line segment into a given ratio 181
Finding the traces of a given plane 204
Illustration of the non-commutativity of the cross product 175
Multiplying a vector and a scalar 174
Performing a projection from within an object 241
Performing a single-point perspective projection 235
Performing a three-point perspective projection with translation 240
Performing a two-point perspective projection 238
Performing a two-point perspective projection with translation 239
Projecting a 3D-object using a dimetric projection 232
Projecting a cube isometrically 233
Reflecting an object across an arbitrary line in space 227
Reflecting an object across both coordinate axes 226
Rotating a 2D-object around an arbitrary point 222
Rotating a 2D-object around the origin 221
Scaling an object using global scaling 217
Scaling the horizontal component of an object 215
Scaling the vertical component of an object 216
Shearing an object horizontally 219
Shearing an object vertically 218
Subtracting one vector from another 174
Translating an object 220

7. Conic Sections

Determining whether a point lies inside, outside, or on a given circle 254
Finding the asymptotes and foci of a hyperbola 263
Finding the center and eccentricity of a given hyperbola 262
Finding the center and radius of a circle 250
Finding the center, semimajor, and eccentricity of an ellipse 256
Finding the circle given its center and a tangent 268
Finding the circle given its center and radius 250
Finding the circle through three points using the linear systems method 253
Finding the circle through three points using the perpendicular bisector method 252
Finding the eccentricity and directrices of an ellipse 258
Finding the ellipse given its center, semiaxes, and angle of orientation 256
Finding the ellipse given its eccentricity and a directrix and corresponding focus 258
Finding the focus of a parabola 260
Finding the hyperbola given its center, a and b parameters, and the angle of orientation 262
Finding the hyperbola given its eccentricity and a directrix and corresponding focus 264
Finding the normal through a given point on a circle with a given center 268
Finding the parabola given its vertex and directrix 260
Finding the points of intersection of a circle and a line 265
Finding the points of intersection of an ellipse and a line 266
Finding the points of intersection of a hyperbola and a line 266
Finding the points of intersection of a parabola and a line 266
Finding the tangent and normal to an ellipse at a point on the ellipse 269
Finding the tangent and normal to a hyperbola at a point on the hyperbola 270
Finding the tangent and normal to a parabola at a point on the parabola 269
Finding the tangent to a circle at a point on the circle 267
Finding the vertices and foci of an ellipse 257
Plotting a circle in a square viewing area 247
Plotting a circle with Conic plot type 245
Plotting a circle with CONPLT 249
Plotting a conic using the default resolution 246
Plotting a conic with enhanced resolution 246
Plotting a hyperbola with CONPLT 248
Rotating a conic by a specified angle 271
Rotating a conic into standard orientation 272
Translating a conic along a given vector 272
Translating a conic to the origin 273
| APOLY | Analyze a Polynomial | 120, 122, 124, 126, 276 |
| R+Q | Rationalize an Array | 143, 154-155, 200, 211, 253, 277 |
| CIR→G | Convert Circle Parameters to General Form | 250, 252, 268-269, 277 |
| CMPOS | Composite of Two Functions | 22, 277 |
| COFACTR | Find Cofactor Matrix | 154, 159, 278 |
| COLIN? | Test for Collinearity of Point and Line | 186, 196, 278-279, 288 |
| CONPLT | Plot Conic from General Form | 248-249, 256, 262, 271-273, 278 |
| Cramer | Apply Cramer's Rule | 152, 279 |
| C→STD | Rotate Conic to Standard Orientation | 271-272, 280, 283-284, 286 |
| DMTRC | Create Dimetric Projection | 232, 280 |
| D→L | Find Distance from Point to a Line | 189, 199, 201, 268, 280 |
| ELP→G | Convert Ellipse Parameters to General Form | 255-256, 258, 281 |
| FINV | Function Inverse | 23, 281 |
| FMPLT | Plot Family of Curves | 10, 12-13, 20-21, 41-43, 281-282 |
| G→A | Convert Line from General to Array Form | 193-195, 199-202, 252, 268, 282 |
| G→CIR | Find Circle Parameters from General Form | 250, 254, 273, 282-283, 286 |
| G→ELP | Find Ellipse Parameters from General Form | 255-256, 283, 286 |
| G→HYP | Find Hyperbola Parameters from General Form | 261-263, 283, 286 |
| G→PBL | Find Parabola Parameters from General Form | 260, 283-284, 286 |
| HYP→G | Convert Hyperbola Parameters to General Form | 261-262, 264, 284 |
| I→GEN | Convert Line from Slope-Int. to General Form | 189, 193, 195, 252, 284 |
| INPLOT | Plot System of Inequalities | 161, 284-285 |
| ISMTRC | Create Isometric Projection | 233, 285 |
| LCON? | Find Intersection of Line and Conic | 265-266, 285-286 |
| LINPRG | Linear Programming | 164-166, 168, 170, 286-288 |
| LIN2? | Determine Relationship of Two Lines | 200-201, 252, 288 |
| LPL→P | Find Intersection Point of Line and Plane | 211, 288-289 |
| LTRIM | Trim Zeroes from Left of Array | 289, 290, 292 |
| NRMLZ | Normalize Object Array after Transformation | 234-236, 289, 293 |
| PADD | Polynomial Addition | 109-110, 289, 297, 299 |
| PAR→I | Convert Line from Parametric to Slope-Int. Form | 193-195, 290 |
| PBL→G | Convert Parabola Parameters to General Form | 260, 290 |
| PCONV | Convert to Polynomial Form | 133, 290-291 |
| PDIVIDE | Polynomial Division | 112-113, 291 |
| PD→P | Convert Line from PD to Parametric Form | 183, 185, 192, 194, 197, 205, 291, 296 |
| PERSP | Create Perspective Projection | 238-241, 292 |
| PGALL | Purge Variable in Path | 281-282, 286, 292, 311, 315 |
| PHASE1 | Convert Tableau to Canonical Form | 164, 287, 292-293 |
| PIVOT | Pivot Tableau on Given Element | 164, 294, 305 |
| PL2→L | Find Intersection of Two Planes | 206, 294 |
| PMULT | Polynomial Multiplication | 111, 291, 295, 299 |
| P→PD | Convert Line from Parametric to PD Form | 193-194, 196-199, 201, 203, 209-211, 225, 295 |
PPower          Raise a Polynomial to a Natural Power          114, 291, 296
PSUB           Polynomial Subtraction           110, 291, 296
P+SYM          Polynomial to Symbolic          110-111, 114, 124, 126, 296, 299
P2+L           Find Line Containing Two Points       182, 187, 189, 195, 297
P2+PB          Find Perpendicular Bisector from Two Points 184, 252, 297
QDSOLV         Solve Quadratic              121, 123, 125, 127, 297-298
Rcoef          Compute Symbolic Polynomial from Roots 132, 298
REMNDR         Compute Symbolic Remainder          292, 298
RFLCT          Create Reflection Transformation         227, 299
Rrotcon        Rotate Conic                       271, 281, 284, 291, 299
Rrot2d         Create 2D-Rotation Transformation           222, 299
Rrot3d         Create 3D-Rotation Transformation           225, 300
+RPN           Converts Algebraic to RPN List           291, 296, 300, 317
Rroots         Find Roots of Polynomial                 130, 133, 276, 301
SCFACTR        Find Symbolic Cofactor Matrix           159, 301, 306
SCF            Find Symbolic Cofactor              157-159, 301-302
SCramer         Apply Cramer’s Rule to Symbolic Matrix 159, 302
SCSWP          Swap Columns in Symbolic Array     159, 302
SDet           Symbolic Determinant                  157-159, 302, 306
SDiv           Synthetic Division (stack version)    116, 120-121, 125, 127, 303, 315
Simplex        Applies Simplex Algorithm to Tableau 164-165, 287, 295, 303-304
SM+            Disassembles Symbolic Matrix           157-158, 304
+SM            Assemble Symbolic Array            157-158, 305, 314
SMADD          Symbolic Matrix Addition            157-158, 305
SMINV          Invert Symbolic Square Matrix       159, 305
SMmult         Symbolic Matrix Multiplication       157-159, 306-306
SMsmult        Symbolic Scalar Multiplication      157-159, 306
SMSOLV         Solve Symbolic System of Linear Equations 159, 306
SMSUB          Symbolic Matrix Subtraction         157-158, 307
SNCOL          Insert Column in Symbolic Array      159, 303, 307
SNROW          Insert Row in Symbolic Array         159, 307
SOL+           Solve Triangle                       46-47, 308-311
SPIRO          Spirograph Simulation              84, 311
sqrtt          Square Root UDF                      298, 312
RCI            RCI for Symbolic Matrix               158, 312
RCIJ           RCIJ for Symbolic Matrix              159, 312
RSWTP          Swaps Rows in Symbolic Matrix        158, 303, 312
STRN           Transpose Symbolic Matrix             157-158, 303, 306, 308, 313
Sxcol          Extract Column from Symbolic Matrix    159, 302-303, 313
Sxrow          Extract Row from Symbolic Matrix      302, 313
SYND           Synthetic Division (input form version) 117, 313-314
Tncon          Find Tangent and Normal at Point on Conic 267, 269-270, 314
TRIGX          Trigonometry Explorer                 32-33, 314-316
TRNCON         Translate Conic                      271-273, 316
UDFUI          Apply User Interface to a UDF         27, 317
VDIR           Find Vector Direction Angles            177, 317

Programs Index
Subject Index

± term in algebraics 17

Absolute value 173, 180
ADD function 13
Affine transformations 228
Amplitude of a trigonometric function 41–43
Analytic geometry 172-241

Angle
- determined by a cone with its base 243
- determined by intersecting lines 179, 202
- determined by intersecting planes 179, 206
- of rotation 212, 221-222, 224-225, 228, 231, 233, 237, 271
- orientation 255, 258-259, 261
- polar 94

Angle key (polar entry) 59

Angle mode
- and parametric plotting 69
- effect on polar entry 59

Angles
- general 50
- HMS format 30, 51, 54
- of triangle 29-30, 44
- principal 32, 50
- supplements of 47, 202, 206
- units of measure 30–31
- vertical 251

Arc
- intercepted 251
- length 33, 94-95

Area
- of a triangle 45, 51, 178, 198
- of circular sector 33

Arithmetic
- with matrices 139–143
- with polynomials 109–114
- with symbolic matrices 158
- with vectors 174–175

Arrays
- of points 213-214, 216, 218–241
- symbolic 143
- transformations with 212
- vectors 173

Astroid 90

Asymptotes 18-19, 62, 68, 79-82, 96, 99, 263

Augmented matrices 145-146, 148-152, 157-159

Autoscaling a plot 39

Axis
- of rotation 212, 221-225
- parabolic 260

Axonometric projections 228, 234

Bisection approximation method 123

Cardioid 87
Cardioids 65
Cassinian curves 76–78
Center of projection 228
Centering plot on cursor position 107
Centroid of a triangle 178, 190-191
Check-mark 18
Checksum of a program 275
Chords 251

Circle 243, 247, 250–255, 267, 269, 273
- and cycloidal curves 84
- and radians 30
- arc 30
- center 250, 252, 254, 268, 273
- cissoid of 82
- conchoid of 82
- radius 29, 84, 250, 252, 254, 268
- unit 29

Cissoid of Diocles 79
Cissoids 79–83

Coefficients of functions 41–43
Coefficients of general equation of a conic 248, 250, 254, 260, 262-67, 269, 271-273
Coefficients of general equation of a plane 187-188, 196, 203, 205, 207

Cofactor 153-154, 158
Cofactor matrix 153-155, 159
COLCT command 14, 109
Collecting like terms 36, 109
Collinear lines 179, 197

Collinear points 178-179, 186, 196
Complex Conjugates Theorem 118
Complex numbers 60
- algebraic vs. coordinate forms 66
- and coordinate points 60, 250
- and parametric functions 66, 72, 72–75
- and the Solver 125
- conjugates of 118
- polar representation 60

Complex roots 125-126, 129-131

Compositions of functions 22–23

Conchoid of Nicomedes 79, 81
Conchoids 79–83

Condition number of a matrix 136-138

Conic plot type 244-245
Conic sections 242-273
- plotting 244–249, 256, 271–273
- translating and rotating 271–273

CONNECT mode 18-19, 62

Constants—symbolic 24
Constraints (linear program) 162-166, 168, 170-171
Subject Index

Converting decimals to fractions 40
Converting one-variable function to polynomial 133
Converting one linear equation form to another 193-195
Coordinate system 220
Coordinates
  display of 58-59
  homogeneous 213
  of graphics cursor 16
Coplanar 201, 209, 250
Cosecant 29
Cosine 29
Cotangent 29
Cramer’s Rule 144, 150-152, 159
Cross product 174-175, 187-188, 190, 196-198, 203, 205, 208, 211
Curtate curves 84-85, 88, 91-93
Curves
  Cassinian 76-78
  cissoids and conchoids 79-83
  cycloidal 84-93
  spirals 94-97
Cycloid 84
Cycloidal curves 84-93
Defining procedure in user-defined functions 24
Degrees 30-31, 51
Deltoid 90
Depressed polynomial 121
Derivatives 104-107
Descartes’ Rule of Signs 119-121, 124-125
Determinant 142, 144, 150-155, 158
Diagonal elements of a matrix 143, 214
Dimensions of a matrix 139-141
Dimetric projection 212, 228, 231-232
Direction angles of a vector 176-177
Direction vectors of lines 185, 192, 196-197, 202, 205, 209-210, 225
Directory 27, 275
Directrix 243, 257, 259, 263
Discontinuities 18
Discriminant of a quadratic 13
Display range 26, 31, 39-40, 61, 247
Distance
  between center and focus 261
  between focus and vertex 259
  between parallel lines 179, 201
  between two points 178, 180
  from a point to a line 178-179, 189, 198-199
  from a point to a plane 179, 207
Division
  of matrices 143
  of polynomials 112-113
  synthetic 115-124
  Domain of a function 11
  Dot product 140, 174-175, 187-188, 202, 208-211
Eccentricity 243, 255, 257, 259, 261, 263-264
Ellipse 243, 246, 255-258, 269, 271
  angle of orientation 255-256, 258
  center of 255-256, 258
  directrixes 257-258
  eccentricity 255-258
  foci 255, 257-258
  semimajor 255-258
  semiminor 255-256, 258
  vertices 257-258
Epicycloid 69, 84, 86-87
Epitrochoid 88-89
EQ variable 124
Equation of a circle 250, 252-253, 268-269
Equation of a hyperbola 261-264
Equation of a line
  array form 189, 193-195, 199-201
  determined by three points 178
  determined by two points 178, 182
  general form 178, 189, 193-195, 199-201
  intersection of two planes 179
  parametric form 178, 183, 185, 192-201, 203, 205-206, 210-211, 225
  perpendicular to a line 197
  perpendicular to two other lines 179, 188
  position-direction (PD) form 193-195, 197-199, 201, 203, 209-211, 225
  slope-intercept form 178, 182, 192-195, 265
Equation of a parabola 259-260
Equation of a plane
  determined by a point and a line 179, 196
  determined by a point and plane 179, 208
  determined by its normal and a point 179
  determined by its traces 179, 204
  determined by three points 178, 187-188
  determined by two noncollinear lines 179, 203
  general form 187, 205, 207
  vector form 206, 211
Equation of an ellipse 255, 258
Equation of general conic 243, 248, 250, 259
Equation of the normal to a plane 179
Equations
  consistent vs. inconsistent 135
  degenerate 135
  independent 135, 137
EquationWriter 36
Equiangular spiral 95
Euclidean norm 160
EXPAN command 14
Expansion of a polynomial 114
Exponential functions 20-21
Extracting rows or columns of a matrix 159
Extrema 104-105
Eyepoint 228, 234, 236, 238-241
Factor of a synthetic division 115-118, 120-123
Factor Theorem 118
Flags
controlling principal vs. general values (-1) 50
controlling symbolic constants (-2) 24
controlling symbolic results (-3) 24, 36, 40
Focus 243, 255, 257, 259, 263
Folium of Descartes 62, 66, 80
Foreshortening of axes 228, 231-233
Fractions 40, 143, 154-155, 200, 211, 253
Function plot type 136, 245
Functions
and geometric transformations 212
complex-valued 72
composites of 22-23
exponential 20-21
finding range of 11
implicit 244-245
inverse 20, 23, 50
linear 9-11
logarithmic 20-21
non-periodic 94
objective 162
parametric 57-58
periodic 29, 48
plotting 9
polar form 61
polynomials 101
quadratic 12-18
rational 18-19
solving graphically 15
solving numerically 17
solving symbolically 17
tracing 16
trigonometric 29
user-defined 24-27
Fundamental Theorem of Algebra 118
Gauss-Jordan reduction 145
Gaussian elimination 144-149
General value of angles 50
Geometric objects 213
Gridmap plot type 74
Guesses when solving an equation 17, 125
Hemisphere 212
Heron's Formula 45
HMS angle format 30, 51, 54
Homogeneous coordinate representation 213
Horizontal shift of a trigonometric function 41-43
Hyperbola 243, 248, 261-264, 270, 272
angle of orientation 261-262, 264
asymptotes 263-264
b parameter 261-262, 264
center 261-262, 264
directrixes 263-264
distance between center and foci 261
eccentricity 261
foci 261, 263-264
semimajor 262
vertices 261, 264
Hyperbolic spiral 94
Hypocycloid 84, 89-90
Hypotrochoid 91-93
Identities 48
double-angle 34
half-angle 35
Pythagorean 34
sum and difference 34
sum and product 35, 40
verifying 34-40
Identity matrix 143, 145, 149, 214, 234
Inequalities 161
Inflection point 107
Inner product 140, 174
Inscribed angle 251
Inserting rows or columns into a matrix 159
Intercept of a line 182, 184, 188, 192-193, 268
Intersection
of chords 251
of line and a plane 210, 211
of lines and conics 265-273
of perpendicular bisectors of chords 252
of secants 251
of two lines 179, 200, 202
of two planes 179, 204, 206
plane and a right circular cone 243
two vs apparent 65
Intersection point 179, 198, 210-211
Inverse functions 20, 23
trigonometric 48, 50
Inverse of a matrix 142-144, 149, 153-156, 159
ISOL command 14, 23, 48, 50
Isolating a variable 14, 48
Isometric projections 212, 228, 233
Law of Cosines 44-45
Law of Sines 44-45, 52
Least common multiple 132
Least-squares solution 160
Lemniscate of Bernoulli 76, 78
Limaçons 82
Line
equation of 178, 182-183, 185, 188-189, 192-195
intersection of two planes 179, 205
parallel to it through a given point 179
perpendicular through a given point 178-179,
197
vertical 270
Line segment 173
dividing into a given ratio 178, 181
Subject Index

Length 190
Midpoint of 178, 181, 184-185
Perpendicular bisector of 178, 184-185, 227, 252
Linear equations 134
as a matrix equation 153
solving 145-156, 205
symbolic solutions 157-159
Linear inequalities 161-171
Linear programming 162-171
Lines 135
collinear 179
concurrent 135, 179, 200
direction vectors of 185, 192, 197, 205
in space 183, 185, 192-193, 198-199, 223
intersecting 135, 200, 202-203
parallel 179, 200-203, 212
perpendicular 179
skew 179, 200-201
slope-intercept form 9, 192-193
Lissajous 98
Lists 13
Lituus spiral 96
Local names in user-defined functions 24
Logarithmic functions 20-21
Logarithmic spiral 95
Logarithms 21
Long division 115, 116
Lower bound of the roots of a polynomial 119-120, 122-124
Lower Bound Theorem 119
Matrices
addition of 139, 158, 174
and vectors 173
arithmetic with 139-143, 158
assembling 158
augmented 145, 148-150, 152, 157, 159
characterizing 135
cofactor 153-155, 159
condition number of 136-138
determinant of 142, 150-152, 154-155, 158
dimensions of 139
disassembling 158
editing 138
extracting rows or columns 159
identity 143, 145, 149, 214, 234
ill-conditioned 137
inserting rows or columns 159
inverse of 142-144, 149, 153-156, 159
multiplication 140-141, 153, 158, 175, 216, 222-223, 226, 231
rank of 136, 138
reduced row echelon 145, 147-149
representing linear programs 162
row echelon 145, 147
row operations 159
row operations on 144-145, 148, 158
scalar multiplication 139, 158
subtraction 140, 158, 174
symbolic 143, 157-159
transformation 213-241
transposing 141, 154-155, 158
Matrix equations 153
Maxima 102, 104
MaxMin problem 170-171
Median of a triangle 190-191
Midpoint of a line segment 178, 181, 184-185, 191, 261
Minima 102, 104
MinMax problem 171
Multiplication
matrices 140-141, 153, 158, 175, 216, 222-223, 226, 231
scalars and matrices 139, 158, 174

n1 variable 50
Names 24
Nephroid 87
Normal to a conic 267-273
Normal to a plane 179, 187-188, 205-210
Normalization of a transformation 234-236
Numerical precision 39-40, 167
Objective function in a linear program 162-166, 168, 170-171
Optimization 162-171
Orthographic projections 228-230
Ovals of Cassini 76
Parabola 243, 259-260, 269, 272
angle of orientation 259-260
directrix 259-260
eccentricity 259
focus 259
p parameter 260
vertex 259-260
Parabolic axis 260
Parabolic spiral 96
Parallel lines 179, 197, 200-201, 212, 228
Parallel planes 187, 205-206, 208, 230
Parameters 57, 68
angle 57
of a vector 176
time 57, 67, 70
Parametric functions 57-58
plotting 66-71
Parametric plot type 72-75
and complex numbers 66
Pascal’s Snails 82
Path 27, 275
Pattern matching 36, 40
Perimeter of a triangle 190
Period
  of a polar function 63
  of a trigonometric function 41–43
Periodic functions 29, 48
Perpendicular 179
  to a conic 267
  to a line 178–179, 188, 197
  to a plane 187, 205, 211
  vectors 175
Perpendicular bisector 178, 184–185, 227, 252
Perpendicularity of the coordinate axes 212
Perspective projections 212, 234, 236–241
Phase shift of a trigonometric function 41–43
Pi in a complex number 59
Pivot operation 164
Plane
  complex 60, 74–75
  equation of 178–179, 187–188, 196, 203–204, 208
  of reflection 212, 226–227
  projection 229
  traces of 204, 226
  viewing 228–229
Plotting
  3-D objects 231–233, 235, 237, 239–241
  and Connect mode (flag -31) 18
  angle mode 30–31
  complex functions 72–75
  conic sections 244–249, 256, 262, 271–273
  curves 76–99
  discontinuities in 18
  functions 9–10, 12
  implicit functions 244, 245
  inequalities 161
  parametric functions 66–71
  polar functions 61–65
  polynomials 101–108
  range 26, 61, 67–68
  rational functions 18
  resolution of 18, 61, 67, 246
  simultaneously 64, 245
  with autoscaling 39
Points
  and coordinates/complex numbers 60
  and vectors 173
  collinear 178–179, 186, 196
  coplanar 250
  homogeneous coordinate representation 213
  inflection 107
  intersection 179
  noncollinear 187, 203, 251–252
  vanishing 234–236
Polar angle 94
Polar coordinates 58–60
Polar functions 61–65
Polar mode 59
Polar radius 94
Polynomials 100–133
  arithmetic with 101, 109–114
  coefficients 101, 109
  converting from vector to symbolic 110, 132
  converting to from single-variable functions 133
  definition 101
  depressed 121
  expansion 114
  finding roots of 102, 104, 115
  plotting 101–108
  theorems 115, 118–124
Principal value of angles 50
Programs 275–319, 327–328
Projections 212–213, 217, 228–241
  axonometric 228, 234
  dimetric 212, 228, 231–232
  isometric 212, 228, 233
  orthographic 228–230
  perspective 212, 234, 236–241
Prolate curves 84–85, 88–89, 91–93
Pythagorean theorem 34
Quadratic formula 121
Quadratic functions 12–18
Quotient of a polynomial division 112–113, 116–123
Radians 30–32
Range
  and autoscaling 39
  of a conic plot 247
  of a function 11, 61, 68
  of solution search 125
Rank of a matrix 136, 138
Rational functions 18–19
Rational Root Theorem 118, 120
Rational roots (polynomial) 118, 120–122
Real roots (polynomial) 102, 104, 118–125, 127–128, 131
Rearrangements (symbolic) 14
Rectangular coordinates 58
Reflection 212, 226–227
Remainder (polynomial div.) 112–113, 116–123
Remainder Theorem 118
Resolution 61, 74, 246
Root-finding
  in PICTURE mode 17, 49, 105, 127–129
  in SOLVE application 48, 124–127
  of polynomials 115–131
Rose 93
  in three dimensions 223, 225
  multiple 223–224, 228, 231
Round-off error 39–40, 167
Subject Index

s1 variable 17
Scalar multiplication 139, 158, 174
Scaling 212-218, 221, 234
Search and replace 36
Secant 29, 251, 265
Sector 33
Segment of a line 173
Semimajor of an ellipse 255, 257
Semiminor of an ellipse 255, 257-258
Sensitivity analysis 167
Shearing 212-213, 218-219, 221
Sides of triangles 44
Simplex Method 162-163
Simultaneous plotting 64
Sinusoidal spirals 97
Skew lines 179, 200-201
Slope 9, 104, 182, 184, 188, 192-193, 268
Solution space 161-163
SOLVE application 45, 48, 124-127, 131
Solve Lin Sys... application 156, 253
Solve Poly... application 101
Solving linear system 144, 153-156, 205, 253, 264
Solving equations using trigonometric identities 40
Solving triangles 44-47
Solving trigonometric equations 48-50
Spiral of Archimedes 94
Spirals 94-97
Standard orientation 272
STEP field 67
Strofoid 82
Supplement of an angle 47, 202, 206
Swapping rows or columns in a matrix 159
Symbolic
  constants 24
  inputs 33
  isolating a variable 14, 48
  matrices 157-159, 158
  pattern matching 36, 40
  rearrangements 14
  results 22, 24, 36
  simplification and verification 36
  solutions of equations 17, 40, 50
  solutions of linear systems 157-159
Syntax 24
Synthetic division 115-124
Systems of linear equations 134-138, 253
  as matrix of coefficients 136, 153, 205
  over-determined 135, 160-161
  under-determined 135, 160-161
Tableau 164, 167
Tangents 29, 265, 267-273
Taylor’s approximations 245
Tick-marks 18
TRACE operation 16, 63-64, 68
Traces of a plane 179, 204, 226
Tractrix 98
Transformation matrix 213-241
Transformations 193, 212-241, 271-273
Translation 212-213, 220, 222, 234-241, 271-273
Transposing matrices 141, 154-155, 158
Triangles 29, 34, 190, 198
  area of 178, 190, 198
  centroids of 178, 190-191
  medians of 190-191
  solving 44-47
Triangulation 44, 52-54
Trigonometric identities 34-40
Trigonometric functions 29, 32-33
Trigonometric laws 44-45, 51-52
Trigonometry 29-54
Trochoids 84-85
Unit square 215
Units in computations 51-52
Upper bound of roots of a polynomial 119-122, 124
Upper Bound Theorem 119
User interface 27
User-defined functions 24-27
Vanishing point 234, 236
Variables 275
  artificial 164, 167
  basis 164, 167
  decision 164, 167, 171
  independent 57, 72, 74, 135
  slack 167
Vectors 173-177
  arithmetic 174-175
  magnitude of 173, 176-180
  translation 238, 239, 240, 241, 272, 273
  components of 173, 176, 183, 185, 214
  direction 185, 192-197, 202, 205, 210, 225
  direction angles of 173, 176-180
  normal 187-188, 205-208, 210
  perpendicular 175
  position 193, 203, 207-208, 213, 225
  products of 174
  weighted 181
Verifications 36, 38
Vertex 163, 191, 243, 257, 259
Vertical lines 270
Vertical shift of a trigonometric function 41-43
Viewing an object array 214
Viewing range 61
Weighted average 181
Wildcard 37
Witch of Agnesi 99
Zeroes of a polynomial 115
Zooming 15-16, 103, 107, 128

333
If you liked this book, there are others that you will certainly enjoy also:

**An Easy Course in Using and Programming the HP 48G/GX**

Here is an *Easy Course* in true Grapevine style: Examples, illustrations, and clear, simple explanations give you a real feel for the machine and how its many features work together. First you get lessons on using the Stack, the keyboard, and on how to build, combine and store the many kinds of data objects. Then you learn about programming—looping, branching, testing, etc.—and you learn how to customize your directories and menus for convenient “automated” use. And the final chapter shows example programs—all documented with comments and tips.

**Calculus on the HP 48G/GX**

Get ready now for your college math! Plot and solve problems with this terrific collection of lessons, examples and program tricks from an experienced classroom math teacher:

Limits, series, sums, vectors and gradients, differentiation (formal, stepwise, implicit, partial), integration (definite, indefinite, improper, by parts, with vectors), rates, curve shapes, function averages, constraints, growth & decay, force, velocity, acceleration, arcs, surfaces of revolution, solids, and more.

**Graphics on the HP 48G/GX**

Here’s a must-have if you want to use the full potential of that big display. Written by HP engineer Ray Depew, this book shows you how to build graphics objects (“grobs”) and use them to customize displays with diagrams, pictures, 3D plots—even animation.

First the book offers a great in-depth review of the built-in graphics tools. Then you learn how to build your own grobs and use them in programs—with very impressive results!

**The HP 48G/GX Pocket Guide**

You get some 90 pages of quick-reference tables, diagrams, and handy examples—all in a convenient little booklet that *fits in the case with your HP 48G/GX*! There is a complete command reference, along with system flags, menus, application summaries, troubleshooting, and common Q’s & A’s. Nothing is more succinct and helpful than this little memory-jogger!

For more details on these books or any of our titles, check with your local bookseller or calculator/computer dealer. Or, for a full Grapevine catalog, write, call or fax:

**Grapevine Publications, Inc.**

626 N.W. 4th Street  P.O. Box 2449
Corvallis, Oregon 97339-2449  U.S.A.
*Phone: 1-800-338-4331 or 541-754-0583  Fax: 541-754-6508*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISBN</th>
<th>Books for personal computers</th>
<th>Price*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-28-0</td>
<td>Lotus Be Brief</td>
<td>$9.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-29-9</td>
<td>A Little DOS Will Do You</td>
<td>9.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-32-9</td>
<td>Concise and WordPerfect</td>
<td>9.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-37-X</td>
<td>An Easy Course in Using WordPerfect</td>
<td>19.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-38-8</td>
<td>An Easy Course in Using LOTUS 1-2-3</td>
<td>19.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-40-X</td>
<td>An Easy Course in Using DOS</td>
<td>19.95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISBN</th>
<th>Books for Hewlett-Packard Scientific Calculators</th>
<th>Price*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-18-3</td>
<td>An Easy Course in Using the HP-28S</td>
<td>9.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-25-6</td>
<td>HP-28S Software Power Tools: Electrical Circuits</td>
<td>9.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-26-4</td>
<td>An Easy Course in Using the HP-42S</td>
<td>19.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-33-7</td>
<td>HP 48S/SX Graphics</td>
<td>19.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-XX-0</td>
<td>HP 48S/SX Machine Language</td>
<td>19.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-41-8</td>
<td>An Easy Course in Using and Programming the HP 48G/GX</td>
<td>19.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-42-6</td>
<td>Graphics on the HP 48G/GX</td>
<td>19.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-43-4</td>
<td>Algebra and Pre-Calculus on the HP 48G/GX</td>
<td>19.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-44-2</td>
<td>Calculus on the HP 48G/GX</td>
<td>19.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-TBA</td>
<td>The HP 48G/GX Pocket Guide (Available 1/96)</td>
<td>9.95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISBN</th>
<th>Books for Hewlett-Packard Business calculators</th>
<th>Price*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-08-6</td>
<td>An Easy Course in Using the HP-12C</td>
<td>19.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-12-4</td>
<td>The HP-12C Pocket Guide: Just In Case</td>
<td>6.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-19-1</td>
<td>An Easy Course in Using the HP 19Bii</td>
<td>19.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-20-5</td>
<td>An Easy Course In Using the HP 17Bii</td>
<td>19.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-22-1</td>
<td>The HP 19Bii Pocket Guide: Just In Case</td>
<td>6.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-23-X</td>
<td>The HP 17Bii Pocket Guide: Just In Case</td>
<td>6.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-XX-0</td>
<td>Business Solutions on Your HP Financial Calculator</td>
<td>9.95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISBN</th>
<th>Books for Hewlett-Packard computers</th>
<th>Price*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-34-5</td>
<td>Lotus in Minutes on the HP 95LX</td>
<td>9.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-35-3</td>
<td>The Answers You Need for the HP 95LX</td>
<td>9.95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISBN</th>
<th>Other books</th>
<th>Price*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0-931011-14-0</td>
<td>Problem-Solving Situations: A Teacher's Resource Book</td>
<td>9.95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Contact: Grapevine Publications, Inc.
626 N.W. 4th Street  P.O. Box 2449  Corvallis, Oregon  97339-2449  U.S.A.
800-338-4331 (541-754-0583) Fax: 541-754-6508

*Prices shown are as of 8/6/95 and are subject to change without notice. Check with your local bookseller or electronics/computer dealer—or contact Grapevine Publications, Inc.
We here at Grapevine like to hear feedback about our books. It helps us produce books tailored to your needs. If you have any specific comments or advice for our authors after reading this book, we'd appreciate hearing from you!

Which of our books do you have?

Comments, Advice and Suggestions:

May we use your comments as testimonials?

Your Name: Profession:
City, State:

How long have you had your calculator?

Please send Grapevine catalogs to these persons:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>City</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Zip</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>City</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Zip</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Algebra and Pre-Calculus on the HP 48G/GX

Grab your calculator, grab this book and get ready for math class! You’ll get lots of lessons, examples and advice on graphing and problem-solving—plenty of practice with the HP 48 G/GX Plotter, Solver, EquationWriter and MatrixEditor.

The book begins with a chapter on exploring functions in general—how to identify and plot them. Then it’s trigonometry, its identities and functions, and its many uses in solving triangles and real-world problems. Chapter 3 is all about polar and parametric equations, including the various forms and even complex numbers (and don’t miss the Garden of Curves). Then you enter the world of polynomials, their graphs and their roots (“zeroes”).

Chapter 5 covers linear systems—matrix arithmetic, simultaneous equations, determinants, inequalities, even linear programming! Then you learn all about various methods for solving problems in analytic geometry (equations of lines and planes), including transformations (rotations, reflections, etc.). Finally there’s a chapter on conic sections (circles, parabolas, ellipses, hyperbolas) and how they behave and graph.

You get all this—from an experienced classroom math teacher,—plus over 90 programs to automate a lot of tedious keystroking. Don’t miss this valuable aid for your math courses!